



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

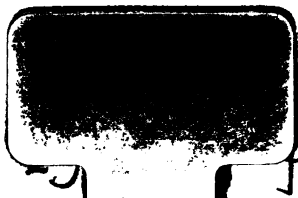


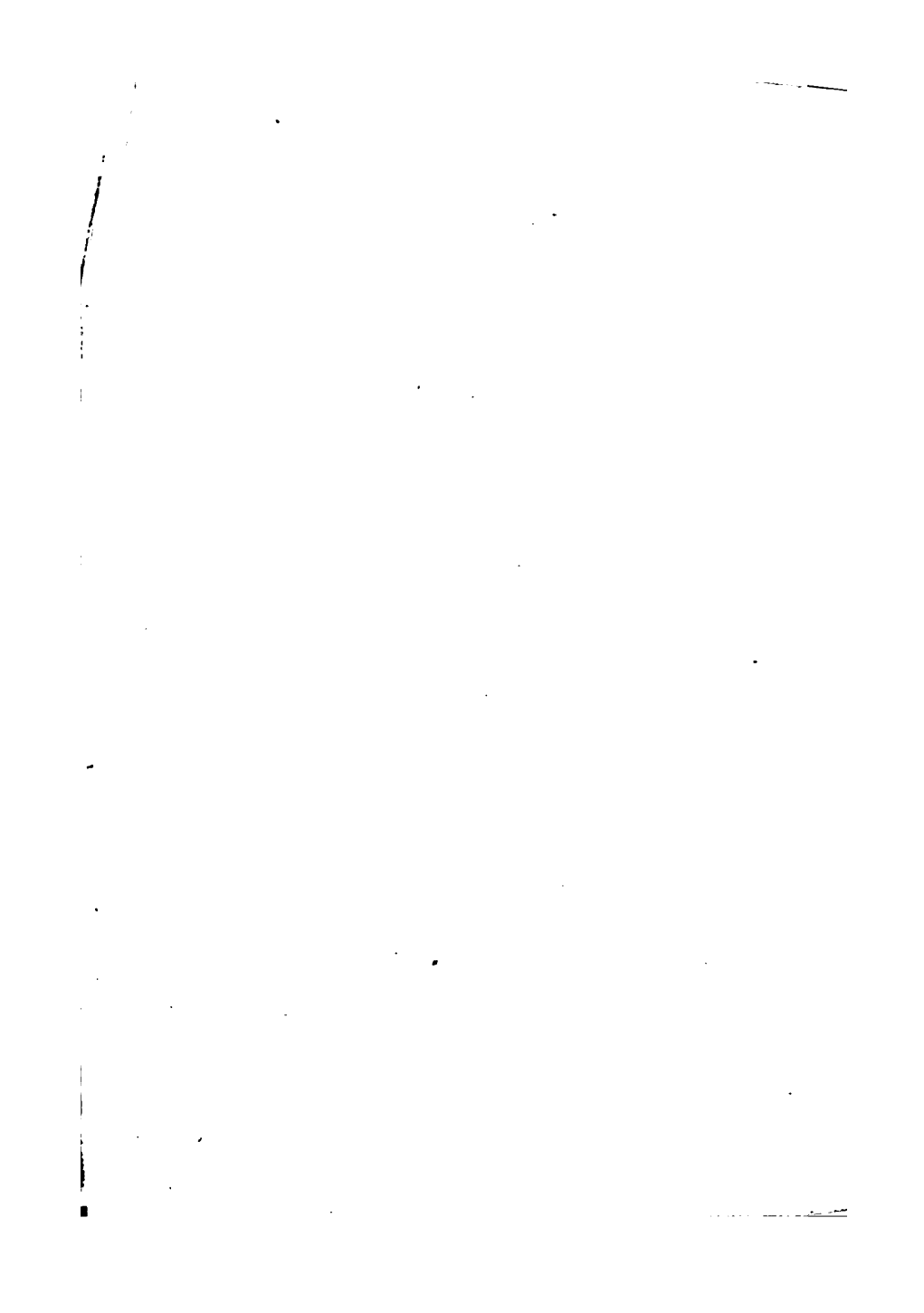
Dombraîn. M.

Louth

u. n. m. . . . . t

Ἰδὼν ἄσπονδον ἔστιν ἄσπονδον  
ἔστιν ἄσπονδον ἔστιν ἄσπονδον  
ἄσπονδον ἔστιν ἄσπονδον  
ἄσπονδον







3  
D'OMBRAIN: MAJOR  
M

J. G. S.

J. R. P.  
ombrain

1/6

Cip

**LATIN PROSE EXERCISES.**

*By the same Author.*

**KEY to LATIN EXERCISES:** Consisting of Extracts from the Writings of Cæsar, Cicero, and Livy; with References to the Original Authors. [This KEY is published for the use of those engaged in tuition, and cannot be supplied without the Author's sanction.] 12mo. 5s.

**TROY TAKEN:** Being the SECOND BOOK of VIRGIL'S *Æneid*; with Notes adapted to the use of the Junior and Middle Forms. New Edition, revised. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

VIRGIL is a difficult author, and beginners require considerable assistance. *Troy Taken* aims at affording enough but not too much help as regards translation; explains allusions, points of scholarship, &c.; and seeks to elicit

and cultivate the taste. Throughout the work the requirements of young scholars have been kept in mind, and it has been attempted to teach such both how they should read Virgil and Latin poetry in general.

**LESSONS in LATIN PROSE:** Consisting of Rules and Exercises; and forming an Easy Introduction to the Writing of Continuous Latin Prose. 12mo. 5s.

AMONG the numerous Latin Exercise-books which have of late years been offered to the public, the present one will be found in some respects and genera. It is well known that the translation of detached English sentences will never enable a boy to write good continuous Latin prose. He can only attain this art by the translation of connected sentences and of paragraphs. In the present work the Author has attempted to supply an easier introduction to continuous Latin prose-writing than any he has yet met with. From an experimental knowledge of the difficulties of young scholars, he has also aimed throughout at more than usual simplicity and clearness, often sacrificing brevity to attain this end. The book, however, is progressive in its character, and the latter part will require a good acquaintance with the vocabulary and structure of the Latin language.

The book is divided into four parts. The first, of an extremely easy character, is on the tenses of the indicative mood, gerunds, supines, infinitive, and participles. The second part is mainly on the subjunctive mood—the use of which has been studiously excluded from the Exercises in the first part. Much labour has been bestowed on the

attempt to make this difficult subject clear to the comprehension of beginners. The third part contains Rules of a miscellaneous character, illustrated by paragraphs of a tolerably easy but varied character, adapted for translation. The fourth part treats of several points concerning tenses, moods, and conjunctions, which were passed over as too difficult for the early portion of the work. In the concluding Lessons the important subjects, already touched upon in the second part, of *The Dependent Question* and *Oratio Obliqua* are illustrated at greater length.

It is hoped that this book will not only be found useful in the middle forms of our larger schools, but that it will in an especial degree prove an acceptable help to that large class of tutors who are preparing backward pupils to write a decent piece of Latin prose, previously to their entering at the University, or undergoing an examination for the Army or Civil Service. In such cases there is no time to commence again from the beginning, and paragraphs of ordinary English are much beyond the pupils' powers. System moreover is wanted, and the question is, What is to be done? This work, it is hoped, may to some extent solve the difficulty.

**KEY to LESSONS in LATIN PROSE.** Consisting mainly of Extracts and Adaptations from the Writings of Cicero, Cæsar, and Livy; with References to the Original Authors. [This KEY is published for the use of those engaged in tuition, and cannot be supplied without the Author's sanction. Address to him at 101 Marina, St. Leonards-on-Sea.] 12mo. 5s. 6d.

# LATIN PROSE EXERCISES

CONSISTING OF

ENGLISH SENTENCES

TRANSLATED FROM

CÆSAR, CICERO, AND LIVY

TO BE

RETRANSLATED INTO THE ORIGINAL LATIN

BY

W. W. BRADLEY, M.A.

LATE DEMY OF MAGDALEN COLLEGE, OXFORD

NEW EDITION

*ADAPTED TO THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER*

LONDON

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

1877



LONDON: PRINTED BY  
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE  
AND PARLIAMENT STREET

# PREFACE

TO

## THE NEW EDITION.



---

IN THE PRESENT EDITION the Exercises have been adapted, with Mr. BRADLEY's sanction, to the 'Latin Primer' by two public school masters. The Editors, while adopting the arrangement of the Primer, have steadily kept in view the necessity, as it appeared to them, of preserving the character and form of the book so far as it was possible to do so. It seemed to them that grave inconvenience would be caused to teachers and pupils by making a manual so extensively used and familiar completely unrecognisable in its new shape.

The differences between the 'Elementary Latin Grammar,' on which former editions of this book were based, and the Primer may be briefly stated. Apart from the introduction of new principles, and the statement of old rules in new terms, the new book is made more compendious than the old chiefly by throwing many rules into the 'Notes

on Syntax.' This is especially the case with the Compound Sentence, which occupied so important a position in the 'Elementary Latin Grammar.'

The present Editors, therefore, following the order and nomenclature of the Primer, have brought the Examples under their rules. Wherever it was possible to transfer them bodily, this has been done. Where the old rule is not co-extensive with the new, a corresponding dislocation of Examples was, of course, inevitable. A few new Exercises have been added wherever the Primer contains a new rule.

The differences and agreement between this and previous editions may be summed up as follows:—

1. The five Introductory Rules have been omitted.
2. Parts I. and II. have been re-arranged throughout, as explained already.
3. Part III. has been left wholly unaltered. As stated above, the formal rules for the Compound Sentence, which the old Grammar contained, have been thrown into the form of notes in the new. The extreme importance of this section of Syntax, coupled with the fact that the Primer 'Notes on Syntax' follow strictly the order and terminology of the older book, showed that the natural course was to leave Part III. as it stood.

4. In the Notes of former editions references were made to Kennedy's 'Progressive Latin Grammar,' a book now out of print. They have, therefore, been adapted to the new 'Public School Latin Grammar' (Longmans, 1871).

The Editors sincerely regret that, owing to illness, Mr. Bradley has been unable to remodel his own manual. How far he would himself have recast it they do not know. In the case of a book so remarkably thorough, no one can supply the place of the original compiler.

*December 1871.*



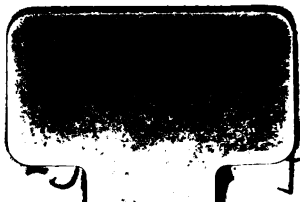
1

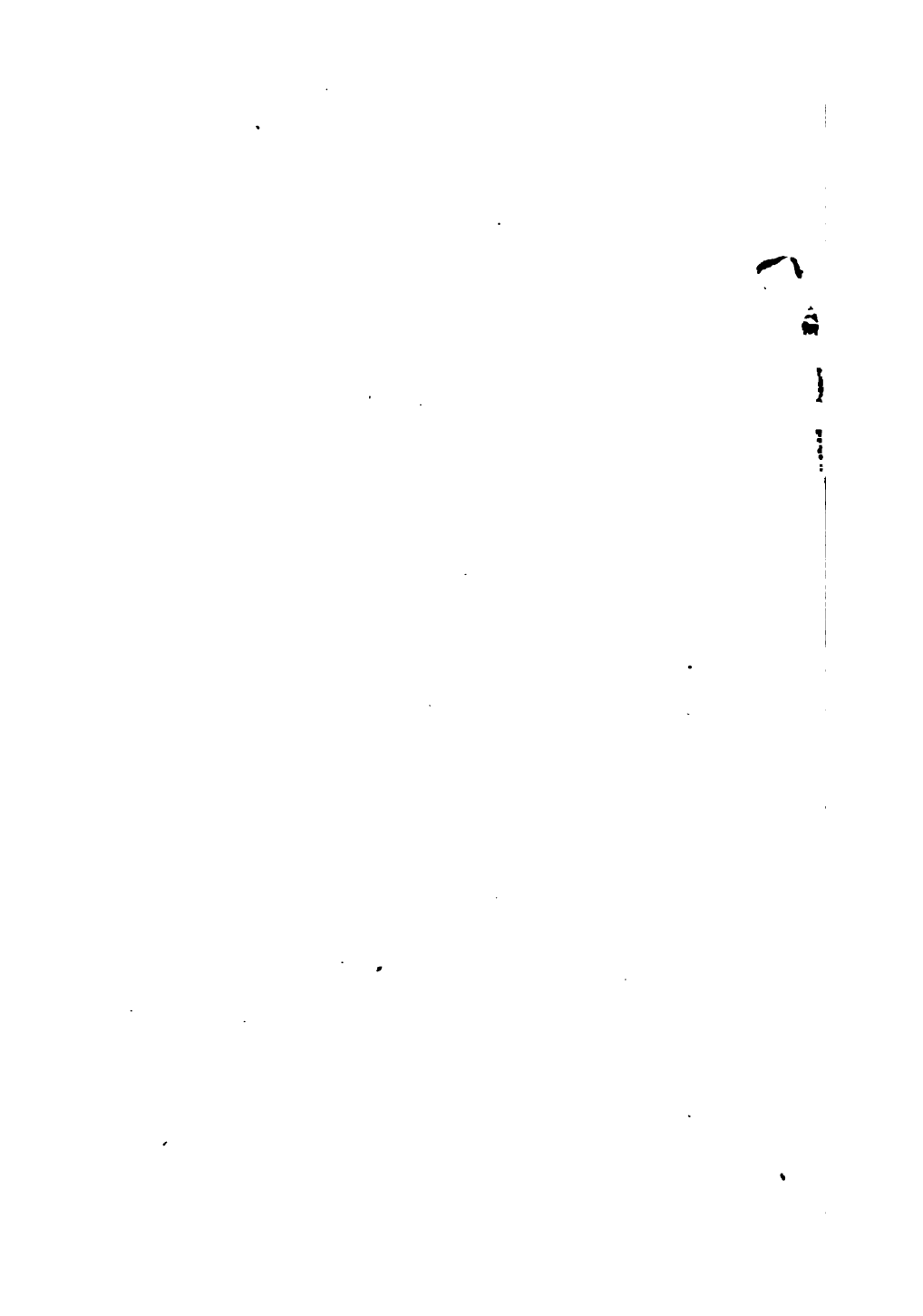
Dombraim. M.

Louth

.....t

ἄσπον  
Ἄσπονδον ἔστιν ἄσπονδον  
ἔστιν ἄσπονδον  
Ἄσπονδον ἔστιν ἄσπονδον  
Ἄσπονδον





DOMBRAIN: MAJOR  
Z

J. G. S.

J. R. G. Dombain

Clarus is facio, quod unus sum, quod adolescens in incrementum res (*pl.*) decedo.

Itaque ego mirus videor, unde hic tu imago, qui habeo, invenio (*subj.*).

Hic in actio parum sum lepor.<sup>1</sup>

3. *Nominativus Pronominum raro exprimitur; nisi distinctioni vel emphasi inserviat.*

3 A. *Nominativus Pronominum intelligitur.*

Bene facio (*sing.*), inquam, et cedo.

Pugna (*abl.*), inquam, vinco.

Egredior (*sing.*) aliquando: pateo porta: proficiscor.

Sum discordia finis aliquando: conquiesco.

Placeo omen, inquam; huc dirigo (*pl.*) navis.

Exeo, proficiscor. Demonstratio iter.

Quo se miser (*N. 47*) verto?

Litteræ commendatitius (*adj.*) sumo (*pl. N. 61*).

Ita facio. Quare conor (*sing.*), quæso. Quis enim alius hic possum ago divinus?

Hostia, an ego, an vos ignoro? (*N. 44.*)

Itaque tacitus (*N. 94. 2*) sequor currus.

3 B. *Nominativus Pronominum expressus distinctioni vel emphasi plerumque inservit.*

Tu hic maneo: ego induco eques (*pl.*).

Hic ut facio (*subj.*), ego postulo, hic (*N. 51*) oro atque obsecro.

Teneo alius castra: ego (*pl. N. 61. Obs. 1*) urbs tueor.

At vos causa suscipio atque defendo.

Quis enim alius ille dico? (*N. 29. 2.*)

Idem (*N. 24*) eventus bellum exspecto. Vos vinco: ille fugio.

<sup>1</sup> For more examples of an Adverb with a Genitive thus used for a Nominative, see some of the Sentences under R. 58.

I have got a ship ready : nevertheless I am waiting for a letter from you.  
 Wherefore I shall henceforth love still more this place, where you were born.  
 Did you dare to plunder Apollo of Delos ?  
 You, you, I say, have given us a reason for war.  
 I myself lately saw that ship at Velia, and many others saw it.  
 I for my part will not cease to defend your decrees.  
 And if I shall ask of Chrysippus the reasons of all these things, he himself will never say that they were brought about by chance.  
 But do you yourself see to yourself : I will speak for my own self.

4. *The Nominative of an Impersonal Verb is not apparent unless it be an Infinitive or a Clause.*

Obs. *But many verbs, which are called Impersonal, have some Nominative understood.* See also Note 275.

Let us go then, where it pleases you, and let us leave all we have (*all our things*).  
 And so I stay here. If it shall be lawful, I will stay.  
 I indeed, when I can, come hither ; but I seldom can.  
 When it was now growing towards evening, we departed.  
 If you are well, it is well. I am well.

I will explain that correction also, if you like. But I do like, says he.  
 And now it was getting light, and everything was visible.  
 If it shall have lightened, if it shall have thundered ; you will tremble in your mind.

5. *The Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution.*

#### 5 A. *As Epithet.*

Obs. *The term Adjective includes Participles and Adjectival pronouns.*  
 He supports the violent charges of the legions.  
 Then suddenly very violent (*N. 10. B*) storms arose.  
 He took away secretly by night the very beautiful and very ancient statues.

Ego navis paro : tuus litteræ tamen exspecto.

Quare iste, ubi tu (*N.* 58. 1) nascor, plus amo posthac locus.

Apollone tu (*N.* 58. 2) Delius spolio audeo ?

Tu, tu (*N.* 58. *Obs.*), inquam, ego causa bellum (*gen.*) do.  
Is navis nuper egomet (*N.* 59) video Velia, multusque  
alius video.

Equidem (*N.* 60) non desino tuus decretum defendo.

Qui (*N.* 72) omnis causa si a Chrysippus quaero, ipse ille  
nunquam ille dico fio fortuito.

Sed de tu ipse video (*perf. subj.*): ego de ego ipse pro-  
fiteor. (*N.* 23.)

#### 4. *Impersonalis Verbi Nominativus non exstat nisi si Infinitivum vel clausula sit.*

*Obs. Multa vero, quæ Impersonalia vocantur, Nominativum aliquem habent intellectum.*

Pergo igitur, quo placet, et noster omnis relinquo.

Itaque hic maneo. Si licet, maneo.

Ego vero, tuum licet, huc venio; raro autem licet. (*N.* 301. 1.)

Quum jam (*dies*<sup>1</sup>) advesperascit (*imperf. subj.*), discedo.

Si valeo (*sing.*), bene (*res*) est. Ego valeo.

Is quoque (*N.* 301. 1), si videtur, correctio explico. Ego  
vero, inquam, videor.

Et jam (*dies*) lucescit, omnisque sub oculus sum.

Si (*Jupiter*) fulget, si tonat, tremo animus.

#### 5. *Adjectivum Genere, Numero, et Casu congruit cum eo cui attribuitur.*

##### 5 A. *Attribuitur Epitheti loco.*

Magnus impetus legio sustineo.

Tum subito tempestas coorior (*perf.*) magnus.

Noctu clam tollo signum pulcher atque antiquus. *inimicus*

<sup>1</sup> The Latin words in a parenthesis are not to be expressed.

But there is a wonderful agreement of the Roman people  
and of all Italy.

There was a very great quantity of wine, a very great  
weight of the best silver, and (N. 299) valuable furniture.  
I have taken many forts, I have destroyed many.  
They slew eight hundred soldiers, and carried off three  
standards.

The consuls fortify two camps.

Are we waiting for a third consul?

Astrologers have observed the motions of the planets (*of the  
wandering stars*).

Another tumult besides is heard. A tower long shaken had  
fallen.

Our friend Brutus indeed has obtained great praise.

We have beheld piled up heaps of these things.

That tribe alone had remained. The battle began.

And Cæsar himself has sent a threatening and angry letter  
to the senate.

What greater examples do we seek?

Some story is being related.

I defend some one argument.

---

They occupied the most fertile parts of Germany.

He surpassed the honours of his father, and equalled those  
of his grandfather.

And several events that followed increased this suspicion.

There are besides two beautiful temples, one of Ceres, the  
other of Proserpine.

I have received a letter from Isidorus, and two of a later  
date.

But what Clodius desires is some embassy.

We wander in poverty with our wives and children.

*Here see Note 46.*

### 5 B. *Complement.*

Ambition and struggle for offices is most pitiable.

In free communities indeed courtesy is to be cultivated.

The opinions of philosophers on this subject were various.

The effects captured in war seem ours by right.

Thanks to Scævola's prudence we became more learned.

Populus vero (N. 301. 1) Romanus totusque Italia mirus  
consensio sum.

Magnus vinum numerus sum (*sing.*), permagnus (N. 11)  
bonus pondus argentum, pretiosus supellex.

Multus castellum capio, multus vasto.  
Octingenti miles occido, tres signum adimo.

Consul bini (N. 18) castra communio.

Tertius consul expecto?

Astrologus motus errans stella noto.

Alius insuper tumultus audio (N. 27). Turris diu quassatus  
procido.

Brutus quidem (N. 301. 1) noster egregius laus consequor.

Hic res exstructus tumulus conspicio. (N. 47.)

Is solus maneo gens. Prælium orior.

Et ipse Cæsar minax ad (R. 28) senatus et acerbus litteræ  
mitto.

Quis quæro exemplum magnus?

Aliquis (N. 26. A) fabella narro.

Aliqui (N. 26. B) unus argumentum tueor.

Fertilis Germania locus (N. 6. A) occupo.

Supero paternus honor, avitus æquo. (N. 48.)

Qui (N. 72) suspicio consecutus res aliquot augeo.

Præterea duo templum sum egregius, Ceres unus, alter

(N. 171. Obs. 2. a) Libera.

Accipio ab Isidorus litteræ, et postea datus bini. (N. 18.  
Obs.)

Ille autem, qui cupio Clodius, sum legatio aliquis.

Vagor egens (N. 47) cum conjux ex liberi.

*Hic vide Notam 46.*

### 5 B. Prædicative.

Miser sum ambitio honosque contentio.

In liber vero populus, exercendus sum facilitas.

Philosophus sententia de hic res varius sum.

Res capio bellum (*abl.*) noster jus video.

Scævola prudentia (*abl.*) doctus fio.



We are more lengthy on this subject than is necessary.  
What is seemly is right, and what is right is seemly.

---

In a matter which is not dubious he employs witnesses who are not dubious.

The Macedonians were introduced into the Senate-house first.

They may be timid and inactive, who entertain scruples.

Of all kinds of society (*pl.*) none is more excellent, none more permanent than when good men, similar in character, are united by intimacy.

True friendship seems to me to be richer and more splendid. I know not whether this one is more dangerous as a rival than that one as a foe.

A long and serious dispute arose whether virtue were intuitive.

6. *A word is understood when omitted by the figure Ellipsis.*

Many men have ruined their parents, many their friends, some their country.

Many fall on both sides, more receive wounds.

The tears of my friends sometimes soften me.

No cities, no walls will receive him.

Our men bravely sustained their charge.

Whose (*what man's*) name was kept secret? but who (*N. 51. Obs. 1*) heard my name?

He left the winter quarters of the army.

I defend many men, many states, all Sicily.

---

Of all the crimes of all men I have seen or heard none more disgraceful than this.

I ought not to exhort you at greater length.

He disturbed all the province, and chiefly its distant parts.

Not white hairs, nor wrinkles can of a sudden usurp authority.

Longior hic locus (*abl.*) sum quam necesse sum.  
 Qui decorus sum sum honestum, et qui honestus sum sum decorus.

Utor in res non dubius testis non dubius.

Prior Macedo in curia introduco.

Ille timidus et ignavus sum licet, qui respectus habeo.  
 Omnis societas nullus præstans sum, nullus firmus, quam  
 quum vir bonus, mos similis, familiaritas conjungo.

Divcs ego et affluens video sum verus amicitia.  
 Nescio an infestus hic sum (*subj.*) adversarius quam ille  
 hostis.

Inter hic diu multumque disputo (*impers. pass.*) num virtus  
 ingēnitus sum (*subj.*).

6. *Vox intelligitur omissa per Ellipsin.*<sup>1</sup>

Multus (*homo*) parens, multus amicus, nonnullus patria  
 perdo. (*N.* 50.)

Multus (*homo*) utrinque cado, multus vulnus accipio.

Lacrima meus (*familiaris*) ego interdum mollio.

Nullus is (*N.* 51) urbs accipio, nullus mœnia.

Noster (*miles*) fortiter is (*N.* 52. *A*) impetus fero.

Quis (*N.* 52. *B*) nomen occulto? quis autem (*N.* 301) meus  
 nomen audio?

Hibernus (*castra*) exercitus relinquo.

Defendo multus mortalis (*N.* 53), multus civitas, Sicilia  
 totus.

Ex omnis omnis (*N.* 55. 1) flagitium nullus turpis video,  
 nullus audio.

Multus (*verbum*, *N.* 55. 1) tu hortor non debeo.

Provincia omnis ac maxime longinquus (*locus*) is turbo.

Non canus (*capillus*), non ruga repente auctoritas arripio  
 possum.

<sup>1</sup> In the examples to this Rule omit, or write in a parenthesis, the  
 Latin words printed in italics.

On the right and left hand two seas shut you in.  
 Our ancestors built a new city in so short a time.  
 Why do we not mount our horses, and go to see with our  
 own eyes the characters of our wives?  
 He sent for other workmen from the continent.

7. *Adjectives are used as Substantives.*

Obs. To this rule also refer *Neuter Participles and Pronouns placed abstractly.*

The hour has passed. The end is now at hand.  
 We shall more easily attain the highest good.  
 And fortune bears the blame of all these evils.  
 How many things did Ulysses suffer!  
 But we will say nothing of past events.  
 Scipio had said this, when a servant came in.  
 What are we doing? what do we say?

They find her sitting in the middle of the house.  
 Can you then deny the premises, when you grant the  
 conclusions?  
 It is a bitter and sad thing, which our fortune compels us to  
 confess.  
 The want of all things increases, and the expectation of help  
 from without grows less.  
 Athens even at this day has many things worth seeing.  
 The line of battle being formed, each appeared to keep his  
 purpose.  
 From my brother's letter I learnt certain incredible facts,  
 and they (*those facts*) have been confirmed.

8. *A Substantive agrees in Case with that to which it is in Apposition.*

8A. *To a Substantive, Pronoun, and sometimes to a Sentence, a Substantive of the same thing may be put in Apposition in the same Case.*<sup>1</sup>

Three very powerful cities, the capitals of Etruria, sought peace.

---

<sup>1</sup> On the various modes of Apposition see Kennedy's 'Progressive Grammar,' § 113. 1. a. p. 202.

Dexter laevusque (*manus, abl.*) duo mare vos claudo.  
 Majores noster novus urbs tam brevis (*tempus*) ædifico.  
 Quin conscendo equus, invisioque præsens noster (*uxor*)  
 ingenium?  
 Alius ex continens (*N. 53*) faber arcesso.

7. *Adjectiva pro Substantivis ponuntur.*

Obs. *Hæc etiam refer Neutra Adjectiva et Pronomina abstracte posita.*

Prætereo hora. Jam adsum extremus. (*N. 54. 1.*)  
 Facile summus bonus consequor.  
 Atque hic malus omnis culpa fortuna sustineo.  
 Quam multus (*N. 54. 2*) patior Ulixes!  
 Sed præteritus omitto. (*N. 112.*)  
 Dico hic Scipio, quum puer intervenio.  
 Quis (*N. 51. Obs. 2*) ago? quis dico?

Is in medius ædes (*N. 6. I*) sedens invenio.  
 Possum (*pl.*) igitur principium nego, quum extremus  
 concedo?  
 Acerbus et miser sum, qui fateor ego fortuna noster cogo.

Cresco inopia omnis (*N. 55. 2*), et minuo (*pass.*) expectatio  
 externus opis (*N. 6 D*).  
 Athenæ nunc quoque multus visendus habeo.  
 Instructus acies, teneo uterque propositus videor (*imperf.*).

Ex frater litteræ incredibilis quidam cognosco, isque (*N. 51.*  
*Obs. 2*) confirmo.

8. *Substantivum Casu congruit cum eo cui apponitur.*

8A. *Substantivo, Pronomini, et interdum Sententiæ, Apponi potest Substantivum ejusdem rei in eodem Casu.*

Tres validus urbæ, Etruria caput, pax peto.

He storms and plunders Carteia, a wealthy city, the capital of that tribe.

Hear the ancient oration of Archytas, a pre-eminently great and illustrious man.

They decreed an equal number of ships to Cneius Octavius, the prætor of the preceding year.

We ask this of you, a frantic and violent man.

Lo ! I, the consul, will be the first to follow you and your footsteps.

I defended the republic when a young man, I will not desert it when an old one.

I loved Quintus Maximus, him, I mean, who retook Tarentum, like one of my own age.

---

What answer shall I make to you, my brother Quintus ?

Scipio will have to do with Hannibal, who was a soldier long since when a mere boy, a general when scarce a youth.

Manius Curius devoted himself for the republic, before the consulship of Decius, in his own fourth consulship.

I went to Capua with him in his fourth consulship.

We, your soldiers, beseech you to give us an opportunity of fighting.

Both of them (*they, each of them*) lead their army from the camp.

The most distinguished of the senators were hastily sent.

They return to their homes, filled one by the other with reports.

He saw the doors standing open, and the labourers intent each on his own work.

Athens has many things worth seeing, the citadel, the harbours, the walls joining the Piræus to the town, the docks, the statues of gods and men.

Such progress have we made towards the only things for which we strive, riches and luxury.

Toil and pleasure, things most unlike in their nature, are connected by a certain natural bond.

Then he enumerates those things which are in their nature fluid, as water and air.

You came forth suddenly, like a serpent out of its hiding-place.

Carteia, urbs opulentus, caput is gens, expugno diripioque.  
(*N.* 98.)

Accipio (*pl.*) vetus oratio Archytas, magnus in primus  
(*N.* 222) et præclarus vir.

Par navis numerus Cn. Octavius (*dat.*), prætor prior annus,  
decerno.

Ille a (*R.* 58) tu, homo vesanus ac furiosus, requiro.

Primus (*N.* 94. *Obs.*) en! ego consul tui ac tuus vestigium  
sequor.

Defendo respublica adolescens, non desero senex. (*N.* 47. 2.)

Ego Q. Maximus, is qui Tarentum recipio, ita diligo, ut  
(*N.* 102) æqualis.

---

Quis tu, Quintus frater, respondeo?

Scipio (*dat.*) res sum cum Hannibal, puer quondam miles,  
vixdum juvenis (*N.* 6. *F'*) imperator.

M'. Curius ante Decius consul se pro respublica quartus  
consulatus devoveo.

Cum is quartum consul proficiscor ad Capua.

Tu miles (*N.* 47. 2) tuus oro, ut ego pugno copia facio.

Uterque is ex castra exercitus educo. (*N.* 99. 1.)

Mitto confestim honoratus quisque (*N.* 174) e Patres.

Alius ab alius impletus rumor domus redeo. (*N.* 99. 1.)

Patens janua, intentusque opifex suus quisque opus video.  
(*N.* 99. 2.)

Athenæ multus visendus habeo, arx, portus, murus Piræus  
urbs jungens, navale, simulacrum deus homoque. (*N.*  
101. 1.)

Adeo in qui laboro solus cresco, divitiæ luxuriaque.

Labor voluptasque, dissimilis<sup>†</sup> (*N.* 101. 2) natura, societas  
quidam inter se naturalis sum innexus.

Tum is, qui natura fluo, dinumero, ut (*N.* 102) et aqua et  
aër. (*N.* 5. *H.* 2.)

Repente, tanquam serpens e latibulum (*pl.*), prodeo.

And that well matched pair, Piso and Gabinius, saw this.

The Athenians, a most prudent state, by one naval battle ruined for ever their own flourishing republic.

The colony of Fregellæ (*N.* 104) was seized in the night by the Samnites.

For as long as Cn. Pompey, the conqueror of every nation, was resisting, they thought that they could never destroy the republic.

Then indeed that excellent mother, victorious over her daughter, began to triumph openly in her joy.

Shall we leave beneath your feet Argos and Lacedæmon, two most illustrious cities, once the luminaries of Greece?

Spurius Postumius and (*N.* 299) Titus Veturius, the consuls, were defeated by Caius Pontius the Samnite.

But I used to think Cneius and Publius Scipio fortunate in the attendance of noble youths.

Philip had, as you know, two sons, Demetrius and Perseus.

I think that something also should be said on the subject of burial and sepulture, no difficult matter.

The Romans come out, the very thing which we were afraid of, to hinder our march.

Mount Taurus is now the limit of your dominion.

You were the cause of this most lamentable war.

Socrates is by right called the father of philosophy.

Who was the author of the war?

He never stood for the consulship: he was twice elected consul.

Salamis is quoted as witness of a most brilliant victory.

8B. *There is another kind of Apposition, where the Noun, by which an answer is made, is placed in the same Case as that by which the question is put.*

Obs. *Sometimes the Noun, which is thus put in Apposition, stands Interrogatively.*

Who defended Cornelius? No one.

What, pray, does the farmer demand? Nothing.

Atque hic res par ille similis, Piso et Gabinus, video.  
(*N.* 103. 1.)

Athenienses, prudens civitas, unus navalis pugna florens  
respublica suus in perpetuus affligo.

Fregellæ colonia a Samnites nox occupo. (*N.* 103. 2.)

Resistens enim Cn. Pompeius (*abl. abs.*), victor (*N.* 105)  
omnis gens (*pl.*), nunquam sui ille respublica deleo  
possum duco.

Tum vero ille egregius mater, victrix (*N.* 105) filia, palam  
triumpho gaudium cœpi.

Argi et Lacedæmon (*N.* 5. H. 1. b), duo clarus urbs, lumen  
quondam Græcia, sub pes tuus relinquo? (*N.* 106. 1.  
et 98.)

Sp. Postumius, T. Veturius, consul, a C. Pontius Samnis,  
supero. (*N.* 106. 1.)

Ego vero Cn. et P. Scipio (*pl.*) comitatus nobilis juvenis  
(*N.* 6. *F.*) fortunatus videor.

Duo, ut scio (*pl.*), habeo filius Philippus, Demetrius et  
Perseus. (*N.* 106. 2.)

Aliquis etiam de humatio et sepultura dicendus existimo,  
res non difficilis.

Exeo, is (*N.* 77) qui timeo, ad impediendus iter Romani.

Terminus sum nunc imperium vester mons Taurus.

Hic luctuosus bellum semen tu sum.

Socrates parens philosophia jus dico.

Quis sum auctor bellum?

Consulatus peto nunquam: fio consul bis.

Cito Salamis clarus testis victoria.

8b. *Alterum est Appositionis genus, ubi Nomen, per quod  
respondetur, ponitur in eodem Casu atque id per quod  
interrogatur.*

*Obs. Interdum Nomen, quod ita Apponitur, Interrogative stat.*

Quis Cornelius defendo? Nemo.

Quis tandem (*N.* 45) postulo arator? Nihil.



Whose therefore is the crime? No one's.  
He sent a messenger. Whom?

---

What sort of person is the first to carry this news to America? Mallius Glaucia, your client and friend.

To what sort of men does this cohort belong? To Volusius the soothsayer and Cornelius the physician.

Who refined Dion of Syracuse with all kinds of learning? Did not Plato?

For what does this man want? Experience, or talent?

What are you expecting? War, or new account-books?

He keeps saying that there is a strife of parties. Of what parties?

Cæsar as dictator holding the comitia, Julius Cæsar and Publius Servilius are elected consuls.

It is necessary for you to be brave men.

The man was undoubtedly the breaker of the late truce.

Pacuvius Calavius, a noble and influential person, was head of the party which had won over the state to the Carthaginians.

He, whom now we call a foreigner, was among our ancestors called a foe.

That wisdom, which I have called the chief, is the knowledge of things human and divine.

*9. The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person : but in Case belongs to its own Clause.*

I, who made haste, am very far distant.

But thou, who defendest him, what dost thou say?

I address you, who have shed much blood for the republic.

Those consuls, whom we have named, entered upon their office.

Could you devastate this land, which produced and nourished you?

Remove for a little while those swords which we see.

I have received your letter, which Cornificius brought.

There he left all the corn which he had conveyed thither.

They will seek the camp, which has been taken.

Quis igitur sum crimen? Nullus.

Nuntius mitto. Quis?

Hic qui (*N. 25*) primus Ameria nuntio? Mallius Glaucia,  
tuus cliens et familiaris.

Iste cohors qui homo (*gen.*) sum? Volusius haruspex et  
Cornelius medicus.

Quis Dion Syracusius doctrina omnis expolio? Non Plato?

Quis enim hic homo absum? Ususne res, an ingenium?

Quis exspecto? Bellum, an tabula novus? (*N. 44.*)

Pars contentio sum dictito. Quis pars?

Dictator habens comitia Cæsar (*abl. absol.*), consul creo  
Julius Cæsar et P. Servilius.

Tu necesse sum fortis vir sum. (*N. 95.*)

Vir sum, haud dubie proximus indutiæ (*pl.*) ruptor.

Pacuvius Calavius, vir nobilis potensque, princeps is factio  
sum, qui attraho res ad Pœnus.

Hostis apud majores (*pl.*) noster is dico, qui nunc peregrinus dico.

Ille sapientia, qui princeps dico, res sum divinus atque  
humanus scientia.

9. *Relativum cum Antecedente congruit Genere, Numero,  
et Personâ: sed Casu spectat suam Clausulam.*

Ego, qui festino, longe (*N. 10. B*) absum.

Sed tu, qui is defendo, quis dico?

Vos appello, qui multus pro (*R. 58*) respublica (*N. 3*)  
sanguis effundo.

Consul is, qui dico, magistratus occipio.

Possum (*N. 310*) populor hic terra, qui tu gigno atque alo?

Removeo (*sing.*) gladius parumper ille qui video.

Litteræ accipio tuus, qui Cornificius fero.

Ibi frumentum omnis, qui eo deveho, relinquo.

Peto castra, qui capio.

The auxiliary troops, which had come together from all parts, withdrew.

Lysander, of whom I lately made mention, spoke thus.

A youth was present, whose father had obtained the sovereignty of all Gaul.

He has two daughters, whose conversation is known to me. I come now to the pleasures of husbandmen, with which I am wonderfully pleased.

He has left his country, for which it had been glorious to die.

---

And this the soothsayers thus predicted, both those who were in the city, and those whom they had summoned from Etruria.

Then the sentinels, whose notice the ascent of the enemy had escaped, were summoned.

They sacrifice all the captured animals which may be left.

Concerning these gods they have almost the same opinion as other nations.

The Arverni make the same requests: and he, being induced by their entreaties, moves his camp from the Bituriges towards the Arverni.

Some of our friends think otherwise: and I perceive that they are many in number, but without experience.

He comes to the river Liger, which divides the Bituriges from the Ædui.

They are enclosed on one side by the river Rhine, very broad and very deep, which divides the Helvetian territory from the Germans.

And among the rude military jokes which they utter, he was called the second founder of the city.

Let us come to the two living persons, who are left of their number.

He began to make a rampart on the nearest hill to the camp of the Gauls which he could occupy.

Another is gathering fruit under the tree which I planted. The first place at which they landed is called Troy.

I will be of the same mind as each one of you ought to be of towards them.

He led his army to the river Thames, which river can with difficulty be crossed on foot.

Qui undique convenio, auxilium discedo.

Lysander, qui modo mentio facio, ita dico.

Adsum adolescens, qui (*N. 52. B*) pater principatus totus Gallia obtineo.

Filia habeo duo, qui sermo ego (*dat.*) sum notus.

Venio nunc ad voluptas agricola, qui (*R. 85*) ego incredibiliter delecto.

Patria relinquo, pro qui morior præclarus sum (*perf.*). =

Isque ita cano vates, quique in urbs sum (*imperf.*), quique ex Etruria accio.

Tum vigil, qui fallo ascendens hostis (*sing.*), cito.

Qui supero (*fut. perf.*), animal captus immolo.

De hic deus idem fere, qui (*N. 71*) reliquus gens, habeo opinio.

Arverni idem oro : qui (*N. 72*) ille preces permotus castra ex Bituriges moveo in Arverni versus. (*N. 121. B.*)

Aliquis e noster aliter existimo : qui quidem video sum multus, sed imperitus.

Ad flumen Ligeris (*N. 5. G. 1*) venio, qui (*N. 73. 1*) Bituriges ab Ædui divido.

Contineo unus ex pars flumen Rhenus, latus atque altus, qui (*N. 73. 2*) ager Helvetius a Germani divido.

Interque jocus militaris, qui inconditus (*N. 74. A. 1*) jacio, conditor alter urbs appello (*imperf.*).

Venio ad vivus, qui duo (*N. 74. A. 2*) ex ille numerus reliquus sum.

In tumulus, qui proximus (*N. 74. A. 2*) castra Galli capio possum, vallum duco cæpi.

Qui arbor consero (*N. 74. B. 1*), sub is lego alius fructus.

In qui primus egredior locus (*N. 74. B. 2*), Troja voco.

Qui animus (*abl.*) unus quisque vos debeo sum in ille, hic (*N. 75. 1*) sum.

Ad flumen Tamesis (*N. 5. G. 2*) exercitus duco, qui (*N. 78.*

1) flumen pēs (*pl.*) ægre transeo possum.

9 A. *The Antecedent is often understood : it is sometimes included in a Possessive Pronoun.*

*Neuter Relatives are often placed Abstractly (R. 3) : they often have a Sentence for an Antecedent.*

There both are, and there have been many men, who have withdrawn themselves from public affairs.

We often love those men whom we have never seen.

Where are the (*those*) men whose deeds you are imitating ?

Art thou the man whose kindness has enriched many ?

He planned the slaughter of us who had remained.

Let us see what has (*those things which have*) been said about friendship.

We loathe what (*that which*) others seek.

And you can foresee future events, which above everything else lessens anxiety.

---

Let those follow, who are going to prevent the standard from being taken by the enemy.

Am I ungrateful ? who is less so than I, who have borne such toil for you ?

And so a naval force was ever a care to him who followed this policy.

Those, whom fear had driven within the rampart, were all slain.

For I think that he, who is master of the sea, will be victorious.

They burn all the corn, except what (*that which*) they were going to take with them.

The whole affair is not worthy of my strength, who am both able and accustomed to support greater burdens.

For we readily believe what we wish ; and we hope that others think what we ourselves think.

For your soldiers wish the same as the enemy's.

You have exposed yourself to dangers without a cause, than which nothing can be more foolish.

Nor did I gain the day by violence and arms, as was easy to be done, and as ought to have been done.

9 A. *Antecedens sæpe intelligitur: interdum in Possessivo Pronomine includitur.*

*Neutra Relativa sæpe Abstracte ponuntur: sæpe Sententiam pro Antecedente habent.*

Multus et sum et sum, qui a (R. 58) negotium publicus sui removeo.

Is sæpe, qui nunquam video, diligo.

Ubi sum is qui (N. 52. B) factum imitor (*sing.*)?

Tunc (N. 300) ille sum, qui multus bonitas locupletus?

Noster, qui remaneo, cædes molior.

Ille video, qui de (R. 58) amicitia dico.

Qui peto alius, ego fastidio.

Et, qui maxime cura levo, futurum prospicio possum (*sing.*

N. 310). ✓

Sequor, qui capio signum ab hostis prohibeo. (N. 36.)

An ingratus sum? quis minus, qui tantus pro vos gero (*subj.*) labor (*pl.*)?

Itaque, qui hic consilium sequor, navalis apparatus is (N. 75. 1) semper cura sum.

Qui (N. 75. 2) intra vallum ago pavor, omnis cædo.

Existimo enim, qui mare teneo (*subj.*), is (N. 75. 3) victor sum.

Fruentum omnis, præter qui (N. 76) se cum porto, comburo.

Totus negotium non sum dignus vis (N. 6. G) noster (N. 61.

Obs. 2), qui magnus onus sustineo et possum (*subj.*) et soleo.

Nam qui (*pl.*) volo, et credo libenter; et qui sentio ipse, reliquus sentio spero.

Idem (*sing.*) enim tuus, qui hostis miles, volo.

Offero tu periculum sine causa, qui nihil possum sum stultus.

Nec, is qui (N. 77) facilis fio sum, et qui fio debeo, vis (N. 6. G) armaque supero.

9b. *The Correlatives, qualis, quantus, quot, and the Universals, quisquis, quicunque, quotcunque, and the like, often use the same construction as the Relative.* See Notes 79 and 80.

You have an opportunity, such as no one has ever had.

For there was a concourse of as great a multitude as our city holds.

For whatever proceeds from wisdom, that is to be sought after.

For he shall die forthwith, whosoever shall be the ring-leader of a mutiny.

Let therefore that indignity, however great it is, be submitted to.

In this most cruel war, a war such as (*of a kind that*) no barbarous nation ever carried on with its own citizens, this law was established.

A victory ensues, such as (*so great as*) no one up to that day had gained over the Samnites.

And the consul indeed was moving towards his colleague with the very longest marches he could.

He has been consul elect as many years as he is old; he cannot get made consul.

Just as many kinds of orators are found, as we have said that there are kinds of oratory.

I know that all things, whatsoever we do, are subject to a thousand accidents.

Whatever Lentulus had, however much it was, he got it all from learning.

On this count I can answer that, whatever I am, I am still the man I then was.

Let there be of equal power with him as many as ever the senate shall have decreed, or the people ordered.

And there is no one such as all ought to be.

#### ON THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

10. *With a Composite Subject plural Words agree.*

She fixes the knife in her heart. Her husband and father utter a simultaneous cry.

9B. *Correlativa*, qualis, quantus, quot, et *Universalis*, quisquis, quicumque, quotcunque, cum *similibus*, eodem *sæpe*, quæ *Relativum*, constructione utuntur.

Tempus habeo (*sing.*) talis, qualis nemo habeo unquam.  
Nam tantus multitudo, quantus capio urbs noster, concursus sum.

Quisquis (*R. 9. B*) enim a sapientia proficiscor, is sum expetendus.

Morior enim extemplo, quicumque (*R. 9. A*) sum seditio auctor.

Subeo ergo iste, quantuscunque sum, indignitas.

In hic crudelis bellum, qualis (*N. 78. 1*) bellum nullus unquam barbaria cum suis gens gero, lex hic sum (*N. 35*) constitutus.

Sequor victoria, quantus de Samnites nemo ad is dies (*N. 6. K. 2*) pario.

Et consul quidem, quantus maximus iter (*N. 74. B. 2*) possum, ad collega duco. (*N. 114. A.*)

Tot annus, quot habeo, designatus consul sum; fio consul non possum.

Quot oratio (*pl.*) genus (*N. 74. B. 1*) sum dico, totidem orator reperio.

Omnis, quicumque (*R. 9. B*) ago, subjectus sum mille casus scio.

Lentulus, quisquis habeo, quantuscunque sum, ille totus habeo ex disciplina.

De nomen hic respondeo possum ego, qualiscunque sum, is sum, qui tum sum.

Hic potestas (*abl.*) par, quotcumque senatus cerno populusve jubeo, tot sum. (*N. 305. 2.*)

Nec quisquam sum talis, quæ is (*N. 80. B*) sum omnis oportet.

#### DE SUBJECTO COMPOSITO.

10. *Cum Subjecto Composito Pluralia congruunt.*<sup>1</sup>

Culter in cor (*abl.*) defigo. Conclamo vir paterque. (*N. 84. 1.*)

<sup>1</sup> On the agreement of the Composite Subject with a singular verb, see Primer, p. 133, F. 3.



Hope and fear were agitating their minds.

And so Scipio and Lælius having disembarked proceed to the king.

I call to witness Ceres and Proserpine, whose sacred rites the Roman people most religiously observe.

---

The very opportune death of Hamilcar and the boyhood of Hannibal put off the war.

The loss of Sicily and Sardinia vexed him, a man of high spirit.

He has entrusted to your fidelity Sicily and Africa, without which he cannot defend the city and Italy.

A joyful senate and (*N.* 299) a still more joyful people followed him on his departure from the temple, congratulating on this side the master of the horse, and on that the dictator.

If Socrates or Aristippus have done or said anything contrary to the custom and usage of society, he thinks that he may do the same.

Perseus indeed and his elder son Philip were delivered to Postumius.

10A. *The Verb, Adjective, or Relative not unfrequently agrees with the nearest Substantive.*

His poverty and loneliness are mentioned.

The consciousness of a well-spent life and the remembrance of many good deeds are most pleasant.

The gods and the fortune of the city protected them.

---

All the senate and people went out to meet them as they came to Capua.

I see, conscript Fathers, that the faces and eyes of all are turned on me.

Both the Peripatetics and the old Academy grant me this.

For where else should I fly, I to whom neither my house, nor a banquet, nor yet night is safe?

Marcus Antonius and Caius Cassius, tribunes of the people, interpose.

Spes et metus (*N.* 84. 2) misceo animus.  
Itaque Scipio et Lælius egressus ad rex pergo.

Ceres et Libera obtestor, qui sacrum populus Romanus religiose tueor (*sing.*).

---

Mors Hamilcar peropportunus et pueritia Hannibal differo (*N.* 84. 2) bellum.

Ango (*imperf.*) ingens spiritus vir Sicilia Sardiniaque amissus. (*N.* 89. 1.)

Sicilia atque Africa, sine qui urbs atque Italia tueor non possum, vester fides committo.

Digressus is templum lætus senatus, lætus populus, gratulans hinc magister eques, hinc dictator, prosequor.

Si quis Socrates aut (*N.* 86. 1. *b*) Aristippus contra mos consuetudoque civilis (*sing.*) facio loquorve (*subj.*), idem se arbitror licet.

Perseus quidem cum (*N.* 85) magnus filius Philippus Postumius trado.

10A. *Verbum, Adjectivum, vel Relativum haud raro cum proximo Substantivo congruit.*

Hic inopia et solitudo commemoro. (*N.* 90. 1.)

Conscientia bene actus vita multusque benefactum recordatio jucundus sum.

Is deus ac fortuna urbs tutor.

---

Veniens Capua cunctus senatus populusque obviam (*R.* 39. *B*) egredior. (*N.* 90. 1.)

Video, Patres conscriptus, in ego omnis os atque oculus converto (*perf.*).

Hic ego et Peripateticus et vetus Academia concedo. (*N.* 90. 2.)

Quo enim alio confugio (*pres. subj.*, see Part II.), qui non domus, non epulæ, non nox tutus sum? (*N.* 90. 3.)

Intercedo M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribunus plebs. (*N.* 90. 4.)

The offices of dictator and consul must be thrown to the ground.

Grief besides, and the wrong and indignity done them, inflame and stimulate their minds.

No god or man envies us.

With you neither the authority of the senate, nor my age, nor the worth and nobility of the master of the horse, are of avail.

They expect that Macedonia will never be theirs, while either I or you are alive.

Can this light, Catiline, or the air of this sky be pleasant to you?

Except error and blame, from which you have ever been free, nothing is to be greatly dreaded by man.

*Here see Note 91.*

11. *If the Persons differ, the Verbs agree with the prior Person.*

Both I and Balbus lifted up our hands.

I and my brother vie in loving this youth.

I proceeded to what you and I had said about my sister

If you and the army are well, it is well.

Bibulus and I have been commanders in near and adjoining provinces.

Or will you and the cohort break through to the camp by your own valour?

Both you and all my friends have been ruined by one deed of mine.

Neither I nor Cæsar had been included among the decemvirs.

What complaint is there, that you or she can make against fortune on this score?

12. *When the Genders differ, the words agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine.*

Then his wife and his children embraced him.

Solum æquandus sum dictatura (*pl.*) consulatusque.

Accendo præterea animus et stimulo dolor, injuria, indignitas. (*N. 90. 1 et 4.*)

Ego nec deus nec homo quisquam invideo. (*N. 86. 1. a.*)

Apud tu nec auctoritas senatus, nec ætas meus, nec virtus nobilitasque magister eques valeo.

Nec ego nec tu incolumis (*abl. abs.*) Macedonia suus sum spero. (*N. 86. 3.*)

Possumne tu hic lux, Catilina, aut hic cælum spiritus sum jucundus?

Præter peccatum ac culpa, qui semper careo, nihil sum homo pertimescendus.

*Hic vide Notam 91.*

11. *In diversitate Personarum Verbum congruit cum priore Persona.*

Tollo manus et ego et Balbus.

Hic adolescens ego et frater meus certatim amo.

Venio ad is (*pl.*) qui ego et tu de soror loquor. (*N. 85.*)

Si tu exercitusque valeo, bene sum. (*R. 4. Obs.*)

Sum imperator ego (*N. 84.*) et Bibulus in propinquus finitimusque provincia.

An tu cohorsque in castra vester virtus perrumpo? (*N. 34. 1.*)

Unus meus factum et tu et omnis meus corruo.

In decemvir neque ego neque Cæsar (*N. 86. 2.*) habeo.

Quis sum, qui tu aut ille cum fortuna hic nomen (*R. 44.*) queror possum (*subj.*)?

12. *In diversitate Generum Adjectiva congruunt cum Masculo potius quam cum Feminino.*

Uxor deinde is ac liberi amplector.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This example might be explained by *R. 10 A.* But if *filius* were substituted for *liberi*, the Plural Participle would still be in the Masculine Gender.

I call to witness Latona and Apollo and Diana, whose ancient seat he has plundered.

---

The children of Ceres were called Liber and Libera.

The husband adds a sum of money to the dowry of the wife.

Whichever of them survives, to that one fall the shares of both, together with the profits of the previous time.

They sent for his daughter and his younger son from Samothrace, and entertained them with all liberal treatment

The king and the king's fleet have set out together.

13. *To things without life the Neuter Gender is often attributed.*

The wall and the gate were struck by lightning, and two men killed.

Add aqueducts, irrigations of fields, moles, and (*N.* 299) harbours, which we cannot have without the labour of men.

---

A statue of Jupiter and a tree near the temple had been struck by lightning.

Anger and avarice were more powerful than discipline.

But Appius gained the day by party-spirit and private interest, which ever have been and ever will be the bane of public counsels.

We bring you here peace and war ; take which you please.

Duillius, when returning from supper, used to delight in many torches and a flute-player, which he, as a private individual, had assumed without any precedent.

14. *Agreement is varied by the figure Attraction.* (See Primer, note, p. 133, E. 2.)

14 A. *A Verb or Participle, placed between two Nominatives, sometimes agrees with the latter alone.*

The victims led in front (*going before*) are not the least part of the triumph.

The whole nation were called Veneti.

---

Latona et Apollo et Diana obtestor, qui iste sedes antiquus compilo.

---

Ceres (*abl.*) natus nomino Liber et Libera.

Vir pecunia cum dos uxor communico. Uter (*N.* 172) is vita (*abl.*) supero (*N.* 34. 2), ad is pars (*sing.*) uterque cum fructus superior tempus (*pl.*) pervenio.

Filia is cum (*N.* 85) parvus filius a Samothrace accitus omnis liberalis cultus habeo. (*N.* 236.)

Rex regisque classis una proficiscor. (*N.* 88. 1.)

13. *Rebus inanimis attribuitur sæpe Genus Neutrum.*

Murus et porta fulmen (*abl.*) ico, et duo homo exanimo. (*N.* 62. *D.* 1.)

Addo (*sing.*) ductus aqua (*N.* 109. 1), ager irrigatio, moles, portus, qui sine homo opera habeo non possum.

---

Tango de cælum signum Jupiter arborque templum propinquus.

Ira et avaritia imperium potens (*N.* 89. 2) sum.

Sed factio respectusque res (*pl.*) privatus, qui semper officio officioque publicus consilium, Appius vinco.

Hic vos bellum et pax porto; uter placeo, sumo.

Delecto (*pass.*) Duillius, a cæna rediens, creber funale (*sing.*) et tibicen, qui (*N.* 88. 2) se nullus exemplum privatus sumo.

14. *Congruentia variatur per Attractionem.*

14 A. *Verbum vel Participium, inter duos Nominativos positum, interdum cum posteriore solo concordat.*

Pars non parvus triumphus sum victima<sup>1</sup> præcedens.

Gens universus Veneti appellor. (*N.* 62. *B.* 2.)

---

<sup>1</sup> *Victima*, the Subject of the Verb, is to be considered as the former Nominative, though it is placed last.

Is this then a crime? not at all: unless a distinction is to be considered a disgrace.

To be content with one's own is the greatest and most certain wealth.

Several colonies were led forth by him, called the Ancient Latins.

14 B. *A Relative, placed between two Substantives of the same thing, often agrees with the latter only.*

Men take care of that sphere which is called the earth.

Pompey, who was the light of our empire, is dead.

The enactments of the ten tables were passed, which even at this day are the source of all public and private law.

The Senones, who are a very powerful state and of great influence among the Gauls, drove Cavarinus from his kingdom and home.

Our legislator did not wish the state to be in the hand of a few individuals whom you call the senate.

To man there was given a soul drawn from those everlasting fires, which you call constellations and stars.

Neither did he style you the originator and inventor of that wealth, which would have been high praise.

15. *Agreement with the meaning takes place by the figure called Synesis, especially in Poetry.* (See Primer, note, 133, E. 3.)

Part of the soldiers strengthen the guards of the gates: part encircle the rampart.

The proconsul asked for a triumph; the greater part of the ten legates, who had been with him, spoke against this.

Of the soldiers there was a great part, who had fought (*carried on affairs*) successfully.

Death surprised some before they could move, others half asleep in their beds, the greatest part as they were hurrying to arms.

Hic igitur sum crimen? minime: nisi honos ignominia  
putandus sum. (*N.* 96. 1.)

Contentus suis res (*pl.*) sum magnus sum certusque divitiarum.  
(*N.* 96. 2.)

Ab his colonia aliquot deduco, Priscus Latini appellatus.

14 *B.* *Relativum, inter duo Substantiva ejusdem rei collocatum, cum posteriore solo sæpe concordat.*

Homo tuor ille globus qui terra dicor.

Pompeius, qui imperium noster lumen sum, extinguo.  
(*N.* 32. 2.)

Decem tabula lex perfero, qui nunc quoque fons omnis  
publicus privatusque sum (*N.* 97) jus.

Senones, qui sum civitas in primis (*N.* 222) firmus et  
magnus inter Galli auctoritas, Cavarinus regnum domus-  
que expello.

Noster legumlator non in paucis manus respublica sum  
volo, qui vos senatus appello.

Homo (*pl.*) animus deus ille sempiternus ignis, qui sidus  
et stella voco (*pl.*).

Neque tu princeps atque inventor is copia dico<sup>1</sup>, qui sum  
(*imperf. indic.*) magnus laus.

15. *Congruentia cum sensu fit per Synesin, præsertim  
apud Poetas.*

Pars miles porta statio firmo: pars vallum cingo.

Proconsul triumphus postulo; contradico magnus (*N.* 81. 1)  
pars decem legatus qui cum is sum.

Magnus pars miles sum, qui (*N.* 81. 2) res prospere gero.

Alius immobilis, alius semisomnus in cubile suus, magnus  
pars ad arma trepidans cædes opprimo.

<sup>1</sup> The first sentence is here to be considered as the former Substantive. It might have been (*R.* 12. *B.*), but is not, followed by a Neuter Relative.



A great number of missiles, discharged from a distance, were inflicting many wounds on our men.

A great part of the horses were dragged by their reins from the sterns, swimming.

Friendship is of that class of things which are profitable.

The rest of the multitude were chosen by lot, every tenth man, for punishment.

This announcement being heard induces all the rest of the multitude of volunteers to lay down (*deprives them of*) their arms : and as many as two thousand five hundred of them are taken alive.

They closed the gates, exhorting the multitude to prefer death to slavery.

And now the crowd did not separate from that spot even at night, and (they) threatened that they would break open the prison.

#### ON CASES.

##### *On the Cases of Subject and Complement.*

16. *The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative.* (See Primer, 134. A.)

Obs. *For Examples see Rule 1.*

17. *The Copula sum is often omitted.* (On the figure Ellipsis see Primer, p. 133. E.)

Where then is that courage of yours? It is here.

All were slain ; the camp was plundered.

For hence are we sprung : here are our sacred rites, here is our family, here are many traces of our ancestors.

---

I leave unsaid how false, how trifling these things are.

Here however there are rumours that Murcus has perished by shipwreck : but of no statement is there any author.

Why was Brutus exempted from the laws? why were provinces given to Cassius? why was the number of legates increased? And these things were done by you. They are not therefore homicides.

These things were obsequiously done, and a near day was appointed for assembling.

Magnus vis eminus missus telum multus noster vulnus infero.

Equus pars magnus nans lorum a puppis traho (*imperf.*). (N. 81.)

Amicitia sum ex is genus, qui prosum.

Cetera (N. 175) multitudo sors, decimus quisque, ad supplicium lego (*perf.*).

Hic vox auditus reliquus omnis multitudo voluntarius (N. 48) exuo arma: qui (*gen.*) ad duo mille et quingenti (N. 19. 3) vivus capio.

Claudo porta, multitudo, ut mors servitus præpono (N. 82. 1), hortans.

Jam ne nox quidem turba ex is locus dilabor (*sing. imperf.*), refringoque carcer minor. (N. 82. 2.)

#### DE CASIBUS.

##### *De Casibus Subjecti et Complementi.*

16. *Finiti Verbi Subjectum Nominativus est.*

17. *Copula sum sæpe omittitur.*

Ubi ergo tuus ille animus? Adsum.

Omnis cædo; castra diripio. (N. 62. D. 1.)

Hinc enim ortus sum: hic sacrum, hic genus, hic majores multus vestigium. (N. 62. D. 2.)

---

Omitto quam hic falsus, quam levis. (*supple sint.* N. 62. A.)

Hic rumor tamen Murcus pereo naufragium: sed auctor nullus res quisquam. (N. 62. D. 1.)

Cur Brutus lex solvo? cur provincia Cassius do? cur legatus numerus augeo? Atque hic ago per tu. Non igitur homicida. (N. 62. D. 2.)

Hic obsequenter fio, brevisque dies (*fem.*) ad convenio edico. (N. 62. D. 3.)

For I used to think that there was nothing in these places except rocks and mountains.

A young man hopes that he shall live long. He nourishes a foolish hope.

18. *The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative.*<sup>1</sup>

I do not at all wonder that you fear many kinds of danger. That discovers that the enemy are approaching.

Piso denies that he knows, he denies that he has heard anything : Calenus denies that any news has been brought.

You grieve that three armies have been slain : Antony slew them.

A deserter brings word that twenty cohorts have set out for that place.

You shall hear at the same time both that I have crossed the sea, and that Carthage is being besieged.

It is known that the approaches of the island are fortified.

I find that three hundred and six perished, that one was left.

He cried out that he saw the promontory of Mercury.

Some said that he was playing, some that he was without doubt mad.

Nor did it escape Hannibal that he was being attacked by his own arts.

Nor did it escape Hannibal that the plan of the war was changed with the general.

Accordingly they wrote back that they had never read anything better.

I know for certain that you will bear that burden calmly and wisely.

I quite agree : and so I think that I shall set out.

They trusted that they should shortly have plenty.

They thought that that affair would be protracted to a greater length.

The ambassadors said that they would return hither.

Romulus said that he was a god.

Here however there are rumours that Murcus has perished.

---

<sup>1</sup> The construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive is called Oblique (Indirect) Enunciation.

Nihil enim hic in locus, nisi saxum et mons, cogito. (*Supple*  
esse.)

Spero adolescens diu se vivo. Insipienter spero.

18. *Infinitivi Subjectum in Accusativo ponitur.*<sup>1</sup>

Minime miror tu multus (*N. 10. A*) vereor periculum genus.  
Is hostis (*pl.*) appropinquo aperio.

Nego Piso scio se, nego (*N. 67. A*) audio quisquam: nego  
Calenus res (*sing.*) ullus novus affero.

\*Doleo (*pl.*) tres exercitus interficio: interficio Antonius.

\*Nuntio perfuga viginti cohors eo proficiscor.

Una et trajicio ego audio (*pl.*), et obsideo Carthago.

Constat aditus insula munio. (*N. 66.*)

\*Trecenti sex pereio invenio, unus relinquo.

Exclamo Mercurius promontorium se cerno.

Quidam ludo is, quidam haud dubie insanio aio (*imperf.*).

Nec Hannibal fallit (*perf.*) suus se ars peto,

Nec Hannibal fallit cum dux muto (*N. 66*) bellum ratio.

Ita rescribo nihil unquam se lego bonus.

Tu quidem is onus modice ac sapienter fero certo scio.

\*Prorsus assentior: itaque ego proficiscor puto.

\*Celeriter se habeo copia confido (*imperf.*).

Longe is res duco existimo.

\*Legatus se huc revertor dico.

Romulus dico se deus sum. (*N. 66.*)

Hic rumor (*R. 17*) tamen Murcus pereio.

---

<sup>1</sup> Accusativo cum Infinitivo constructio vocatur Enuntiatio Obliqua.

Men say that truth is in danger only too often, but that it is never extinguished.

He cries out that the enemy's camp is taken, and orders it to be announced everywhere.

I quite agree with you that the deeds of the tyrant will be ratified much more firmly.

You write that they would have attained this same end by the help of others.

This however will be manifest, that their words are contrary to their deeds.

What answer shall I make to my children? That I was not able to secure the safety of Milo?

They did not separate even at night, and they threatened that they would break open the prison.

Fortune had fostered by success this rashness natural to his character: and so it was tolerably clear that he would do every thing with fierce and precipitate haste.

To be free from covetousness is money.

To think that you know this! To think that this shall be handed down to memory!

The more general story is that Remus was killed by Romulus in a passion.

There was no hope that the city could be defended.

I had no suspicion that you were going to cross the sea.

For I am conscious to myself that I have never been too covetous of life.

He marches hastily thither, not in the least doubting that the Romans can be surprised.

19. *Copulative Verbs, whether Finite or Infinitive, generally have a Complement agreeing with the Subject.*

He was a noted observer of the heavens and stars; yet a still more wonderful inventor and constructor of warlike engines.

This is the character of the multitude; it is either obsequiously servile, or proudly domineering.

You allow that you are always the partner of my good fortune.

For me, I confess that death for one's country is glorious. Tiberius Æmilius and Quintus Fabius are made consuls.

Veritas laboro nimis sæpe aio (*N.* 57), exstinguo (*N.* 66) nunquam.

\*Exclamo capio hostis (*pl.*) castra, nuntioque passim jubeo.

Valde tu assentior multo firme actum tyrannus comprobo. (*N.* 65. *A.*)

Scribo ille hic idem per alius assequor. (*N.* 36.)

Tamen ille apparet, verbum res sum contrarius.

Quis respondeo liberi meus? Ego non possum Milo salus tueor? (*Confer R.* 8. *B.*)

Ne nox quidem dilabor (*imperf.*), refringoque carcer minor. (*N.* 67. *A.*)

\*Hic insitus ingenium is temeritas fortuna prosperus successus alo: itaque satis apparet ferociter omnis ac præpropere ago. (*N.* 67. *B.*)

Non sum cupidus pecunia sum. (*N.* 67. *C.*)

Hic tu scio, hic memoria trado? (*N.* 68.)

\*Vulgatus fama sum Remus ab iratus Romulus interficio.

Defendo urbs possum spes nullus sum.

\*Suspicio nullus habeo tu mare transeo.

Nam ego sum conscius nunquam ego nimis cupidus sum vita.

Cursus (*abl.*) propere eo contendo, haudquaquam dubius opprimo Romani possum.

19. *Verba Copulativa sive Finiti sive Infinitivi complementum plerumque cum Subjecto congruens habent.*

Is sum unicus spectator cælum (*sing.*) sidusque; mirabilis tamen inventor ac machinator bellicus tormentum.

Hic (*N.* 93.1) natura multitudo sum; aut servio humiliter, aut superbe dominor.

Socius tu meus commodum (*pl.*) semper sum confiteor.

Equidem (*N.* 60) mors pro patria præclarus sum fateor.

Ti. Æmilius et Q. Fabius consul fio.

We shall live either widows or orphans.

Hanno is taken alive with those who had come last.

Let this by all means be our country, and let us all be called Romans.

We restored the captured property, which by the right of war appeared our own.

For when did Socrates, who can fairly be styled the father of philosophy, do any such thing?

---

The subject is a noble one, and we are, as Fannius said, at leisure.

I indeed do not deny that Alexander was an excellent general.

That was a confession that Rome was the seat of empire, the question concerning which they had so often contended.

I know that natures are diverse, so that one thing is the nature of a horse, another of an ox, a third of a man.

Why do you pursue this wretched and slender prey, you in whose power it now is to be most fortunate?

They exempt Scipio from the laws, in order that it may be lawful for him to be made consul before the regular age.

For that was the year, in which he might be (*it would be lawful to him to be*) legally made consul.

What shall we be? for it will not now be in our power to be neutral.

It was well known that your slaves had come in arms with you to the Capitol.

Rejoicing that they had come, they return as messengers of the victory to Rome.

They say that this body of horse turned out well.

How fully is agriculture praised by Xenophon in that treatise which is entitled the *Oeconomics*!

His son was declared tribune of the soldiers with consular power.

Those therefore are not to be esteemed blessings, with which a person may abound, and yet be very miserable.

Nor should any spot be dearer to you than your country.

He wished to be made tribune of the people a second time.

Vidua aut orba vivo. (N. 92.)

Hanno cum is, qui postremus advenio, vivus capior.

Sum hic sane patria, et Romanus omnis vocor.

Res (*pl.*) captus, qui bellum jus (*R.* 41) noster videor  
(*imperf.*), remitto.

Quando enim Socrates, qui parens philosophia jus (*abl.*)  
dicor possum (N. 308), quisquam talis facio?

---

Præclarus res sum, et sum, ut dico Fannius, otiosus.  
(N. 92.)

Haud equidem abnuo egregius dux sum Alexander.

Is (N. 93. 1) sum confessio caput res Roma sum, de qui  
toties certo (*impers. passive*).

Scio natura sum diversus, ut alius (N. 93. 2) equus (*dat.*)  
sum natura, alius bos, alius homo.

Quid vos hic miser ac tenuis sector præda, qui licet jam  
sum fortunatus? (N. 95. B. 1.)

Solvo lex Scipio, ut is licet ante tempus consul fio. (N. 95.  
B. 2.)

Is enim sum annus, qui per lex is consul fio licet. (N. 95.  
B. 3.)

Quis (*neut.*) sum? nam medius sum jam non licet. (N. 95.  
B. 4.)

Servus tuus armatus (N. 94. 2) in Capitolium tu cum venio  
constat (*imperf.*).

Lætatus se venio, nuntius victoria Roma revertor. (N. 40. B.)

Egregius (N. 94. 1) hic ala eques evado fero.

Quam copiose a Xenophon agricultura laudo in is liber qui  
Oeconomicus (*sing.*) inscribor!

Filius is tribunus miles consularis potestas declaror.

Non sum igitur is bonum habendus, qui abundans (N. 95.  
B. 2) licet sum miser.

Nec locus tu ullus dulcis sum debeo patria.

Iterum tribunus plebs fio volo.



## ON THE ACCUSATIVE.

The Accusative is the case of the Nearer Object. It *has* also the power of limiting—

1. *The Accusative of the Object.*20. *Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object.*

We launched our ships : we followed that fleet.

He opened the gates, and surrendered himself and the town.

He sent arms, horns, trumpets, hooks, standards, and legions.

He received, supported, and sustained a Roman knight, an old friend of his own.

Meanwhile no one accused, no one named Sulla.

But however so the matter stands (*has itself*).

Those, who approve both of the cause and of the man, rise and promise their help.

I hate a crowd : I fly from mankind.

I have kept silence about many things, I have borne many,  
I have yielded many.

Do these men know the constitution of the republic, the laws of war, the examples of our ancestors ?

He was well acquainted with the Etrurian language.

I hate the man, and I shall hate him : but his own character will punish him.

We had never received a more welcome letter than yours.

And this was not at all strange to me, since I both knew you and remembered your promises.

Let others keep the camp ; let them hate the enemy : we will take care of the city and the affairs of the city.

He married the daughter of Albinus ; and her issue is this boy and a daughter already married.

It was reported to the senate that it had rained blood.

A wholesome severity is better than an empty appearance of clemency.

For we cannot fairly complain of all the things for which we are sorry.

## DE ACCUSATIVO.

Accusativus est casus Propioris Objecti. Necnon limitandi vim habet.

1. *Accusativus Objecti.*20. *Verba Transitiva regunt Accusativum Objecti*

Navis deduco: sequor is classis.

Porta aperio, et se atque oppidum dedo.

Ille arma mitto, cornu, tuba, falx, signum, legio.

Eques Romanus, vetus amicus suus, exorpio, fulcio, et sustineo.

Sulla interea nemo insimulo, nemo nomino.

Sed tamen res sic se habeo.

Consurgo is, qui et causa et homo probo (*N.* 112), suusque auxilium polliceor.

Odi celebritas: fugio homo (*pl.*).

Ego multus taceo, multus perfero multus concedo.

---

Novi (*N.* 38. *B.* 1) iste homo forma respublica, jus bellum, exemplum majores? <sup>1</sup>

Lingua Etruscus probe novi. (*N.* 38. *B.* 2.)

Odi homo et odi: sed ille ulciscor mos (*pl.*) suus.

Nullus unquam litteræ gratus quam tuus accipio. Qui ego quidem minime novus (*N.* 62. *A.* 2), qui et tu novi (*subj.*) et tuus promissum memini.

Teneo alius castra; odi hostis: ego urbs et res urbanus tueor.

Duco (*N.* 144. *B.* 2) Albinus filia; ex qui hic sum puer et nuptus jam filia.

Sanguis pluit (*N.* 196. 1) senatus nuntio.

Salutaris severitas vinco (*N.* 112) inanis species clementia.

Non enim omnis, qui doleo, idem (*N.* 75. 3) jus queror possum.

---

<sup>1</sup> Before you do this and the next four examples, read Note 38. A and B concerning Præteritive Verbs.

When shall I now get a letter of yours? who will bring it to me?

We are well: I give myself to history.

He had served (*earned pay*), when a young man, in Asia. But I am saying too much about trifles. Let us come to more important subjects.

But why should I mention others? I will now return to myself.

I gave you what help I could (*give*).

20A. *The Compound of an Intransitive Verb is often Transitive.*

He formed this plan for the purpose of killing him.

After this he continues to overrun the Picenian country.

Do you think you will approach the gods in this manner?

---

He orders the cavalry, whom he had brought up from the rear, to attack the Gallic army.

The story is that Remus, in ridicule of his brother, leaped over the new walls.

Balbus is suffering from such a pain in the feet that he is unwilling to be visited.

21. *Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning.*

They think that they shall live a safer life there.

Why have they not run the same course now, that they ran before?

---

Zeno thinks that wise men alone, even if they are in slavery, are kings.

I think that they are still enjoying life; and that life indeed, which alone deserves to be called life.

He, who runs in the race, ought to strive to conquer.

The speeches of Galba savour more of antiquity than those of either Lælius or Scipio.

He is a restless man, and even now full of (*breathing*) the tribuneship.

He listens to poets born at Corduba, though they have a somewhat dull and foreign sound.

Quando tuus jam litteræ accipio? quis ad ego perfero?  
(*N. 113. A.*)

Bene habeo (*N. 113. B.*): ego (*nom.*) ego historia do.

Adolescens in Asia mereo (*stipendia, N. 114. A.*).

Sed nimis multus (*dico, N. 114. B.*) de nugæ. Ad magnus  
venio.

Sed quid ego alius? Ad ego ipse (*acc.*) jam revertor.

Tu, qui (*N. 115*) possum, opis fero.

20A. *Verbum Intransitivum cum Præpositione compositum  
sæpe fit Transitivum.*

Ad hic interficio talis in eo ratio.

Post hic percurro ager Picenus pergo.

Hic modus adeo tu deus puto?

Eques circumveho (*pass. part.*) ab tergum Gallica invadere  
acies jubeo.

Fama sum ludibrium frater Remus murus transilio novus.

Balbus tantus pes dolor afficio ut se convenio nolo.

## 21. *Intransitiva capiunt Accusativum vi cognata.*

Tutus vita se ibi vivo arbitror.

Cur non idem nunc cursus (*pl.*), qui antea, curro?

Censeo Zeno solus sapiens sum, si servitus servio (*subj.*),  
rex.

Ego ille vivo arbitror; et is quidem vita, qui sum (*N. 37. 2*)  
solus vita nominandus.

Qui stadium curro, enitor debeo ut vinco.

Oratio Galba redoleo magis antiquitas quam aut Lælius aut  
Scipio.

Inquietus sum homo, et tribunatus etiam nunc spirans.

Corduba natus poëta, pinguis quidam (*N. 26. B. 1*) sonans  
atque peregrinus, tamen auris suus dedo.

22A. *Some Verbs, especially those of asking and teaching, admit two Accusatives, one of the thing, the other of the person. But see Note 117.*

I ask this of you earnestly again and again.

But you ask me for the two speeches.

Either there is no science of wit, or, if there is any, you in preference to all others shall teach us it (*that science*).

He untaught himself geometry.

I had written to him the (*that*) very thing which you advise me, and I had sent a copy of my letter to you.

---

He demanded of the magistrates the keys of the gates.

In the mean time Cæsar begins daily to importune the Ædui for corn.

I seem to be well acquainted with the arts of a soldier, which fortune, now private, now public, has taught me from a boy.

What books are teaching us, that experience has taught Cn. Pompey.

I provided myself with a letter to you from the consul, not one to enjoin anything on you, but a letter of introduction as it were.

You could very easily see my opinion; for I did not conceal from you the conversation of Ampius.

---

22B. *The same Verbs keep the Accusative of the thing in the Passive Voice. See Note 117. 1.*

First of all therefore know that I was not asked my opinion first.

We are deaf, nor do we hear those things which we are admonished of by nature.

---

Answer to these questions which you have been asked: beyond them, beware of uttering a word.

He had been thoroughly taught all the arts of war under the tuition of Hannibal.

22A. *Verba quædam, rogandi præsertim et docendi, binos admittunt Accusativos, alterum rei, alterum personæ.*

Hic tu vehementer etiam atque etiam rogo.

Oratio autem ego duo postulo.

Aut nullus sum ars sal, aut, si quis (*N. 26. A*) sum, is ego tu potissimum doceo.

Geometria ipse dedoceo.

Is ipse, qui ego moneo (*N. 117. 1*), ad is scribo, exemplum-que meus litteræ ad tu mitto.

---

Clavis porta magistratus posco.

Interim quotidie Cæsar Ædui frumentum flagito.

Militaris ars, qui ego a puer fortuna, nunc privatus, nunc publicus, doceo, probe videor scio.

Qui ego (*pl.*) liber doceo, is Cn. Pompeius res (*pl.*) ipse doceo.

Litteræ ad tu a consul, non qui tu aliquis (*N. 117. 1*) jubeo (*subj.*), sed quasi commendatitius sumo (*pl.*).

Sententia meus tu facile perspicio possum; non enim tu celo sermo Ampius.

---

22B. *Eadem Verba in Passivâ Voce retinent Accusativum rei.*

Primum igitur scio (*sing. N. 305. 2*) primus ego non rogo sententia.

Obsurdesco, nec is, qui a (*R. 85*) natura moneo, audio.

---

Ad hic, qui interrogo, respondeo (*sing.*): extra is, caveo, vox mitto (*subj.*).

Sub Hannibal magister omnis bellum ars edoceo.

Of many things besides we are warned by prodigies, of  
 many by divinations from entrails.  
 You ought to be forced to this, to produce your booty.

23. *Factitive Verbs, that is, of making, calling, thinking, and the like, have two Accusatives, one of the Object, the other of the Complement. See Primer, p. 134 D.*

They chose Cincinnatus dictator. He named Atratinus master of the horse.

The recollection of slavery will make liberty more pleasant.

Now I dismiss you hence free and unhurt.

Cleomenes used to think himself a second Verres.

I have Hirtius and Dolabella for my scholars.

Late and to no purpose, when you shall have the Roman as master, will you seek Philip as an ally.

---

Thereupon mutual fear kept both parties quiet until morning.

This land, which we call our father-land, has it no hold at all on you?

I am a Roman citizen: men call me C. Mucius.

He marries the daughter of a most excellent but most unfortunate man.

They find Lucretia sitting sadly in her chamber.

He gave one of those legions to Fabius to be led against the Morini.

P. Junius had the temple of Castor to take care of.

For I have never thought that an honourable death ought to be avoided, I have often thought that it ought to be even sought for.

Labienus afterwards had ships to the number of (*in number*) seventy made.

#### ACCUSATIVE OF LIMITATION.

24. *The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in Poetry.*

The last reign, happy in all other respects (*as to all other things*), had in one particular been far from prosperous.

Multus (*N.* 117. 1) præterea ostentum, multus exta admoneo.

Vos is cogendus sum, ut præda (*pl.*) vester in medium profero.

23. *Verba Factitiva, scilicet faciendi, vocandi, putandi, similia, binos habent Accusativos, alterum Objecti, alterum Complementi.*

Dictator Cincinnatus creo. Is magister eques Atratinus dico.

Jucundus facio libertas servitus recordatio.

Nunc liber tu inviolatusque hinc dimitto.

Cleomenes alter (*N.* 171) se Verres puto.

Hirtius ego et Dolabella discipulus habeo.

Sero ac nequicquam, quum dominus Romanus habeo (*pl.*), socius Philippus quæro.

Mutuus inde timor uterque (*N.* 173. *Obs.*) usque ad lux quietus teneo.

Nihil (*N.* 119. 2) vos teneo hic terra, qui mater appello?

Romanus sum civis: C. Mucius voco. (*N.* 113. *A.*)

Duco uxor (*N.* 144. *B.* 1) bonu. at calamitosus vir filia.

Lucretia mæstus (*N.* 94. 1) in cubiculum sedens invenio.

Unus ex is legio in Morini ducendus Fabius do.

Ædes (*N.* 6. *I.*) Castor P. Junius habeo tuendus.

Nunquam enim honestus mors fugiendus, sæpe etiam oppetendus puto.

Navis postea Labienus faciendus curo (*N.* 116) numerus septuaginta.

#### ACCUSATIVUS LIMITATIONIS.

24. *Accusativus Respectûs adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis præsertim apud Poetas.*

Proximus regnum, ceteri egregius, ab unus pars haud satis prosperus sum.



But now books are nowise profitable.  
It is not at all necessary to compare things one by one.  
They have made some decrees : but what does it matter ?

---

He returned to the camp boasting indeed, but troubled in his mind by a silent care.

He mentioned all these things, that he might appear anxious on my account also, and not only on the state's and the army's.

But there was at that time a most illustrious and brave consul.

By one or at most by a second battle we shall have the citadel and capital of Italy in our hands.

Philip's reign appears to be somewhat injurious to your liberty.

And Xenophon too commits almost the same errors in fewer words : but Empedocles, while he errs in many other things, fails most disgracefully in his opinion of the gods.

Concerning my brother Quintus in nothing did I accuse you : but I wished you to be the best of friends.

Then seven and twenty virgins, clad in a long robe, went singing a song in honour of Juno the queen of the gods.

25. *The Place* Whither one goes is put in the *Accusative* ; and without a *Preposition* if it is either the name of a town or domus (home), rus (country). (Note 268.)

I find that this tribe came to Clusium, and thence to Rome.  
It is certain that much valuable furniture was sent to Carthage.

A storm carried the ship to Cyrenæ, which was then in the power of the kings.

Eumenes, having set out for Pergamus, was preparing war with the utmost energy.

Part proceed to the forum, part to Syracuse.

He came to the house of Pomponius.

I think that Attica will return to the country.

---

Philip, having enrolled a few volunteers, returned to Corinth and the land of Attica.

Nunc vero nihil (*N.* 119. 1) liber prosum.

Nihil comparo singuli necesse sum.

Decretum quidam facio : sed quis (*N.* 119. *Obs.*) refert?

Glorians quidem in castra redeo, ceterum tacitus cura animus (*N.* 118) incensus.

Hic omnis commemoro, ut meus quoque, non solum res publica et exercitus, vicis videor sollicitus.

Atqui sum is (*R.* 79) tempus clarus et fortis consul.

Unus aut summus alter proelium arx et caput Italia in manus (*sing.*) habeo.

Philippus regnum officio aliquis (*N.* 119. 1) videor libertas vester.

Atque etiam Xenophon paucus verbum idem fere pecco : Empedocles autem, multus alius peccans, in deus opinio turpiter labor.

De Q. frater nihil (*N.* 119. 2) ego tu accuso : sed vos volo sum quam conjunctus (*N.* 10. *C.* 2).

Tum septem et viginti virgo, longus indutus (*N.* 120) vestis, carmen in Juno regina canens eo.

25. *Locus, Quo itur, in Accusativo ponitur, idque sine Præpositione, si vel oppidi nomen est, vel domus, rus.*

Hic gens Clusium, Romaque inde, venio comperio.

Multus pretiosus supellex mitto Carthago constat.

Navis (*N.* 2. *A.* 2) Cyrenæ defero tempestas, qui tum in ditio rex sum.

Eumenes, profectus Pergamus, summus vis (*sing.*) paro bellum.

Pars in forum, pars Syracusæ pergo.

Is Pomponius domus venio.

Attica rus redeo arbitror.

Philippus, voluntarius paucus miles conscriptus, Corinthus atque in Atticus terra redeo.

But what a return from thence to Rome ! what a disturbance of the whole city !

Appius, when he heard that we were coming, hurried to the extremity of his province as far as Tarsus.

Peace having been secured by land and sea, and the army having been embarked, he crossed over to Lilybæum in Sicily.

Lucretia, sad at so great a misfortune, sends the same messenger to her father at Rome, and to her husband at Ardea.

Pompey was at that time in Candavia, and was marching from Macedonia to the winter quarters at Apollonia and Dyrrhachium.

The announcement of that defeat at Rome excited a greater alarm than the circumstance required (*was*).

Both armies depart each to their own homes.

He took this disgrace so much to heart that he both removed to the country and for many years kept away from the city and from every assemblage of men.

26. *The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative.*

The kingdom of the Macedonians lasted from the highest pitch of its prosperity to its final termination a hundred and fifty years.

A pestilence was now for the third year laying waste the city of Rome and Italy.

I am whole days with him, and often a part of the night.

Throughout the day and night dangers of all sorts (*all dangers*) surround us on every side.

He was nineteen years old at that time.

---

I have often written to you that I do not foresee peace for a year.

It is unlawful for the priest of Jupiter to remain without the city for a single night.

Know that a Roman knight was debarred from food and shelter for two days.

He says that he wrote that book, which is entitled the Panathenaics, in his ninety-fourth year, and he lived five years after that.

Qui vero reditus inde Roma! qui perturbatio totus urbs!  
(*N.* 262.)

Appius, ut audio ego venio, in ultimus (*N.* 49) provincia  
se conjicio Tarsus usque.

Pax terra mareque partus, exercitus in navis impositus, in  
Sicilia Lilybæum trajicio. (*N.* 267. 1.)

Lucretia, mæstus tantus malum, Roma nuntius idem ad  
pater, Ardeaque ad vir mitto. (*N.* 267. 2.)

Pompeius sum is tempus in Candavia, iterque ex Macedonia  
in hiberna Apollonia Dyrrhachiumque habeo.

Nuntiatum is clades Roma magnus, quam res sum, terror  
excito. (*N.* 267. 4.)

Ambo exercitus suus quisque (*N.* 172. *Obs.* 2) abeo domus.  
Hic ignominia adeo ægre fero, ut et rus migro et per (*N.*  
250) multus annus et urbs et omnis cœtus careo homo.

26. *Duratio Temporis in Accusativo ponitur.*

Macedones regnum a summus culmen fortuna ad ultimus  
finis centum quinquaginta annus sto.

Pestilentia jam tertius annus urbs Romanus atque Italia  
vasto.

Sum totus dies (*N.* 6. *K.* 1) cum is, noxque sæpenumero para.  
Dies (*pl.*) et nox (*pl.*) omnis ego undique fatum circumsto.

Undeviginti annus natus sum (*imperf.*) is tempus. (*N.* 256.)

Sæpe tu scribo ego annus pax non video. (*N.* 14. 1. *b.*)

Flamen Dialis nox unus maneo extra urbs nefas sum.  
(*N.* 14. 1. *a.*)

Eques Romanus scio (*pl.* *N.* 305. 2) biduum cibus tectum-  
que prohibeo.

Is liber, qui Panathenæicus inscribo, quartus et nonagesimus  
(*N.* 19. 2) annus scribo se dico, vivoque quinquennium  
postea.

Veii was besieged for ten successive summers and winters. But let us discuss these subjects to-morrow, and as many days as we shall be on the Tusculan estate.

All day and night every thing, on this side and on that, resounds with the cries of women and boys who are being seized and carried off.

Dionysius was tyrant of the Syracusans for thirty-eight years, having (*when he had*) seized the supreme power at the age of twenty-five.

As yet he has received no punishment worthy of his wickedness, but is now reigning the twenty-third year from that time.

I have now been carrying on war for twenty years with impious citizens.

He lingers among these trifles more than two years.

He was never at Rome for more than three days.

27. *The Measure of Space, whether of Distance, Progression, or Dimension, is put in the Accusative.*

27 A. *Distance.*

They withdrew to the Sacred Mount, the other side of the river Anio, (*distant*) three miles from the city.

That state is by far the most wealthy beyond the Ebro, being situated about a mile from the sea.

The city of the Opuntii is situated a mile from the sea.

They pitch their camp at not more than five miles' distance from the city.

One camp was not more than two thousand feet distant from the other camp.

These brought word that Cassius was a four days' journey from Laodicea, at the time that Dolabella was marching thither.

A city was once besieged for ten years by all Greece, for the sake of one woman: how far from home! how many countries and seas distant!

27 B. *Progression.*

Having advanced a three days' journey, they turned back again.

Decem æstas hiemsque continuus circumsedeo Veii.  
Cras autem, et quot dies sum in Tusculanum (*N. 54. Obs.*),  
ago hic.

Dies moxque (*pl.*) omnis passim mulier puerque, qui rapio  
atque asporto, ploratus sono.

Duodequadragesima annus tyrannus Syracusani sum Diony-  
sius, quum quinque et viginti natus (*N. 256*) annus  
dominatus occupo.

Adhuc pœna nullus suus dignus scelus suscipio, sed ab ille  
tempus annus jam tertius et vicesimus (*N. 257*) regno.

Viginti jam annus bellum gero (*N. 28*) cum impius civis.

Plus (*N. 216. 1. b*) biennium in hic tricæ moror.  
Roma nunquam plus (*N. 216. 2. b*) triduum sum.

27. *Mensura Spatii sive Distantiæ, seu Progressionis,*  
*seu Dimensionis, in Accusativo ponitur.*

27 A. *Distantiæ.*

In Sacer mons secedo, trans Anio amnis, tres ab urbs mille  
(*N. 15*) passus.

Civitas is longe opulentus ultra Iberus sum, situs passus  
mille (*N. 15. 2*) ferme a mare.

Urbs Opuntii mille (*N. 15. 1*) passus a mare situs sum.

Castra ab urbs haud plus (*N. 216. 1. b*) quinque mille passus  
loco.

Non amplius (*N. 216. 2. b*) pes mille duo ab castra castra  
dicto.

Hic nuntio Cassius quatrimum iter Laodicea absum, tum  
quum Dolabella eo tendo (*subj.*).

Decem quondam annus urbs oppugno ob unus mulier ab  
universus Græcia : quam procul ab domus ! quot terra,  
quot mare distans !

27 B. *Progressionis.*

Triduum via progressus, rursus revertor. (*N. 40. B.*)

A signal being given and the anchors being weighed, he sailed on about seven miles from that spot.

---

He commands Hanno to go one day's march up the stream. I have not yet stirred a foot from my villa ; such violent and constant rain have we been having.

Marcellus said that it was not to the interest of the republic to depart the distance of a step from Hannibal.

It does not behove you to depart a nail's breadth from what you think in your conscience right (*from a good conscience*).

27 c. *Dimension.*

They stretched from the bank into the stream one raft, two hundred feet long, fifty broad. To this a second raft was joined, of equal width, and a hundred feet long.

He makes a trench six cubits deep, twelve wide.

A path about a mile long was leading to the gymnasium of the Academy.

The breadth of this Hercynian forest extends a nine days' journey to an unencumbered traveller.

---

Uninterrupted trenches, each five feet deep, were being made.

This interval being left, he made two trenches fifteen feet broad, and of the same depth.

On these camels, which they call dromedaries, Arab archers were mounted, having thin swords, each four cubits long.

The siege lasted thirty days, during which the snow seldom lay at any time less than four feet deep.

The city was also surrounded by a strong wall, extending in circumference a little more than three miles.

28 A. *These Prepositions govern an Accusative*: ante, apud, &c. See Note 121.

It has not been thought necessary to append any examples to this Rule, as many are to be found throughout the Exercises.

Datus signum et sublatum ancora (*ablat. absol.*), circiter mille passus septem ab is locus progredior.

Hanno adversus flumen (*R. 66*) eo iter unus dies jubeo.  
Ego (*pl.*) pes e villa adhuc non egredior; ita magnus et assiduus imber (*pl.*) habeo.

Marcellus nego e respublica sum vestigium abscedo (*impers.*) ab Hannibal.

Tu a rectus conscientia transversus unguis non oportet discedo.

### 27 c. *Dimensionis.*

Ratis unus, ducenti longus pes, quinquaginta latus, a terra in amnis porrigo. Hic copulo alter ratis, æque latus, longus pes centum.

Fossa sex cubitum altus, duodecim latus duco.

Limes mille (*adj.*) ferme passus longus in Academia gymnasium fero.

Hic Hercynius silva latitudo novem dies iter expeditus pateo.

Perpetuus fossa, quini (*N. 17*) pes altus, duco.

Hic intermissus spatium, duo fossa, quindecim (*N. 17. Obs. 1*) pes latus, idem altitudo (*abl.*) perduco.

Hic camelus, qui appello dromas (*N. 5. H. 1. a*), insideo Arabes sagittarius, gladius habens tenuis, longus quaternus cubitum.

Triginta dies obsidio sum, per qui raro unquam nix minus (*N. 216. 1. b*) quattuor pes altus jaceo.

Murus quoque firmus urbs septus sum, patens in circuitu paullo amplius tres mille passus.

### 28 A. *Accusativum regunt hæ Præpositiones :*

Ante, apud, ad, adversus,  
Circum, circa, citra, cis,  
Contra, inter, erga, extra,  
Infra, intra, juxta, ob,  
Pene, pone, post, et præter,

Prope, propter, per, secundum,  
Supra, versus, ultra, trans;  
His super, subter, *addito*,  
Et in, sub, *si fit motio*.



28 B. In, sub, super, and subter, if station occurs, govern an Ablative ; but if motion, an Accusative.

In what city do we live ? what constitution have we ?

Others were rushing blindly into the water.

They draw their swords : they make a charge against the cohorts.

He advanced his camp, and took up his position at the foot of the mountain.

They advance, and approach to the foot of the mountain.

Ennius was walking in the gardens with Servius Galba, his neighbour.

Or shall he hide himself in an opposite part of the world ?

He had those things put on board the ship by stealth, and secretly exported.

Nor did they refuse to be for ever under their sway and dominion.

These at length fell under the dominion and sway of the Roman people.

And when the consul saw this, he rides quickly to the cohorts, close up to the enemy's wall.

The greatest part take their stand above the theatre.<sup>1</sup>

#### ON THE DATIVE.

*The Dative is the case of the Recipient or Remoter Object.*

29. Words which carry their meaning over to a remoter object are called *Trajective*, and include many *Adjectives*, *Adverbs*, and *Verbs*, more rarely *Substantives*, by which is implied

Nearness and demonstration,  
Gratification, dominion,  
And any notion contrary to these.

See Primer, 135, Note B.

29 A. *Adjectives and Participles placed adjectively.*  
(N. 13.)

Agriculture is beneficial to the whole race of mankind.

---

<sup>1</sup> For the Impersonal Verbs which take an Accusative see Rules 104 and 105.

28B. In, sub, super, et subter *Ablativum regunt, si fit statio; sin motio, Accusativum.*

In quis urbs vivo? quis respublica (N. 3) habeo?

Alius in aqua cæcus (N. 94. 1) ruo.

Gladius destringo: impetus in cohors facio. (N. 27.)

Castra promoveo, et sub mons consido.

Progredior, et sub mons succedo.

---

Ennius in (N. 122. A) hortus cum Ser. Galba, vicinus suus, ambulo.

An se in (N. 122. B) contrarius pars terra (pl.) abdo?

Is in navis clam imponendus, occulte exportandus curo.

Neque recuso, quominus perpetuo sub ille ditio atque imperium sum.

Hic tandem sub populus Romanus imperium ditioque cado.

Qui ubi consul video, equus citatus subter murus hostis ad cohors adveho.

Pars magnus super (N. 123) theatrum consisto (pl.).

#### DE DATIVO.

*Dativus est casus Recipientis seu remotioris objecti.*

29. *Trajectiva quæ sensum trajiciunt ad remotius objectum sunt multa Adjectiva, Adverbia et Verba, rarius Substantiva quibus indicatur*

Propinquitas et demonstratio,  
Gratificatio, Dominatio  
Et his contraria quæque notio.

29A. *Adjectiva et Participia adjective posita.*

Homo genus universus cultura ager (pl. N. 109. 1) sum salutaris.

The statue was fit for the library, and in harmony with  
(*N. 148. A. 1*) my studies.

He passed three laws most favourable to the people, adverse  
to the nobility.

The Romans had occupied not only the streets, but also the  
houses nearest the gate.

Your letter was very pleasant to me.

This speech was not displeasing to the Gauls.

All things will be clear and certain to one not in a hurry :  
haste is improvident and blind.

You will find me in all things most friendly and most faithful  
to you.

The severity of the punishment however made the soldiers  
more obedient to their general.

---

Moderate grief is useful to others, and is necessary to you.  
I have written three books on an Orator after the manner  
of Aristotle, and I think that they will not be without  
their use to your friend Lentulus.

There was left a style of letter-writing, sad, and mournful,  
and correspondent to these times.

The Alps are passable for a few, impassable for armies.

And now they had come to a spot exactly suited for an  
ambush.

There happened at that time to be a field of barley there,  
ripe for the harvest.

What city could he have chosen either more convenient for  
the prosecution of war, or belonging to citizens more  
friendly to the Roman people?

To deliberations of great moment there is nothing so  
inimical as haste.

I neither hid myself, nor conducted myself, as if angry with  
the man or the times.

Appius, fearing for his life, retired with his head covered  
into a house near the forum.

It is bordering on this dissimulation, when a vicious thing  
is designated by a good name.

His virgin sister, who had been betrothed to one of the  
Curiatii, met him before the gate.

Signum sum aptus bibliotheca, studiumque noster (*N.* 61.

*Obs.* 1) congruens.

Tres lex secundus plebs, adversus nobilitas, fero.

Romani non via tantum, sed tectum etiam proximus porta  
(*N.* 148. *B.*) occupo.

Perjucundus (*N.* 11) ego sum litteræ tuus.

Sum hic oratio non ingratus Galli.

Omnis non properans clarus certusque sum : festinatio im-  
providus sum et cæcus.

Ego omnis in res tu amicus fidelisque cognosco.

Facio tamen atrocitas poena obediens (*N.* 13. 2) dux miles  
(*sing.*).

---

Modice doleo ceteri utilis sum, tu necesse sum.

Scribo Aristoteleus mos tres liber de Orator, qui arbitror  
Lentulus tuus sum non inutilis.

Relinquo tristis quidam, et miser, et hic tempus consentaneus  
genus litteræ.

Alpes pervius paucus sum, exercitus invius. (*N.* 135.)

Et jam pervenio ad locus (*pl.*) insidiæ natus.

Forte (*N.* 192) ibi tum seges far sum, maturus messis.

Qui possum (*N.* 311) urbs eligo aut opportunus (*N.* 136)  
ad res gerendus, aut amicus populus Romanus civis  
(*gen.*) ?

Res magnus discrimen consilium nullus sum tam inimicus  
quam celeritas.

Neque ego ego abdo, neque ita gero, quasi homo aut tempus  
iratus (*nom.*).

Appius, vita metuens, in domus se propinquus (*N.* 148. *B.*)  
forum, caput obvolutus, recipio.

Sum hic finitimus dissimulatio, quum honestus verbum  
vitiosus res appello.

Is soror virgo, qui desponso (*N.* 35 et 37. 2) unus ex  
Curiatii, obviis ante porta sum.

Romulus was dearer to the multitude than to the senators, but most acceptable far before all others to the hearts of the soldiers.

And since he was and still is most highly approved of by them, he ought to hope that he is approved of by all.

And, that I may come to these subjects which are nearer and better known to us, all the nations of antiquity were once subject to kings.

Winter tents, a novelty to the Roman soldier, were begun to be built.

Meanwhile she commands the people to be obedient to Servius Tullius.

The life of private individuals is both easier and safer, and less burdensome or troublesome to others: but that of those, who have applied themselves to politics and the prosecution of great affairs, is more profitable to the human race, and better adapted for fame and greatness

#### 29 B. *Adverbs.*

You yourself shall decide that you have acted kindly to a very grateful man.

Cæsar fortifies a camp, as near as he possibly can to the camp of the enemy.

---

May it fare ill with Antony, since he is troublesome to them.

Two thousand Cappadocians, armed like these horsemen, had been sent by Ariarathes.

The elephants began to move to and fro between the two armies, as if uncertain to whom they belonged, not unlike ships drifting without a helm.

One, who observes these precepts, may live simply, honestly, and in a way friendly to the life of mankind.

There Lucilius met me with your letter and commands.

Clodius meets him on horseback, with no carriage, without his wife, a thing which hardly ever happened.

The gates of the town standing open, the citizens went forth in numbers to meet the commanders.

I sent Lepta, the overseer of my workmen, to meet you.

Multitudo gratus sum Romulus quam Patres, longe ante alius acceptus (*N.* 13. 2) miles animus.

Qui quum sum (*subj.*) probatus hodieque sum, omnis sum se probatus debeo spero. (*N.* 141. *Obs.*)

Atque, ut ad hic citerior venio et notus ego, omnis antiquus gens rex quondam pareo.

Hibernaculum, res novus miles Romanus, ædifico cœpi. (*N.* 38. *C. Obs.* 2.)

Interim Servius Tullius jubeo populus dictum audiens (*N.* 138) sum.

Et facilis et tutus, et minus alius gravis aut molestus, vita sum otiosus : fructuosus autem homo genus, et ad claritas amplitudoque aptus (*N.* 136) is qui se ad respublica et ad magnus res gerendus accommodo.

#### 29B. *Adverbia.*

Ipse judico homo tu gratus benigne facio.

Cæsar, quam prope (*N.* 10. *C.* 1) possum hostis (*pl.*) castra, castra communio.

Antonius male sum, siquidem ille molestus sum.

Similiter hic eques armatus (*N.* 83) duo mille Cappadoces ab Ariarathes mitto.

Elephantus inter duo acies versor, velut incertus quis (*pl.*) sum (*subj.*), haud dissimiliter navis sine gubernaculum vagus.

Hic præscriptum servans (*N.* 95. *A.* 2) licet simpliciter, fideliter, vitæque homo amice vivo.

Ibi ego præsto sum Lucilius cum litteræ mandatumque tuus. Obviam fio is Clodius in equus, nullus rheda, sine uxor, qui nunquam fere.

Patens urbs porta, togatus obviam frequens imperator procedo.

Lepta, præfectus faber meus (*N.* 1. *Obs.* 1), tu obviam mitto.

He learnt civil law : he was of service to many : he put up  
with the folly of many.  
Better late than never shall we resist audacity and rashness.

29c. *Transitive Verbs.*

He saw the walls which join the Piræus to the city.  
Meanwhile the Roman sacrifices the ox to Diana. That was  
wonderfully pleasing to the king and the state.  
They had given fewer pledges to the state.  
He restored them their city, and their land, and their own  
laws.  
He took away their arms from all, he destroyed the town,  
and sold the men themselves.  
This case is not unknown to you ; for I have often come to  
you, and explained to you the whole matter.  
To the chiefs he promises money, but to the state he pro-  
mises the sovereignty of the whole province.  
You have denied this to their pious prayers.  
I will refuse nothing to your request.  
I have often told you my dream ; I have often heard yours  
from you.  
I indeed will pay to my father the duty which I owe to my  
country.

---

He lent him his own name for the transference of the  
charge.  
they have attained any pre-eminence in virtue, talent, or  
good fortune, they communicate these advantages to their  
friends, and share them with their relations.  
And he had now accustomed them to labour and other  
military duties.  
I then gave what help I could to the community, and I will  
now also give it to individuals.  
We ought all both to feel and to express the greatest grati-  
tude to you, Pansa.  
Could I as a father reconcile Hannibal to my son, can I not  
reconcile my son to Hannibal ?  
The Roman men did not grudge the women their due praise.  
And in that embassy he made himself acceptable both to  
citizens and allies.

Jus civilis disco : præsto (*N.* 139) multus sum : multus stultitia perpetior.

Potius sero quam nunquam obviam (*N.* 139) eo audacia temeritasque.

29c. *Verba Transitive.*

Murus video, qui Piræus urbs jungo.

Interea Romanus immolo Diana bos. Is mire gratus rex ac civitas sum.

Minus multus do ille respublica pignus.

Urbs agerque (*pl.*) et suus lex is restituo. (*N.* 148. *B.*)

Arma omnis adimo (*N.* 148. *A.* 1), oppidum diruo, ipse vendo.

Hic tu causa ignotus non sum; venio enim sæpe ad tu, tuque demonstro totus res.

Princeps pecunia (*pl.*), civitas autem imperium totus provincia polliceor.

Nego (*pl.*) hic pius preces (*N.* 6. *E.*) is.

Nihil tu postulans recuso.

Sæpe tu meus narro, sæpe ex tu audio tuus somnium.

Ego quidem, qui patria debeo, pietas exsolvo pater. (*N.* 184. *A.*)

Nomen suus iste ad translatio crimen commodo.

Si quis præstantia virtus (*gen.*), ingenium, fortuna consequor, impertio is suus, communicoque (*N.* 150) cum proximus.

Et jam is opus aliusque institutum militaris assuefacio. (*N.* 205. 2.)

Et tum universus, qui possum, opis fero (*N.* 140), et nunc singuli fero.

Magnus tu, Pansa, gratia (*pl.*) omnis et habeo et ago debeo.

Hannibal pater filius meus possum placo, filius Hannibal non possum?

Non invideo laus (*pl.*) suus mulier vir Romanus.

Qui in legatio et civis et socius se probo. (*N.* 146.)



The immortal gods have given us these safe-guards ; Cæsar for the city, Brutus for Gaul.

There an eagle, gently gliding down on poised wings, takes away his cap.

I am glad that I have shown you almost my very cradle.

Shall I not prove to these judges that Verres has received money contrary to the laws ?

He incautiously divulges the affair to a certain tragic actor, to whom he had been accustomed to entrust other things as well.

A deserter announces this to him, as he happens to be already going out to battle.

So he then went away in anger ; I think that I have told you.

To my parents, dictator, (to whom I have but just now made you equal in title,) I am indebted for my life only ; to you for my own safety as well as for that of all these : and so I am grieved on your account.

*Note.—Before you proceed further, read Note 145.*

It will be fair, Cornelius, that you forgive me this.

When king Lysimachus threatened him with crucifixion, Menace, I pray you, he said, those your purple-clad courtiers with these your horrible tortures.

When he had persuaded me of this, he urged me with many words to promise you help.

For so persuade yourself, that you are very dear to me.

Cæsar requires of them forty hostages, and corn for the army.

#### 29 D. *Intransitive Verbs.*<sup>1</sup>

That was once profitable, this will be always profitable to the state.

Our rashness has hurt not only ourselves, but also the republic.

Your deeds do not agree with your speech.

Formerly I used to be able to help obscure or even guilty parties.

---

<sup>1</sup> Hither refer the Passive Voice of Transitive Verbs.

Deus immortalis ego hic præsidium do; urbs Cæsar, Brutus Gallia.

Ibi is aquila, suspensus demissus leniter ala, pileus aufero. (N. 147.)

Gaudeo ego incunabula pæne meus tu ostendo.

His ego iudex non probo (N. 146) Verres contra lex pecunia (pl.) capio?

Res quidam tragicus actor, qui et alius committo assuesco, incaute aperio.

Hic exiens jam forte in acies nuntio perfuga.

Ita tum ille discedo iratus; puto ego tu narro. (N. 113. A.)

Parens, dictator, meus (qui tu modo nomen æquo), vita tantum debeo; tu quum meus salus tum omnis hic: itaque tuus doleo vicis. (N. 134.)

Nota.—*Priusquam longius progredieris, lege Notam 145.*

Ille tu ego ignosco, Cornelius, æquus sum.

Hic quum (N. 322) Lysimachus rex crux minor (*imperf.*),

Iste quæso, inquam, iste horribilis minitor purpuratus tuus.

Hic quum ego persuadeo, ago ego cum multus verbum, tu ut auxilium spondeo.

Sic enim tu persuadeo, carus tu ego sum.

Hic Cæsar impero obses quadraginta frumentumque exercitus.

#### 29D. *Verba Intransitiva.*

Ille semel prosum, hic semper prosum civitas.

Temeritas noster non solum ego, sed etiam respublica noceo. (N. 148. A. 2.)

Factum vester oratio non convenio. (N. 41.)

Antea aut obscurus homo aut etiam sons opitulus possum. (N. 29. 2.)

He had learnt that all the province favoured the cause of Cæsar.

These things said the older men, to whom this new wisdom was less pleasing.

These things Epicurus loudly asserts, he whom you allege to have been too much addicted to pleasures.

I know that the gods have spared the guiltless armies.

They were trusting but little to their walls and their arms and their youth.

For this reason they have distrusted themselves.

For such men are humbly obsequious to a king, and proudly domineering over others.

I am always, Quintus, at leisure for philosophy.

---

Gentius could not be compared to Perseus, nor the Illyrians to the Macedonians, nor the spoils, money, and gifts of the one, to the spoils, money, and gifts of the other.

Romulus said to Proculus that he was a god, and commanded a temple to be dedicated to himself on that spot. He thought that he could very easily remedy the scarcity of corn.

I congratulate both you, and on your account the republic, that this error has been removed by your prosperity.

Some envy the praise of those who they see are approved of in the state.

This opinion was approved of by him and by us alike.

And so being deprived of all these things, to which both nature and habit had accustomed me, I displease all others as well as myself.

O wretched thou, if thou understandest ! more wretched, if thou understandest not, that this is being committed to writing, that this is being handed down to memory !

How often has that dagger been already wrested from your hands ?

Why is he angry with one who has written something contrary to his own wishes ?

And, if that book is such as you write that it seems to you, I too am something.

Rashly believing these informants, he changes his plan, and determines to leave matters to a battle.

Provincia omnis Cæsar res (*pl.*) faveo cognosco.

Hic dico (*imperf.*) senex, qui novus hic minus placeo sapientia.

Hic clamo Epicurus, is qui vos nimis voluptas dedo (*N.* 87. 1) dico.

Scio deus parco innoxius exercitus.

Parum mœnia armaque ac juvenus fido. (*N.* 143. 1. *a.*)

Propter hic causa diffido (*N.* 143. 2) ipse (*nom.*) se.

Talis enim vir servio rex humiliter, alius superbe impero.

Philosophia, Quintus, semper vaco.

---

Non Gentius Perseus (*N.* 5. *E.*), non Illyrii Macedones, non spoliū spoliū, non pecunia pecunia, non donum donum comparo possum.

Romulus Proculus dico se deus sum, templumque se dedico in is locus jubeo.

Facile inopia frumentarius se medeor possum existimo.

Quod secundus vester res hic error tollo, et vos et propter vos respublica gratulor.

Nonnullus invideo is laus, qui in respublica probo video.

Hic sententia et ille et ego probo (*imperf.* *N.* 141).

Itaque orbus is res omnis, qui et natura ego et consuetudo assuefacio (*N.* 205. 1), quum ceteri tum ego ipse displiceo.

O miser tu (*acc.*), si intelligo ! miser, si non intelligo, hic litteræ mando, hic memoria prodo !

Quoties jam tu extorqueo (*N.* 147) sica iste de manus ?

Quid irascor is qui aliquis scribo contra suus voluntas ?

Qui liber si sum talis, qualis tu videor scribo, ego quoque aliquis sum.

Hic auctor temere credens, consilium commuto, et prælium res (*sing.*) committo constituo.

These same things were reported to Curio, but for some time his belief could not be gained: such confidence had he in his own circumstances.

Without government no house, state, or nation, no, nor the world itself can stand. For it is subject to God, and the seas and lands obey it, and the life of man conforms to the decrees of the supreme law.

Neither will their intestine strife allow them to combine, nor will they be able singly to resist us.

The two Tulliae, the king's daughters, had married these two brothers, as has been before said.

It is agreed that the younger of the two daughters was married to this Gracchus.

*Note.—Here read again Note 145.*

Ambassadors came to him to beg that he would forgive them, and take some thought for their life.

This will be forgiven me.

As soon as I, as tribune, shall have begun to summon the tribes to vote, will you forthwith, as consul, bind the younger men by the military oath, and lead them out to the camp? And will you threaten the people, will you threaten the tribune?

Or did I persuade C. Trebonius, whom I should not have dared even to try to persuade?

But do you consider that I am thoroughly persuaded of whatever you shall have persuaded yourself.

I know that the soldiers are not trusted with arms.

I have answered your longer and earlier letter. Now what shall I say in answer to your shorter and later one, except that it was most pleasant?

And now not troops, of which there was plenty, but supplies were required of the neighbouring cities.

29E. *Substantives.* See Note 149.

Marcellus burnt the spoils of the enemy, as a votive offering to Vulcan.

The dictator placed a golden crown in the Capitol, as a gift to Jupiter.

He had the greatest faith in him of all others.

Nuntio (*imperf.*) hic idem Curio, sed aliquamdiu fides fio non possum: tantus habeo suus res (*N.* 108. 1) fiducia.

Sine imperium nec domus ullus, nec civitas, nec gens, nec ipse mundus sto possum. Nam et hic Deus pareo, et hic obedio mare terraque, et homo vita jussum supremus lex obtempero.

Nec discordia intestinus coëo in unus sino, neque (*N.* 302. 4) singuli ego resisto possum.

Hic duo frater, ut ante dico, duo Tullia, rex filia, nubo. (*N.* 144. A. 1.)

Hic Gracchus parvus ex duo filia nubo (*N.* 144. A. 2) convenit.

*Nota.*—*Hic lege iterum Notam 145.*

Legatus ad is venio oro, ut se ignosco suusque vita consulo.

Hic ignosco ego.

Simul ego tribunus voco tribus in suffragium coëpi (*N.* 38.

*C*), tu statim consul sacramentum juvenis adigo, et in castra educo? Et minor plebs, minor tribunus?

An C. Trebonius ego persuadeo, qui ne suadeo quidem audeo? (*N.* 142. 1.)

Tu autem, qui ipse tu suadeo, idem ego persuasus puto.

Scio non credo miles (*sing.*) arma.

Longus epistola superiorque respondeo. Nunc brevis propiorque tuus quis respondeo (*potent.*), nisi is sum dulcis?

Nec jam auxilium, qui affatim sum, sed commeatus finitimus urbs impero.

#### 29E. *Substantiva.*

Spolium hostis Marcellus, Vulcanus votum, cremo.

Dictator corona aureus in Capitolium, Jupiter donum, pono.

Ex alius is magnus fides habeo. (*N.* 148. A. 1.)

He thence flies across to the other part, as a messenger of the victory to his comrades.

---

Human virtue approaches more nearly than the human form to a resemblance to the Deity.

It happened that the consul had returned to Rome. That was a remedy for their fear.

Who was so impious, so mad, so much an enemy to gods and men, as to dare to do that?

Despair of confidence being hereafter placed in them compelled the Æqui to dare and venture all risks.

30. *Among Trajectives are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as bene (well), male (ill), satis (enough), re, ad, ante, con, in, inter, de, ob, sub, super, post, and præ.* (See Primer, Note 135. C.)

#### 30 A. Transitive Verbs.

But to the more severe diseases they apply dangerous and doubtful modes of treatment.

You make that peace void, and you ever put some show of justice on your dishonesty.

Men put themselves under the government and power of another from many causes.

This is the same family, Romans, which has closed the road to the curule offices against the people.

He sets Brutus, a young man, over those forces.

Let us wrest victory from the enemy, a confession of their error from the citizens.

---

To this priest of Jupiter he added two; one for Mars, the other for Quirinus.

We, the Roman youth, declare a war of this kind against you.

The narrowness of the bridge and of the roads had cut off the means of flight from the greatest number.

He was the first after my departure who banished apprehension from the good, hope from the bold, fear from this class, slavery from the state.

Transvolo inde in pars alter, suus victoria nuntius.

---

Ad similitudo Deus prope accedo humanus virtus quam figura.

Forte consul redeo Roma. Is remedium timor sum.

Quis sum tam impius, tam demens, tam deus homoque hostis (N. 149. 1), qui ille facio audeo (*subj.*)?

Æqui desperatio futurus se postea fides ultimus audeo et expior cogo.

30. *Inter Trajectiva sunt multa Verba composita cum Particulis, quales sunt:—*

Bene, male, satis, re,  
Ad, ante, con, in, inter, de,  
Ob, sub, super, post et præ.

30A. *Verba Transitiva.*

Gravis autem morbus periculosus curatio et anceps adhibeo.

Is pax irritus facio (*pl.*), et semper aliquis fraus species jus impono.

Subjicio se homo imperium alter et potestas de causa plus.

Hic sum idem familia, Quirites, qui plebs ad curulis magistratus iter obsepio.

Brutus adolescens is copias præficio.

Victoria hostis (*sing.*) extorqueo, confessio error civis. (N. 147.)

---

Hic Dialis flamen duo adjicio; unus Mars, alter Quirinus.

Hic tu, juvenus Romanus, indico bellum.

Pons atque iter angustiarum multitudo fuga intercludo.

Ille primus post meus discessus metus bonus, spes audax, timor hic ordo, servitus depello civitas.



With his own hand he withdrew himself by a voluntary death from disgrace and punishment.  
He said that he would rather expose his life to the weapons of the enemy, than to the votes of enraged citizens.  
Our common pursuits, your father's kindnesses and your own, had already united me to you.  
The Valerii and Horatii, as consuls, will consider their own power as of less consequence than the liberty of the people.

30B. *Intransitive Verbs.*<sup>1</sup>

We are being treated badly by those whom we have benefited.  
I perceive that I shall thus most easily satisfy the republic, which is very dear to me.  
I saw that all this would be put down either to my obstinacy or my fear.  
Such a calamity is far, and may it ever be far from the republic.  
These two streams uniting fall into a river, which, rising from mount Scordus, runs into the Adriatic sea.  
My triumph was placed between the two funerals of my children.  
But to the strong body a head was wanting.  
Those, who survived the battle, slipped away to their own towns.  
Sophonisba meets him on the very threshold.  
They think that certain signs precede certain events.  
Nor will I excite you, who almost outstrip me in zeal.

I will assuredly satisfy both you, whom I am most anxious to satisfy, and all good men.  
Epicurus reviled the Phædo of Socrates in most opprobrious terms.  
But I was unwilling that that should happen to me, which I am sorry has happened to the bravest men.  
Let us always keep before our minds, how much the nature of man excels domestic and all other animals.

---

<sup>1</sup> Hither refer the Passive Voice of Transitive Verbs.

Ipse mors voluntarius ignominia se ac supplicium subtrahō.

Dico hostis se telum potius quam suffragium iratus civis  
caput objicio.

Tu ego studium communis, beneficium paternus tausque,  
jam ante conjungo.

Valerii Horatiique consul libertas plebs suus opes postfero.

### 30B. *Verba Intransitiva.*

Ab is male tracto, qui benefacio.

Ita facile respublica, qui ego carus sum, ego intelligo  
satisfacio.

Hic omnis assigno aut pertinacia meus aut timor video.

Procul absum, absumque semper talis fortuna respublica.

Hic duo amnis confluens incido flumen, qui, ortus ex mons  
Scordus, mare Hadriaticus infero. (*N.* 42.)

Triumphus meus duo funus liberi meus interpono.

Sed corpus validus caput desum.

Qui supersum praelium, in oppidum suus dilabor.

Is in ipse limen Sophonisba occurro.

Certus res certus signum præcurro arbitror.

Neque vos, qui ego studium pæne præcurro excito.

---

Certe et tu, qui (*N.* 115) maxime cupio, et omnis vir bonus  
satisfacio.

Epicurus Phædo Socraticus turpiter maledico.

Accido autem ego nolo, qui doleo vir fortis accido.

Semper in promptu habeo, quantum natura homo (*sing.*)  
pecus (*N.* 6. *H.* 3) reliquosque bellua antecedo (*subj.*).

For I perceive that my good sense was taken away from me by anger and affection.

Death too is to be added, which ever hangs over him, like the rock over Tantalus.

He not only took a part, but he took the chief part in all these affairs.

Some wanted wisdom, others courage, others opportunity; but no one wanted the will.

Those appetites, which rove too widely, throw off obedience, and do not listen to the commands of reason, to which they have been placed in subjection by the law of nature.

He commands the Numidian horsemen to cross the river Trebia, and ride up to the enemy's gates.

It was determined that the Janiculum should be joined to the city by a bridge supported on piles.

And I perceive that that indeed has happened to no one among the Greeks.

He persuaded them that it was very easy, since they excelled all in valour, to acquire the sovereignty of the whole of Gaul.

That spot affords a prospect both to the city and to the sea that surrounds the city.

30 c. *Many of these vary their construction.*

It is in truth difficult to judge; friendship so outstrips the judgment.

A plain lay between the Carthaginian and Roman camps.

Between the two camps of Pompey and Cæsar there was only one stream, the Apsus.

I am and I was very far distant from him.

He snatched that from you, and wrested it out of your hands.

Have you extorted fifty Attic talents from Cæsar?

---

Carry word to them, how far the Gauls excel all other mortals in valour.

Marcellus the consul, being sent for by the nobles, prevented their design.

Nam ego sentio bonus mens iracundia et amor aufero.  
(*N.* 147.)

Accedo etiam mors, qui, quasi saxum Tantalus, semper impendeo.

Omnis hic negotium non intersum solum, sed præsuum.

Alius consilium, alius animus, alius occasio desum; voluntas nemo.

Qui appetitus longe (*N.* 10. *A.*) evagor, abjicio obedientia, nec ratio pareo, qui subjicio lex natura. (*N.* 75. 2.)

Numida eques transgressus Trebia flumen obequito jubeo hostis porta. (*N.* 236.)

Janiculum pons sublicius conjungo urbs placet.

Et is quidem nemo video Græci contingo. (*N.* 41.)

Persuadeo is perfacilis sum, quum virtus omnis præsto, totus Gallia imperium (*N.* 199. 2. *a.*) potior.

Locus ille conspectus tum ad urbs tum ad circumfusus mare urbs præbeo.

30c. *Multa ex his variant constructionem.*

Judico difficilis sum sane: ita præcurro amicitia judicium.  
(*N.* 155. 1.)

Castra Punicus ac Romanus interjaceo campus. (*N.* 155. 2.)

Inter bini castra Pompeius atque Cæsar unus flumen tantum intersum, Apsus. (*N.* 155. 3.)

Ab ille longe et absum et absum.

Is eripio vos (*dat.*) atque e manus extorqueo.

Vosne a Cæsar talentum Atticus quinquaginta extorqueo?  
(*N.* 155. 4.)

Nuntio is, quantum Galli virtus ceteri mortalis præsto.<sup>1</sup>  
(*N.* 225. *B.* 1.)

Prævenio (*N.* 225. *B.* 2) inceptum is Marcellus consul, a primores accitus.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare this and the remaining sentences with Note 155.

Nor indeed do I long to meet those alone whom I have personally known, but those also concerning whom I have heard and read and myself written.

The Veneti surpass the rest in skill and experience in naval affairs.

By violence, by the sword, by dangers, he banished that citizen from the city, and from all the bulwarks of his country.

No contumely, no violence, no danger could drive him from the cause he had undertaken, and the opinion he had embraced.

He removed the yoke from the Roman neck, and placed it on the proud Samnite.

To that number of ships, which he had received from his brother equipped and prepared, he added ten.

They throw into the fire every thing which they think was dear to them when alive, even animals.

Phidias set a likeness of himself in the shield of Minerva.

Cæsar united those cohorts to his own army, and dismissed Attius in safety.

A magistrate ought to prescribe what is right and useful and in accordance with the laws.

Why are you angry with this man especially, who was at a very great distance from you?

But, that I may return to Plancius, he was never absent from the city, except from necessity.

He ordered him to be hurried from the banquet to fetters and to darkness.

31. *A Dative may be added anywhere with a certain notion of Advantage or Disadvantage.* (See Primer, Note 135, D.)

### 31A. *Adjectives and Verbs.*

A short time is long to the unprepared.

War is just, O Samnites, to those to whom it is necessary ; and arms are lawful for those to whom there is left no hope, but in arms.

For the first four legions the people appointed the tribunes. The Campanian land shall be tilled for you ; the city of Capua shall be inhabited for you.

Neque vero is solum convenio (*N.* 225. *B.* 2) aveo, qui ipse cognosco, sed ille etiam de qui audio et lego et ipse conscribo.

Veneti scientia atque usus nauticus res reliquas antecedo.

Is civis vis, ferrum, periculum, urbs et omnis patria præsidium depello.

Ille de susceptus causa propositusque sententia nullus contumelia, nullus vis, nullus periculum possum depello.

Depulsus ab Romanus cervix (*pl.*) jugum superbus Samnis impono.

Ad is navis numerus, qui a frater instructus paratusque accipio, decem adjicio.

Omnis, qui vivus cor sum arbitror, in ignis infero, etiam animal.

Phidias se similis species includo in clipeus Minerva.

Cæsar is cohors cum exercitus suus conjungo, Attiusque incolumis dimitto.

Magistratus debeo præscribo rectus (*pl.*) et utilis et conjunctus cum lex.

Cur hic potissimum irascor, qui longe a tu absum?

Sed, ut redeo ad Plancius, nunquam ex urbs absum, nisi necessitas.

Is de convivium in vinculum atque in tenebræ abripio (*N.* 154) jubeo.

31. *Dativus ubivis adjungi potest cum notione quadam Comodi vel Incomodi.*

### 31 A. *Adjectiva et Verba.*

Brevis tempus longus sum imparatus.

Justus sum bellum, Samnites, qui necessarius; et pius arma, qui nullus nisi in arma relinquo (*N.* 32. 1) spes.

Primus quattuor legio populus tribunus creo.

Vos aro ager Campanus; vos Capua urbs (*N.* 104) frequento.

Where are those farms which your father left you ?

He selected and fortified the spot which seemed the safest for a permanent camp.

I have sought pleasant resting-places, so to speak, for my readers, and repose for my own mind.

For pride and cruelty there comes, if a late, yet no light punishment.

It is just, O Romans, that your pity, and your help should be open to all.

And, as Plato wrote to Archytas, let him remember that he was born not for himself alone, but for his country, but for his friends.

But Pompey, fearing for Dyrrachium, hastens thither with marches by day and night.

And so, all being frightened, every one took care of (*provided for*) himself.

They perceive too late that they have in vain pursued money, or power, or influence, or glory.

Pompey understands this, and communicates to us that a plot is being laid against his life.

She had committed suicide.

Success in their exploits gains commanders the good-will of the army.

The arrival of the ambassadors increased rather than diminished the fear of the state.

What history has not related that the head of Servius Tullius was on fire as he slept ?

I feel great gratitude to old age, which has increased my eagerness for conversation.

The unusual silence excited their wonder as they approached nearer.

But that friend of yours proceeds to Brundisium.

*Here see Note 130.*

### 31B. *Adverbs and Substantives.*

I am glad that you bought the farm, and I hope that that transaction is turning out fortunately for you.

The day for the trial was now drawing near.

Ubi sum is fundus qui tu (*N. 148. B*) pater relinquo?

Locus, qui tutus stativa videor, delectus communio (*N. 236.*)

Legens velut deverticulum amœnus, et requies (*N. 6. J. 2*)  
animus meus quæro.

Superbia crudelitasque, etsi serus, non levis tamen venio  
pœna (*pl.*).

Omnis quidem, Romani, vester misericordia vesterque auxi-  
lium æquus sum pateo.

Atque, ut ad Archytas (*N. 5. A. 2*) scribo Plato, non se  
se solus nascor memini (*N. 38. A. 4*), sed patria, sed  
suus.

At Pompeius, Dyrrachium timens, diurnus eo nocturnusque  
iter contendo.

Itaque, perterritus omnis, se quisque consulo.

Sero sentio frustra se aut pecunia studeo (*N. 148. A. 2*),  
aut imperium (*pl.*), aut opes (*N. 6. D*), aut gloria.

Pompeius hic (*pl.*) intelligo, ego cumque communico insidiæ  
vita suus fio (*N. 148. A. 1*).

Semet (*N. 59*) ipse (*nom.*) mors conscisco.

Felicitas res (*gen.*) gestus exercitus benevolentia imperator  
(*N. 148. B*) concilio.

Adventus legatus augeo potius timor civitas (*N. 148. C. 1*)  
quam minuo.

Caput ardeo Servius Tullius dormiens quis historia non  
prodo?

Habeo senectus magnus gratia (*sing.*), qui ego (*N. 148. C. 2*)  
sermo aviditas augeo.

Prope adiens insolitus silentium admiratio facio.

At ille tu (*N. 131*) pergo Brundisium.

*Hic vide Notam 130.*

### 31 B. *Adverbia et Substantiva.*

Emo tu prædium gaudeo, feliciterque tu res iste evenio  
cupio. (*N. 130.*)

Jam adsum judicium dies.



We are the cause of war, we are the cause of wounds and of slaughter to our husbands and parents.

---

He was never a candidate for the consulship ; he was elected consul twice : the first time before the legal age ; the second at the right age for himself, almost too late for the republic.

We cannot hear the signal for retreat, or the recall from war.

Nor will I from any one's greatness seek for myself means of protection against dangers.

The townsmen had possession of the city, which was placed in the middle as the prize of the conquerors.

When towards evening I was eagerly expecting a letter from you, lo you a messenger to say that the servants had come from Rome !

31c. *Instead of this Dative, the Accusative is sometimes used with in, erga, adversus.*

That fellow is useful for nothing.

He was an orator fit for no pleading.

Was any one ever kinder to you than your father ?

---

The horse was created for running, the ox for ploughing, the dog for hunting, man for understanding and acting.

He was more acute, and more expert for discovery than for perfecting.

We have heard that the people of the Numidians are unskilled in infantry battles.

32. *Est, sunt with a Dative often imply having : also the word suppeto.*

A sick man has (*there is to a sick man*) hope, while he has life.

You have children, Marcus Tullius, and relations.

The Etrurians have not the courage, which Porsena and their ancestors once had.

We have and we shall have alliance with them.

They complain that each class has its own magistrates and its own laws.

Ego causa bellum, ego vulnus ac cædes (*pl.*) vir ac parens sum.

Consulatus peto nunquam; fio consul bis: primum ante tempus; iterum se suus tempus, respublica pæne sero.

Receptus signum aut revocatio a bellum audio non possum.

Neque ego ex quisquam amplitudo præsidium (*pl.*) periculum quæro. (*N.* 148. *A.* 1.)

Oppidanus urbs habeo, victor præmium in medium positus. (*N.* 148. *C.* 1.)

Epistola quum a tu avide exspecto ad vesper (*N.* 6. *B.*), ecce tu (*N.* 131) nuntius puer venio Roma!

31c. *Pro hoc Dativo nonnunquam Accusativus usurpatur cum Præpositionibus in, erga, adversus.*

Homo iste ad nullus res sum utilis.

Orator sum ad nullus causa idoneus.

Ecquis erga tu benevolus sum quam pater tuus?

Ad cursus equus, ad aro bos, ad iadago canis, ad intelligo et ago homo.

Acutus et habilis sum ad invenio quam ad perpolio.

Rudis ad pedester bellum Numida gens sum accipio.

32. Est, sunt *cum Dativo* habere sæpe significat: *necnon verbum suppeto.*

Ægrotus, dum anima sum, spes sum.

Sum tu, M. Tullius, liberi propinquusque.

Non sum animus Etrusci, qui Porsena quondam majoresque is sum.

Ego cum is societas sum sumque.

Suus quisque pars magistratus, suus lex sum queror.

- If any one possesses this, it helps not a little towards many objects.

He had a long-standing enmity against those two brothers. I hold it for certain that, if any sudden war arise, the senate will not have more hope in patrician than in plebeian generals.

And what protection, what solace has this unhappy woman left, when her brother is lost?

But come now, by whose instrumentality was the poison administered? By that of M. Asellius.—What has he to do with Avitus? Nothing.

The besieged had a greater abundance of corn and other supplies than the besiegers.

33. *The same Dative is joined to Participles and Participials of the Passive Voice, especially to Gerundives.*

I foresee a massacre, and a return of the exiles, and a reign endurable not even by any Persian.

An account is to be given by the master of the horse, for having (*because he has*) fought contrary to my order.

Very many things must be altered (*are to-be-altered*) and corrected by us.

He thought that the whole plan of the war ought to be changed (*was to-be-changed*) by him.

But a time has come, desired rather than hoped for by me.

By whom have not the vigils of Demosthenes been heard of?

Suppose the Alps loftier than the Pyrenæan heights: surely no lands touch the sky, nor are any insurmountable by the human race.

Peace, especially civil peace, although an object of desire to all good men, was yet pre-eminently so to me.

They found the consul an object of the greatest possible pity to good allies; of contempt to all proud and faithless ones, as the Campanians were.

Many things must be done by the conqueror, even against his will, at the pleasure of those by whose help he has conquered.

Si quis hic suppeto, adjuvo aliquantum ad multus. (N. 54. 2.)

---

Sum (*imperf.*) is vetus inimicitia (*pl.*) cum duo ille frater. Pro certus habeo, si qui repens bellum orior, non multus spes sum senatus in patricius quam in plebeius dux.

Qui miser qui (N. 26. B) præsidium, qui solatium reliquus sum, frater amissus (*abl. abs.*)?

Ago (*sing.*) vero, venenum per (N. 158) quis do? Per M. Asellius.—Quis hic cum Avitus? Nihil. (N. 62. C. 1.)

Fru mentum copiaeque alius large obsessus quam obsidens suppeto.

33. *Adjungitur idem Dativus Participiis et Participialibus Passivæ Vocis, præsertim Gerundivis.*

Cædes video, et exsul reditus, et regnum ne Persa quidem (N. 303. 1 et 2) quisquam tolerabilis.

Magister eques, quod contra dictum meus pugno, ratio reddendus sum. (N. 36.)

Permiltus ego et mutandus et corrigendus sum.

Omnis se commutandus bellum ratio existimo.

Sed exsto tempus, optatus ego magis quam speratus. (N. 156. 1.)

Quis non audio Demosthenes vigilia? (N. 156. 2.)

---

Fingo (*pl.*) Alpes Pyrenæus jugum altus: nullus profecto terra cælum contingo (N. 41), nec inexistens superabilis humanus genus sum.

Ego pax, præsertim civilis, quamquam omnis bonus, tamen in primus sum optabilis.

Consul invenio, quam possum maxime (N. 10. C. 1), miserabilis bonus socius; superbus atque infidelis, ut sum Campani, spernendus.

Miltus victor is arbitrium (R. 42), per qui vinco, etiam invitus, faciendus sum.

I fought with spirit, as long as the authority of the senate had to be defended by me.

This perhaps will shortly have to be done by you.

From thence he climbs up to the Capitol by a rock, precipitous and therefore neglected by the enemy's sentinels.

For things of good repute, not secret things, are sought for by good men.

These things were obsequiously done by his colleague, and a near day was appointed for assembling.

34. *A Dative of the Thing is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added.*

34A. *As a Complement.*

This house was itself a proof of your most cruel tyranny.

They are unwilling that their disasters should be a matter of mirth.

---

This spot is singularly adapted for the growth of a city.

The size itself of so new a city is an evidence of this.

A horseman saved him, who hurriedly dismounted himself, and placed the terrified king on his horse.

Remember that, when you shall give the signal for battle, these two armies will forthwith be watched.

This country life, which you think ought to be a disgrace and a crime, they consider to be most honourable and most pleasant.

For why should he hasten to engage, when the senate is recalling him and sounding the signal for retreat?

Two cohorts having been sent to their help by Cæsar, the Gauls broke in the most daring way through the midst of our men.

The more common report is that Remus leapt over the new walls in mockery of his brother.

34B. *A Dative of the Recipient being added.*

Your ill health is a great anxiety to us.

Seleucus was a terror to some, a protection to others.

Meanwhile Sulla came to the help of (*for a help to*) the cohort with two legions.

I hope that this connection will be a pleasure to us.

Ego, quamdiu senatus auctoritas ego defendendus sum, acriter prælior.

Hic celeriter tu sum fortasse faciendus. (N. 36.)

Inde, per præruptus eoque neglectus hostis custodia (*sing.*) saxum, in Capitolium evado.

Honestus enim bonus vir, non occultus, quæro. (N. 156. 1.)

Hic collega obsequenter fio (N. 156. 2), brevisque dies ad convenio edico.

34. *Dativus Rei pro Complemento ponitur, adjuncto sæpe Dativo Recipientis.*

34A. *Pro Complemento.*

Hic domus sum ipse indicium tuus crudelis dominatus

Nolo ludibrium sum (*infin.*) clades suos.

Hic ad (N. 136) incrementum urbs natus unice locus sum.

Argumentum sum ipse magnitudo tam novus urbs.

Salus sum eques, qui raptim ipse desilio, pavidusque rex in equus subijcio.

Memor sum jam, quum signum pugna do, hic duo acies spectaculum sum.

Vita hic rusticus, qui tu probrum et crimen puto sum oportet, et honestus et suavis sum arbitrator.

Quid enim, revocans et receptus canens senatus, propero dimico?

Duo missus subsidium (N. 159. 1) cohors a Cæsar, Galli per medius noster audaciter perrumpo.

Vulgatus fama sum ludibrium (N. 159. 2) frater Remus novus transilio murus.

34B. *Adjuncto Dativo Recipientis.*

Magnus ego sum sollicitudo valetudo tuus.

Seleucus alius terror, alius præsidium sum.

Interim Sulla auxilium cohors venio cum legio duo.

Spero ego hic conjunctio voluptas sum.

I give you now the camp and city for a prey.  
They chose this place as a residence for themselves.

At last, when he saw that he was accused of the crime of treachery, he deserted to the Romans and was of great use to the consul.

Intestine strife has been and will be to many nations a greater cause of destruction than foreign wars, than famine or pestilences.

Let your own house, let your father and your uncle slain with their armies within thirty days, be a warning to you.

What then? did that fury of the tribune of the people injure Metellus, that great and most illustrious man? Certainly it did not.

Who has not praised the daughters of Erechtheus? Who has not hated the name of Tubulus?

But that, which was charged as a crime on me, was not only not an offence, but was a most noble deed.

No one will reckon that as the fault of Q. Fabius, but of the dictator.

The whole state came to his help.

He sends the Cretan archers and Balearic slingers to the help of the townsmen.

To the soldiers, who had been with him in the expedition, he gave a hundred oxen as a present.

35. *A Dative of the Complement is used by Attraction, especially in expressions of Naming.*

The name of that disease is avarice.

There was then in the camp among the young men C. Marius, whose cognomen was subsequently Coriolanus.

There was a boy born from that marriage, to whom the parents gave the name of Ascanius.

The name of Egerius was given to the boy on account of his poverty.

36. *Æqualis, proprius, communis, par, alienus, dissimilis, similis, dispar, consors, and socius, conscius, affinis, sacer, æmulus, and superstes, and more Adjectives, sometimes prefer a Dative, sometimes a Genitive.* See Note 151.

Castra nunc vos urbsque præda do.  
Hic se domicilium locus deligo.

Postremo, quum se proditio crimen (*N. 186. 2*) insimulo  
cerno, ad Romani transfugio et magnus usus consul sum.

Intestinus arma sum sumque plus populus magis exitium  
quam bellum externus, quam fames morbusve.

Domus tu tuus, pater patruusque intra triginta dies cum  
exercitus cæsus, documentum sum.

Quis tum? num (*N. 48*) ille furor tribunus plebs fraus  
Metellus sum, summus ille et clarus vir? Certe non  
sum.

Quis Erechtheus filia non laudo? Quis Tubulus nomen  
odium non sum? (*N. 38. A. Obs.*)

At is, qui ego crimen do (*imperf.*), non modo peccatum non  
sum, sed sum res pulcher.

Nemo is Q. Fabius vitium verto, sed dictator.

Venio hic subsidium cunctus civitas.

Cræte sagittarius et funditor Baleares subsidium oppidanus  
mitto.

Centum bos miles donum do, qui se cum in expeditio  
sum.

35. *Dativus Complementi per Attractionem ponitur,  
præsertim in Nominandi Formulæ.*

Is morbus nomen sum avaritia. (*N. 183. 1.*)

Sum tum in castra inter juvenis C. Marcius, qui cognomen  
postea Coriolanus sum. (*N. 183. 2.*)

Stirps virilis ex is matrimonium sum, qui Ascanius parens  
dico nomen. (*N. 183. 1.*)

Puer ob inopia Egerius indo nomen. (*N. 183. 2.*)

36. *Æqualis, proprius, communis, par, alienus,  
Dissimilis, similis, dispar, consors, sociusque,  
Conscius, affinis, sacer, æmulus, atque superstes,  
Pluraque nunc voluere Dativum, nunc Genitivum.*



36 A. *They sometimes prefer a Dative.*

I have perceived, Scipio, that death is common to every age.  
He believed that he would be by no means a match for the  
two consuls.

You have lost that to which there was nothing in the world  
like.

He did a thing entirely similar to those things which I  
myself had done.

Aruns dies, nor does the father long remain to survive the  
son.

What rivalry can I have with one who is not of equal age  
even with my son?

Nor is there any writer cotemporary with those times extant,  
on whom we may depend as a tolerably sure authority.

There is no interest in the republic exclusively my own;  
but the time of action belonged more peculiarly to me  
than to the rest.

Yet you always considered that this sorrow was common to  
yourselves and me.

Being on that side, he says the very thing which is most  
unfavourable to that cause.

He was not only unlike the last king, but was more warlike  
even than Romulus.

But that was believed the more readily, because (*on this  
account, that*) it seemed probable.

There are others far unlike these, simple and open lovers of  
truth, enemies of deceit.

Your generous mind ought not to have been privy to this  
so great crime.

One was related to me by marriage: I had undertaken a  
capital cause for the other.

If you think that few are accessory to this crime, you  
greatly err.

Nothing is so contrary to reason and regularity as fortune.

36 B. *They sometimes prefer a Genitive.*

This study was not common to Greece, but peculiar to  
Athens.

This argument is common to other philosophers also.

36 A. *Dativum interdum volunt.*

Sertio ego, Scipio, omnis ætas mors sum communis.  
Duo consul haudquaquam se par sum credo.

Is amitto, qui similis in terra (*pl.*) nihil sum.

Res gero consimilis res is qui ipse gero.

Aruns morior, nec diu maneo superstes filius pater.

---

Qui ego æmulatio (*N. 150*) cum is sum possum, qui ne filius  
quidem meus æqualis sum (*subj.*)?

Nec quisquam æqualis tempus ille scriptor exsto, qui (*abl.*)  
satis certus auctor sto (*impers.*).

Nullus est in respublica causa meus proprius; tempus vero  
ago sum magis ego proprius quam ceteri.

Hic tamen dolor vos communis semper vos ego cum (*N. 150*)  
sum duco.

Ex ille pars is dico, qui ille causa maxime (*N. 9. 2*) sum  
alienus.

Hic non solum proximus rex dissimilis (*N. 151. 1. b*), sed  
ferox etiam quam Romulus sum.

Is autem eo facile credo, quia similis verum videor.

Sum hic alius multum dispar, simplex et apertus veritas  
cultor, fraus (*gen.*) inimicus.

Hic tantus facinus tuus mens liberalis conscius (*N. 151. 4. b*)  
non sum debeo.

Alter ego affinis sum : alter (*gen.*) causa caput recipio.

Hic facinus si paucus puto (*pl.*) affinis sum, vehementer  
erro.

Nihil sum tam contrarius ratio et constantia quam fortuna.

36 B. *Genitivum interdum volunt.*

Hic studium non sum communis Græcia, sed proprius  
Athenæ.

Communis sum hic argumentum alius etiam philosophus.

I do an injury to a very brave man, to whom this state has produced few equal.

They throw down a statue very like that fellow.

So it is written in Philistus, who is a man both of learning and research, and cotemporary with those times.

It is the privilege of this liberty to live just as you may please.

Who would think it inconsistent with that dignity, which every one assigns to me, to examine into these subjects?

They were twin brothers, men like each other in character as well as in person, but most unlike their fellow-townsmen.

Nor are we unwilling that any citizen should turn out like ourselves.

These oracular sayings of the natural philosophers are more probable (*like the truth*) than yours.

I had not lost a depreciator of my praises, but rather the partner and sharer in my glorious labours.

He fled, fearing his own conscience rather than the information of men who were privy to nothing.

Although they suspected that that was false, they were conscious to themselves of no crime.

He persuaded the judges that I was concerned in some crime.

And from this opinion of mankind that island is considered sacred to those gods.

You have children and relations: and next to these those ought to be dear to you, who are emulous of your pursuits.

And all these, as the opposites of good things, we will place on one side among things to be avoided.

Nor did the gods deem this inconsistent with their majesty; for nothing is more excellent than kindness.

I wrote such things to you, as I thought were not inconsistent with your dignity.

37. *Delecto and jūvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno, and certain other Verbs, are joined to an Accusative against the Rule (i.e. against R. 29).*

And so your former letter pleased me very much.

**Facio** injuria fortis vir, qui paucus par hic civitas fero.

Statua iste (*N.* 21) persimilis deturbo.

Ita scriptus apud Philistus sum, et doctus homo et diligens,  
et æqualis tempus ille.

Hic libertas proprius sum sic vivo ut volo.

Quis alienus puto is sum dignitas, qui ego quisque tribuo,  
hic exquiro?

Hic frater geminus sum, homo inter (*N.* 150) se quum  
forma tum mos similis, municeps autem suus dissimilis.  
(*N.* 151. 1. *a.*)

Nec nolo quisquam ego similis evado civis.

Hic physicus oraculum verum sum similis quam vester.

Non obtrektor laus meus, sed socius potius et consors  
(*N.* 151. 3) gloriosus labor (*sing.*) amitto.

Fugio, suus magis conscientia quam indicium homo nullus  
res conscius metuens.

Quum ille falsus sum suspicor (*subj.*), se nullus sum  
consciis (*N.* 151. 4. *a et c*) culpa.

Judex persuadeo ego aliquis culpa affinis sum.

Qui ex opinio homo ille insula is deus sacer puto.

Sum tu liberi propinquusque: sum etiam debeo proxime  
(*N.* 124. 1. *b*) hic carus, qui studium tuus sunt æmulus.

Qui (*neut.*) omnis, uti contrarius res bonus, in res vitandus  
repono.

Neque hic deus alienus (*N.* 151. 2. *c*) duco majestas suus;  
nihil sum enim beneficentia præstans.

Is scribo ad tu, qui non alienus (*N.* 151. 2. *d*) sum duco a  
dignitas tuus.

37. Delecto *atque* juvo, jubeo, rego, lædo, guberno, *et*  
*alia quædam Verba, Accusativo contra Regulam junguntur.*

Itaque ego superior litteræ tuus admodum delecto.

The event showed that fortune helps the brave.  
 That witness had injured the defendant.  
 Reason shall direct the movements of fortune.  
 This course of my life perhaps displeases some.

You will do me a very great favour, if you will assist T.  
 Manlius to the best of your power.

Nor would life please me, if that life were hateful to my  
 fellow-citizens and soldiers.

He orders some to attempt the ascent on all sides, and to  
 join battle hand to hand, others to hurl their missiles  
 from a distance.

Lucius Sulla by himself ruled the republic, and governed  
 the whole world.

He came with such warmth and passion, that he not only  
 hurt Cæcina by his perjury, but appeared also to be  
 angry with me.

The states of Etruria, each in proportion to its resources,  
 promised that they would assist the consul.

Nor do I to-day arrogate anything to myself, which can  
 fairly offend any the most malicious person.

Cæsar had forbidden the officers to depart from the works  
 and the legions.

38. *Tempero and moderor sometimes have a Dative,  
 sometimes an Accusative.* See Note 152.

When mention of Philip and the Romans occurred, you  
 scarcely restrained your hands.

The divine mind turns the heavens, takes care of the earth,  
 governs the seas.

To conquer one's passions, to restrain one's anger, to use  
 a victory with forbearance :—a man who can do these  
 things, I do not compare him with the greatest men, but  
 I judge him to be very like the Deity.

They will presently be glad that they have restrained their  
 anger.

He had been ordered so to regulate the course of the vessels,  
 that the army might become visible and the fleet enter  
 the harbour at the same time.

Eventus doceo fortis fortuna juvo.

Lædo testis ille reus.

Fortuna motus (*sing.*) ratio guberno.

Hic meus vita cursus nonnullus fortasse offendo.

Gratus ego facio (*fut. perf.*), si T. Manlius quam maxime juvo (*fut. perf.*). (*N.* 34.)

Nec ego vita juvo (*imperf. potent.*), invisus civis et miles meus.

Alius ascensus undique tento jubeo, et cominus prælium consero, alius eminus telum ingero.

L. Sulla solus respublica rego, orbisque terra (*pl.*) guberno.

Ita vehemens acerque venio, ut non modo Cæcina perjurium suus lædo, sed etiam ego videor irascor.

Etruria populus, pro suis quisque facultas, consul adjuvo (*N.* 67. *A.*) polliceor.

Neque ego ego hodie quisquam assumo, qui quisquam malevolens jus possum (*subj.*) offendo.

Ab opus (*sing.*) legioque legatus Cæsar discedo veto.

38. *Tempero et moderor nunc Dativum nunc Accusativum habent.*

Quum de Philippus et Romani mentio incido (*perf.*), vix manus (*dat.*) tempero.

Mens divinus cælum (*sing.*) verso, terra tueor, mare (*acc.*) moderor.

Animus (*sing.*) vinco, iracundia cohibeo, victoria (*acc.*) tempero:—hic qui facio, non ego is cum summus vir confero, sed similis Deus judico.

Postmodum gaudeo se ira (*dat.*) moderor.

Is ita moderor cursus (*acc.*) navis jubeo, ut idem tempus exercitus ostendo et classis portus intro.

\* For the Impersonal Verbs which take a Dative, see Rule 102.

## ON THE ABLATIVE.

*The Ablative is the case of circumstances, which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also Time and Place.*

39. *The Ablative of the Cause follows Adjectives, Verbs, and especially Participles.*

For Scipio was not only remarkable for true virtues, but also fitted by a certain tact for the display of them.

Under this head there are certain new ideas, with which I am greatly pleased.

I grieve for the injuries done you.

We prepared the fleet, which you commanded, for the sake of three things.

Then and not till then, the Romans, taught by their misfortunes, sought for a general equal to Hannibal.

The cause was betrayed by the leaders on both sides through rashness and ignorance.

---

This smile, which you blame, comes not from (*is not one of*) a glad heart, but from one almost mad with misfortunes.

O disgraceful, and for that reason miserable fact! For I perceive that that only is wretched, which is disgraceful.

We are all naturally, as I said before, most studious and covetous of reputation.

We are all attracted by the love of praise, and the best men are most influenced by glory.

The state suffers from two opposite vices, avarice and luxury, which plagues have overthrown all great empires.

Nor could timber fail by reason of the great number of trees. But in good truth, on your account and that of the republic,

I am sorry that such a disgraceful act has been committed.

But I think that the case ought to be put off to another time for two reasons.

They sought pardon for their state, which had been already twice previously ruined by the rashness of its citizens, and was about to be again safe through the kindness of its enemies.

## DE ABLATIVO.

*Ablativus est casus rerum quæ circumstant et adverbiali more limitant actionem. Definit etiam Tempus et Locum.*

39. *Ablativus Causæ sequitur Adjectiva, Verba, et præsertim Participia.*

Sum enim Scipio non verus tantum virtus mirabilis, sed ars quoque quidam in ostentatio (*acc.*) is compositus.

Hic in caput sum quidam novus (*N. 54. 2*), qui ego magnopere delecto.

Tuus injuria doleo.

Classis, qui tu præsum, tres res causa (*N. 191*) paro.

Tum demum, edoctus malum, Romanus par Hannibal (*dat.*) dux quero.

Ab dux utrobique prodo temeritas atque inscitia res (*pl.*) (*N. 157 et Obs.*)

Non lætus, sed prope amens malum cor hic, qui increpo, risus sum.

O res turpis, et is res miser! sentio enim is solus sum miser, qui turpis sum (*subj.*).

Sum natura, ut ante dico, studiosus appetensque honestas.

Traho omnis laus studium, et bonus quisque maxime gloria duco.

Diversus duo vitium, avaritia et luxuria, civitas laboro, qui pestis omnis magnum imperium evertō.

Neque materia multitudo arbor deficio possum.

Sed mehercules, vester resque publica (*N. 3. Obs.*) causa, nolo tantus flagitium committo.

Sed ego causa in alius tempus differendus arbitror sum duo res gratia. (*N. 191.*)

Venia civitas peto, civis temeritas bis jam ante eversus, incolumis futurus iterum hostis beneficium.



From these motives they determined to set out.

*Here see Note 193.*

*40. The Ablative of the Instrument follows Verbs and Participles.*

The lictors scourge (*cut with rods*), and behead (*strike with the axe*) each one of them.

Hasten, ye consuls, ransom with arms the state which our ancestors ransomed with gold.

He said that Vibius had been poisoned (*removed by poison*) by this Aulus Cluentius.

---

He both fought several successful battles, and shattered a considerable portion of the wall with three battering rams.

He, when intending to go to the Olympic games, seemed in a dream to be carried in (*by*) a four-horse chariot.

You therefore nourished this fire by which you are being now consumed.

Many, being let down by ropes along the wall, deserted to the Romans.

You say that Oppianicus has been killed by poison, which was given him in bread by the instrumentality of a certain M. Asellius, his friend.

*41. The Ablative of Manner generally follows Verbs.*

But yet the soldiers were bearing these things with extraordinary patience.

For that (*that thing*) was done with the courage of a man, but the wisdom of a boy.

They could by no means do this honestly.

---

So two kings successively, each in a different way, the former by war, the latter by peace, strengthened the state. When night approaches, they throw themselves down promiscuously like wild beasts, near running streams, without a fortification, without sentinels.

But my speech has wandered, I know not how, from that which was proposed by you.

Hic res adductus constituo proficiscor.

*Hic vide Notam 193.*

40. *Ablativus Instrumenti sequitur Verba et Participia.*

Lictor quisque virga cædo, securisque (*N. 2. C. 2*) ferio.

Eo, consul, redimo arma civitas qui aurum majores noster redimo. (*N. 190. 2.*)

Dico Vibius ab hic A. Cluentius venenum tollo. (*N. 157 et Obs.*)

---

Is et prælium aliquot secundus facio, et tres aries aliquantus murus discutio.

Is, ad Olympia proficiscor cogitans, videor in somnus (*pl.*) currus quadrigæ (*N. 109. 2*) veho.

Alo ergo hic incendium qui nunc ardeo.

Multus, funis per murus demissus, ad Romani transfugio.

Oppianicus venenum neco dico, qui is do (*perf. subj.*) in panis per M. Asellius quidam, familiaris is. (*N. 158 et Obs.*)

41. *Ablativus Modi plerumque sequitur Verba.*

Sed tamen hic singularis patientia miles fero.

Ago enim ille res animus virilis, consilium puerilis. (*N. 48.*)

Hic facio honeste nullus modus possum. (*N. 310.*)

---

Ita duo deinceps rex, alius (*N. 172. Obs. 1*) alius via, ille bellum, hic pax, civitas augeo. (*N. 22.*)

Ubi nox appeto, prope rivus aqua (*pl.*), sine munimentum, sine custodia (*pl.*), passim fera ritus (*N. 194. 3*) sterno (*pass.*).

Sed nescio quis (*N. 43. Obs. 2*) pactum ab is, qui sum a tu propositus, aberro oratio.

The river Thames can be crossed at one place alone on foot, and this with difficulty.

I will write to you at greater length, when I have got more leisure.

And so on the next day he set out with all his forces, by a great circuit, along a difficult and narrow road.

The states of Thessaly came of their own free will beneath our power.

He will be said to have been driven into exile by the consul with force and threats, though uncondemned and innocent.

Hanno alone pleaded the cause of the treaty, being heard with great silence on account of his influence, but not with the assent of his auditors.

42. *The Ablative of the Condition follows Verbs, Adjectives, and Substantives.*

Let us live on those terms on which we were born.

He dismissed the army without the command of the senate.

The judgment of Brutus, I would say it with your leave, I far prefer to yours.

And perhaps, I would say it with the kind indulgence of this most excellent man, you will defend the cause of M'. Curius.

They had fought successfully under his command and auspices.

For his successors, though better in my opinion than the philosophers of other schools, are yet degenerate.

For Clodius was all his life-time accused by (*was the defendant of*) Milo, under the Plotian law.

War has been declared against you, to the great damage of those who have declared it, if you are men.

They ought to have sent a ship, equipped and furnished at their own expence and risk, even as far as the Atlantic, if we had ordered it.

On a good debt, he was content with one per cent. (*monthly*); on an indifferent one, he expected four per cent.

*Here see Note 198*

Tamesis flumen unus omnino locus pes (*pl.*), atque hic ægre, transeo possum.

Multus verbum ad tu scribo, quum multus otium nanciscor. (*N.* 34. 2.)

Itaque posterus dies omnis copiae, magnus circuitus, difficilis angustusque iter (*N.* 261) proficiscor.

Thessalia civitas suus voluntas in ditio noster venic. (*N.* 190. 2.)

Ille, indemnatus, innocens, in exsilium ejicio a consul vis et minae (*N.* 194. 2. *b*) dico.

Hanno unus causa foedus, magnus silentium propter auctoritas suus, non cum assensus audiens, ago. (*N.* 194. 1. *b* et 2. *a*.)

42. *Ablativus Conditionis sequitur Verba, Adjectiva, et Substantiva.*

Is, qui nascor, conditio (*sing.*) vivo.

Exercitus injussu senatus dimitto.

Brutus ego judicium, pax tuus dico (*perf. conj.*), longe antepono tuus.

Et fortasse, bonus venia hic bonus vir dico, causa *M'*. Curius defendo (*sing.*).

Ductus auspiciumque (*sing.*) is res prospere gero.

Namque hic posterus, bonus ille quidem meus sententia quam reliquus philosophus disciplina, sed degenero.

Reus enim Milo lex Plotius sum Clodius, quoad vivo.

Bellum vos indico, magnus ille malum, qui indico, si vir sum.

Navis vel usque ad Oceanus, si impero, sumptus periculumque suus ornatus atque armatus mitto debeo. (*N.* 311.)

Bonus nomen, centesimæ (*N.* 53. *Obs.*) contentus sum; non bonus, quaternus centesimæ spero.

*Hic vide Notam 198.*

43. *The Ablative of Quality with an Epithet follows Verbs and Substantives.*

He found a bunch of grapes of wonderful size.  
 You have a man of singular modesty, of known worth, and  
 of approved fidelity.  
 A puppy of that name had died.  
 My father was in weak health.

---

There was between Labienus and the enemy a stream of  
 difficult passage and with steep banks.  
 A man of great age rushed into the forum.  
 Tanaquil addresses the people: she bids them be of good  
 courage.  
 C. Sacerdos was legate in that province: a man of what  
 worth and firmness!  
 But he is a man of good memory. He will say that I am  
 one of still better.  
 I will be of the same mind as each one of you ought to be  
 of towards them.  
 He will be of such a mind towards the republic, as we wish  
 him to be of.  
 The Britons have long hair, and their body shaven.  
 Zacynthus is a small island near Ætolia: it has one town of  
 the same name as itself.

44. *The Ablative of Respect is joined especially to Adjectives, also to Verbs and Substantives.*

Obs. *To this rule are referred those Ablatives, domo, natione, numéro, and the like; also etate and natu.*

Hitherto the plans of others have ever appeared more  
 specious at first sight, but mine better in practice.  
 He beholds his enemy, confused at once in sight and mind.  
 Greece was surpassing us in learning and every kind of  
 literature.  
 He hates also on his own account Cæsar and the Romans.  
 They burn all their towns amounting in number to twelve,  
 and their villages amounting to four hundred.  
 An (a certain) aged man had come into the theatre.

43. *Ablativus Qualitatis cum Epitheto sequitur Verba et Substantiva.*

Mirabilis magnitudo uva invenio.

Habeo homo singularis pudor, virtus cognitus, et spectatus fides.

Morior catellus is nomen.

Pater meus sum infirmus valetudo.

Sum inter Labienus atque hostis difficilis transitus flumen ripaque præruptus.

Magnus natu quidam se in forum projicio.

Tanaquil populus alloquor: jubeo bonus animus sum.  
(N. 67. B.)

In is provincia legatus sum C. Sacerdos: qui virtus, qui constantia vir!

Sed sum memoria bonus. Ego dico sum bonus.

Qui animus unus quisque vos debeo sum in ille, hic sum.

Talis animus in respublica, qualis ego volo, futurus sum.

Britanni sum capillus promissus et corpus rasus.

Zacynthus parvus insula sum propinquus Ætolia: unus urbs idem, qui ipse sum, nomen habeo.

44. *Ablativus Respectus jungitur præsertim Adjectivis, item Verbis et Substantivis.*

Obs. *Huc referuntur Ablativi illi, domo, natione, numero, similes; item ætate et natu.*

Adhuc alius speciosus primus aspectus consilium semper videor, meus usus bonus.

Hostis, oculus (*pl.*) simul ac mens turbatus, obtrunco.

Doctrina Græcia ego et omnis litteræ genus supero.

Odi etiam suus nomen Cæsar et Romani.

Oppidum suus omnis numerus ad duodecim, vicus ad quadringenti incendio.

Quidam in theatrum grandis natu venio.

The mourning dress of the young men and the tears of the old men could move the Roman people.

---

He gives them besides power, in title that of prætors, in reality that of kings.

Hannibal himself, already previously suffering in his eyes, is now deprived of one eye.

I am sorry that I am suspected by you on the score of negligence.

He was both noble and rich; and excelled in personal beauty and strength.

If anything shall happen to (*shall be done with*) him, in whom will you have hope?

Cælius assigns the honour of saving the consul to a slave, a Ligurian by nation.

These two states of Etruria, because they were next in position, believed that they should be also the next exposed (*nearest*) to war.

A certain man appeared, Mezetulus by name, not unallied in family to the kings.

In our college, as each is more advanced in age, so does he have the precedence in voting.

Then indeed all the youngest of the senators almost flew to the chairs of the consuls.

*Here see Note 197.*

45. *The Ablative of Price follows Verbs and Adjectives.*

He purchased that vessel lately at a high price.

You sold the authority of the senate, the safety of the state, the whole commonwealth, for the bribe of a province.

During the scarcity (*dearness*) of provisions he gave the people a bushel of wheat for an as.

A bushel of wheat had cost (*been at*) five denarii. He fixed it at three denarii.

He measures the hatred of others for himself by his own hatred for them.

---

That youth says that he bought for two thousand sesterces this man's property, which is worth six millions (*of sesterces*).

Adolescens squalor, major natu lacrima populus Romanus  
moveo possum.

Do is præterea potestas, verbum prætorius, res verus regius.

Hannibal ipse, jam ante æger oculus, alter nunc oculus  
capió.

Ego nomen negligentia suspectus (*N. 141. Obs.*) tu sum  
doleo.

Nobilis idem (*N. 24. Obs.*) ac dives sum; forma visque  
corpus excello.

Si quis is facio, in quis spes habeo?

Servatus consul decus Cælius ad servus natio Ligur delego.

Hic duo Etruria populus, quia proximus regio sum, bellum  
quoque se proximus sum credo.

Exsto quidam, Mezetulus nomen, non alienus sanguis rex.

In noster collegium, ut quisque ætas antecedo, ita sententia  
(*gen.*) principatus teneo.

Tum vero ad sella consul prope convolo (*N. 99. 1*) minimus  
quisque natu Patres.

*Hic vide Notam 197.*

45. *Ablativus Pretii sequitur Verba et Adjectiva.*

Ille vas magnus pretium nuper mercoor.

Tu senatus auctoritas, salus civitas, totus respublica, pro-  
vincia præmium vendo.

In annona (*sing.*) caritas (*abl.*) as modius populus do.

Triticum modius sum denarius quinque. Ille æstimo dena-  
rius tres. (*N. 17. Obs. 2. a.*)

Odium in se (*acc.*) alius suus in is metior odium.

Bona hicce, qui sum sexagies (*N. 20*), duo mille nummus  
(*N. 1*) se dico emo adolescens ille.



He took as many as seventeen hundred and forty prisoners, who were ransomed at three hundred and ten asses each. He held for several years the customs and all the other taxes of the *Ædui*, which he had farmed (*bought*) at a low price, because, when he bid, no one had dared to bid in opposition.

There was fear of a more serious war in Samnium ; for the youth of the neighbouring states were said to have been hired at a price.

He let out all the land, which had been confiscated to the state, for a rent of corn.

He lent money at two per cent. (*per month*).

He bartered his good faith and his religion for money, to the ruin of an innocent man.

But I cannot set a pecuniary value on these things, which may well be averted even at the cost of life.

Neither could their relations neglect, neither could the state esteem of little moment the safety of so many men.

You must show that in any part of Sicily the bushel of wheat was at three denarii.

Polybius writes that that affair cost the Achæans a hundred talents.

They were gaining over to Antiochus by the hope of largesses the multitude, who are always to be had at a price.

This is judged of not by any scientific knowledge, but is decided by a certain almost natural perception.

46. *These Ablatives, vili, parvo, minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo, dimidio, and some others, are used by Ellipse, the word pretio being understood.*

*Obs. These Ablatives signify Value as well as Price.*

He had bought the tithes for a great price.

Those statues were procured (*attended to*) by you carefully and at a low price.

What? do you value those things very highly?

They complained that they, erring through covetousness, had farmed the taxes at too high a rate.

Capio ad mille septingenti quadraginta, qui redimo singuli æs trecenti decem. (*N.* 19. 3.)

Complures annus (*acc.*) portorium reliquusque omnis Ædvi vectigal parvus pretium redemptus habeo, propterea quod, ille licens, contra liceor audeo nemo.

Metus sum gravis in Samnium bellum; conduco enim pretium a finitimus juvenus dico (*imperf.*).

Ager, qui publico, loco omnis frumentum.

Pecunia bini centesimæ (*N.* 53. *Obs.*) feneror.

Ille, ad pernicies innocens, fides suus et religio pecunia commuto. (*N.* 209.)

Hic vero, qui vel vita recte redimo possum, æstimo pecunia non queo.

Tot homo salus neque propinquus negligo, neque civitas levis momentum æstimo possum (*sing.*).

Doceo oportet aliquis in locus Sicilia terni (*N.* 17. *Obs.* 2. *b*) denarius triticum modius sum.

Polybius scribo centum talentum is res Achæi sto.

Traho ad Antiochus spes largitio venalis pretium multitudo.

Hic non ars aliquis perpendo, sed quidam quasi naturalis sensus judico.

46. *Per Ellipsin usurpantur, omissâ voce pretio, hi Ablativi, vili, parvo, minimo, nimio, magno, plurimo, duplo, dimidio, cum quibusdam aliis.*

*Obs. Tam Æstimationem quam Pretium significant hi Ablativi.*

Ille decumæ (*N.* 53. *Obs.*) magnus emo.

Signum is abs (*N.* 218. 3) tu diligenter parvusque curo.

Quid? tu iste permagnus æstimo?

Queror se, cupiditas prolapsus, vectigal nimium magnus conduco.

The greatest trouble was taken by me to sell the tithes for as much as possible. Why then, Metellus, did you sell them at no very high price?

That delay cost him dear; for within a few days he lost his son.

I ask these questions: first, why was the property of a most excellent citizen sold; then, why was it sold for so little.

His relations cannot get a penny from Cæcilius at less than one per cent. (*per month*).

47. *The Ablative of Measure follows Verbs and Adjectives.*

Obs. Concerning the Ablative of Dimension, see Note 274.

47 A. *The Ablative of Difference is joined to Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs of Comparative and Superlative meaning.* See also Note 212.

The life of Proclus was shorter by a (*one*) year.

They sometimes make the month longer by one or two days.

He was then thirty-four years old (*had thirty-four years*), and excelled me in age by just as many years.

His two youthful sons were on each side (*were guarding the sides*) of the king, Perseus now in his thirtieth year, Demetrius five years younger.

That single district, belonging to what excellent, honest, and rich men! is less populous by a hundred and seventy farmers.

He did not quit his office a day, nor an hour sooner than was necessary.

If they had pronounced the defendant guilty by one vote less, he could not have been condemned.

Who is there of such intense avarice, that he would not many times rather that money should come to him without dishonesty than by some crime?

He perceived that the enemy's forces had been increased by half as many again.

Summus do opera a ego, ut quam plurimus decumæ vendo.  
Cur igitur, Metellus, non ita (*N.* 12) magnus vendo?

Magnus ille is cunctatio sto; filius namque intra paucos dies amitto.

Ego hic quæro: primum, quare civis bonus bona veneo; deinde, cur tantulus veneo.

A Cæcilius propinquus minor centesimæ nummus moveo non possum.

47. *Ablativus Mensuræ sequitur Verba et Adjectiva.*

Obs. *De Ablativo Dimensionis, vide Notam 274.*

47 A. *Ablativus Differentiæ jungitur Adjectivis, Adverbiis, et Verbis Comparativæ et Superlativæ significationis.*

Proclus vita annus brevis sum. (*N.* 14. 1. b.)  
Nonnunquam unus dies longus mensis facio aut biduum.  
(*N.* 14. 1. a.)  
Quattuor et triginta tum habeo annus, totidemque annus ego ætas præsto.

Latus rex duo filius juvenis cingo, Perseus jam tricesimus annus agens, Demetrius quinquennium parvus.

Unus ille ager, qui homo! quam honestus! quam locuples! centum et septuaginta arator inanis sum.

Non dies, non hora cito quam necesse sum, magistratus abeo.

Si unus minus damno, condemno reus non possum.

Quis sum avaritia tam ardens, qui non multus pars malo pecunia ad sui sine facinus quam scelus aliquis pervenio?

Pars dimidiis augeo hostis copiæ cerno.

47B. *Especially the elliptic Ablatives*: altero, hoc, eo, quo, &c. But see Note 213. Obs.

There will generally be so much less of danger as there is less of fear.

However peace was no safer to him.

They will follow more slowly, in proportion as they shall be drawn further from home.

Has Verres introduced so much more of suffering into Sicily?

Polemo and all that school place virtue far before all other things.

That army was both greater in numbers, and a good deal superior in the character of its soldiers.

How great the Etrurian power is, you know so much the better as you are nearer to the Etrurians.

I have enough and too many allies; but the more numerous we are, the more things shall we require.

What I am going to say, concerns no less the interests of Rome than those of Alba.

The dispositions of our countrymen are very much more fickle than I could wish.

He bought the house dearer by almost half as much again as he valued it at.

A covered walk then is to be added, which will cost almost half as little again as that place.

Part of a (*rhythmical*) foot is either equal to the other part, or it is greater by just as much more, or by half as much again.

You will find that he required five times as much corn of the states as was lawful for him to take.

We shall fight with so much the more boldness and courage, as the hope is greater and the spirit is greater of him who makes than of him who repels an attack.

There are also animals which are called elks. Their shape is very like that of roes (*like roes*), but they exceed them a little in size.

But in good truth for several successive years the Roman people were without a great, and by far the greatest, part of their dignity and power.

47 B. *In primis Ablativi elliptici :*

Altero, hoc, eo, quo,  
Nihilo, *et* nimio,

Dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,  
Paullo, multo, aliquanto.

Qui timor parvus sum, is parvus ferme periculum sum.

Ceterum nihilum is pax tutus sum.

Segniter sequor, quantus longe a domus traho.

Tantusne multus Verres Sicilia calamitas importo ?

Polemo et totus ille gens virtus omnis res multus antepono.

Exercitus ille et numerus (*sing.*) magnus sum, et miles genus aliquantus bonus.

Etruscus res quantus sum (*subj.*), qui propior sum (*sing.*)  
Etrusci, hic magis scio.

Auxilium satis superque habeo ; sed qui multus sum, multus res egeo. (*N.* 213. 1. a.)

Qui (*pl.*) dico, nihilum minus ad res (*sing.*) Romanus quam ad Albanus pertinet.

Nimius multum quam volo noster ingenium sum mobilis.

Emo domus prope dimidius care quam æstimo (*imperf.*).

Tectus igitur ambulatiuncula addo, qui prope dimidius parvus consto iste locus.

Pars pes aut æqualis alter pars, aut alter tantus, aut sesqui sum magnus.

Reperio (*pl.*) quinquies tantus amplius frumentum iste, quam quantus is sumo licet (*perf. subj.*), civitas impero.

Tantus audacter fortiterque pugnaturus sum, quantus magnus spes magnusque animus inferens (*gen.*) sum vis quam arcens. (*N.* 213. 1. b.)

Sum item, qui appello alces. Hic sum consimilis caprea (*dat.*) figura, sed magnitudo paullus antecedo.

At hercle aliquot annus continuus populus Romanus magnus, ac multus magnus, pars dignitas atque imperium careo.

A little later you heard Hannibal, when ordering your camp to be given up and your arms surrendered.

Some time after the storm began to toss the ship more violently.

At length, not long before sunset, M. Pomponius, the prætor, proclaims:—‘We have been defeated in a great battle!’

Afterwards, having changed his plan for certain reasons, Cæsar moved his camp a little beyond that spot.

48. *The Ablative of Material follows Verbs of constructing, consisting, and the like.* See Note 190. Obs.

They had embossed the shields of one army with gold, of the other with silver.

For the gods do not consist of veins and nerves and bones.

The tomb of Horatia was built of squared stone, on the spot where she had fallen when struck.

The road from the temple of Mars to Bovillæ was paved with flint.

They do not sow corn, but live on milk and flesh, and they are clothed with skins.

The senate ordered the consuls to sacrifice with forty full-grown victims.

It was reported to the king and senate that it had rained (*with*) stones on the Alban mount.

They had built houses for themselves on the walls: but most of these houses were made of hurdles or boards, others were woven of reeds, and all thatched with straw.

49. *These words govern an Ablative*—(1) *The Verbs* fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor; (2) *The Adjectives* dignus, indignus, contentus, fretus, præditus; (3) *The Substantives* opus, usus.

49 A. *The Verbs* fungor, &c.

Obs. *Add to these* defungor, perfungor, perfruor, abutor.

The censors compelled him to come into the senate, and to discharge other public duties.

Hannibal paullus post (*N.* 213. 2. *a*) audio, castra prôdo et arma trado jubens.<sup>1</sup>

Postea aliquantus (*N.* 213. 2. *b*) navis tempestas vehementer jacto cœpi.

Tandem, haud multus ante sol occasus, M. Pomponius prætor, Pugna, inquam, magnus vinco.

Post, mutatus consilium (*N.* 239. *B*) quidam de causa, Cæsar paullus ultra is locus castra transfero.

48. *Ablativus Materiæ sequitur Verba* construendi, consistendi, *et similia*.

Scutum alter exercitus aurum, alter argentum cælo. (*N.* 171. *Obs.* 2. *a*.)

Non enim deus vena et nervus et os contineo (*pass.* *N.* 42).

Horatia sepulcrum, qui locus corruo ictus, construo saxum quadratus.

Via a Mars silex ad Bovillæ persterno.

Frumentum (*pl.*) non sero, sed lac et caro vivo, pellisque sum vestitus.

Senatus quadraginta major hostia consul sacrifico (*N.* 196. 2) jubeo.

Nuntio rex Patresque in mons Albanus lapis pluit.

In murus semet ipse tectum ædifico: sum autem plerique ex crates aut tabula factus (*N.* 195), alia arundo (*sing.*) textus, stramentum omnis intectus.

49. *Ablativum regunt*—(1) *Verba* fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor; (2) *Adjectiva* dignus, indignus, contentus, fretus, præditus; (3) *Substantiva* opus, usus.

49 A. *Verba* fungor, &c.

*Obs. Adde his* defungor, perfungor, perfrutor, abutor.

Censor is in senatus venio fungorque alius publicus munus cogo.

---

<sup>1</sup> This and the following Sentences illustrate Note 212.



Crassus filled the office of ædile.

The foolish neither remember past, nor enjoy present blessings; they only look forward to future ones.

They were using imported salt.

The wise man's mind makes the best use of reason.

Certain animals feed on animals of another sort.

He burns the houses and villages, and gets possession of a large number of cattle and men.

How long, I ask, Catiline, will you abuse our patience?

I will discharge the duty which you discharged in the time of my grief.

Do you, if you love me, enjoy that ease of yours, and persuade yourself that these things are so.

We see that the blessings which we make use of, and the light which we enjoy, and the breath which we draw, are given and bestowed upon us by God.

I did not use that word which I ought (*to have used*).

But the army of Cæsar was in the enjoyment of most excellent health, and a most abundant supply of water.

Here see, how fair you will find me.

I was very intimate with his father, an illustrious character and a brave man.

That mountain, because it was grassy and well watered, abundantly sufficed for the support of men who lived on flesh and milk.

They thought that it was safer to gain the victory without any bloodshed.

If you think that you can gain possession of that kingdom, make the attempt.

The Athenian state is said to have been very prudent, whilst it was in possession of the sovereign power.

Then the Romans encourage their champion by a shout, and he hastens to finish the combat.

Why do you trouble me, who am now old, and have done with toil and the rewards of toil?

Let others learn to know me from your books, and let me myself too in my life-time enjoy my little share of glory.

In every class there are many things dissimilar to each other, which may yet be thought worthy of very similar praise.

*Here see Note 208.*

Crassus ædilitas fungor.

Stultus bonus præteritus non memini, præsens non fruor,  
futurus modo expecto.

Sal invectus utor.

Sapiens animus ratio bene utor.

Quidam bestia alius genus bestia vescor.

Ædificium vicusque incendo, magnus pecus (*neut.*) atque  
homo numerus (*abl.*) potior.

Quousque tandem (*N. 45*) abutor, Catilina, patientia noster?

Fungor officium qui fungor in meus luctus.

Tu, si ego diligo, fruor iste otium, tuque persuadeo hic ita  
sum.

Commodum qui utor, luxque qui fruor, spiritusque qui duco  
a Deus ego do atque impertio video.

Non utor is verbum qui (*N. 115*) decet.

At Cæsar exercitus bonus valetudo summusque aqua copia  
utor.

Hic video (*sing.*), quam ego utor (*subj.*) æquus.

Pater is, clarus homo et fortis vir, multum (*superl.*) utor  
(*pl.*). (*N. 7. C.*)

Is mons, quia herbidus aquosusque sum, homo caro ac lac  
vescens abunde sufficio alimentum (*pl.*).

Tutus sum arbitror sine ullus vulnus victoria (*abl.*) potior.

Si puto (*subj.*) possum tu ille regnum (*gen.*) potior. conor.

Prudens civitas Athenienses, dum is res potior (*N. 199. 2*),  
sum trado.

Tum clamor Romani adjuvo miles suus, et ille defungor  
prælium festino.

Quid ego, jam senex ac perfunctus labor (*pl.*) laborque  
præmium, sollicito (*pl.*)?

Et ceteri ex liber tuus ego (*pl.*) cognosco, et egometipse  
(*N. 59. Obs. 1*) vivus gloriola noster perfruor.

In omnis genus sum res complures dissimilis inter se, qui  
tamen consimilis laus dignor. (*N. 207.*)

*Hic vide Notam 208.*

49 B. *The Adjectives dignus, &c.*

For this one deed I count him deserving of every punishment.

No word was heard from them unworthy of the majesty of the Roman people and their former victories.

Caius Cassius is endued with equal greatness of courage and wisdom.

Most men, relying on their abilities, do these two things at the same time.

The consul, content with his moderate success, led back his troops to the camp.

---

The lower parts have valleys and some sunny hills, and streams near woods, and spots now more worthy of man's culture.

There, as became the brother of Hannibal, he fell fighting. We shall appear ungrateful and undeserving of all assistance, human and divine.

Catulus and also Hortensius, a man gifted with the highest ornaments of distinction, fortune, worth, and talent, dissent from this plan.

Thereupon, relying on money, in which they are very strong, they attempt to change the Gauls from enemies to allies.

Are you going to be content with only this victory, or with this booty?

I indeed have now no need of riches (*rents*), and can be content with a little.

49 C. *The Substantives opus, usus.*

All think that there is need of a stronger force for that province.

Now I have need (*there is need to me*) both of your counsels and your affection. Wherefore hasten hither.

There will be need of a superintendent besides the magistrates.

---

Is moderate wisdom wanted for these things, or both extraordinary talent and consummate learning?

49 B. *Adjectiva dignus, &c.*

Unus ob hic factum dignus ille omnis pœna puto.

Nullus vox ab is audio populus Romanus majestas et superior victoria indignus.

C. Cassius sum par magnitudo animus et consilium præditus.

Hic duo plerique, ingenium (*sing.*) fretus, simul facio.

Consul, contentus modicus successus, in castra copiæ reduco.

---

Inferus vallis et apricus quidam collis, rivusque prope silva, et jam humanus cultus dignus locus habeo.

Ibi, ut Hannibal frater dignus sum, pugnans cado.

Ingratus atque omnis opis (*N. 6. D*) divinus humanusque indignus videor.

Catulus itemque summus ornamentum honor, fortuna, virtus, ingenium præditus Hortensius ab hic ratio dissentio.

Pecunia deinde, qui multum possum, fretus, socius ex hostis facio Galli conor.

Hiccine victoria solus, aut hic præda contentus sum (*pl.*)?

Equidem jam nihil egeo vectigal, et parvus contentus sum possum.

49 C. *Substantiva opus, usus.*

Censeo omnis præsidium firmus (*N. 8. 2. b*) opus est ad iste provincia.

Nunc ego et consilium opus est tuus et amor. Quare advolo.

Extra magistratus curator usus est.

---

Ad hic mediocris opus est prudentia, an et ingenium præstans (*N. 8. 2. b*) et eruditio perfectus?

We only need a mind not averse to peaceful counsels.

You are waiting for the tribunes, who themselves need your help.

He brought back the ships which the consul did not need. What need have I either of life or of civic rights, which I shall seem to enjoy through the kindness of Cæsar?

There was then no need of so many words: there is no more need now.

She said that there was need to act thus and to make haste.

Very many examples of this are necessary for us.

50. *Most Adjectives and Verbs of abounding or wanting, enriching or depriving, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive.*

50A. *Some govern either Case.*

We know that the nation of Italy is very rich in arms, in men, and in money.

Thither he led back his victorious army, rich in booty.

Verres has his house full, and his villas crowded with the ornaments of temples and towns.

Gaul is crowded with merchants, and full of Roman citizens.

The soldiers wanted those things which were of use for the storming of a camp.

These things do not need art so much as labour.

---

Under his rule Gaul was so fruitful in corn and men, that the excessive multitude seemed scarcely capable of government.

The island of Delos, though crowded with wealth, small, and unwall'd, was then in fear of nothing.

A letter was delivered me from you, full of new and very wonderful events.

He seemed very eloquent, being neither slow in ideas, nor poor in diction, with a musical voice, and tolerably witty.

Animus tantum ego opus est non abhorrens a quietus consilium.

Exspecto tribunus, qui ipse vester auxilium opus est.

Navis reduco, qui consul usus non est.

Quis (*N. 119. Obs.*) ego aut vita aut civitas opus est, qui (*N. 86. 3*) beneficium Cæsar habeo videor?

Nihil (*N. 119. Obs.*) tum opus est tam multus verbum, nihilo magis nunc opus est.

Ita factus maturatusque (*N. 206. 1. b*) opus est dico.

Hic ego exemplum permultus opus (*N. 206. 2*) sum.

50. *Ex Adjectivis et Verbis abundandi, vel egendi, ditandi vel privandi, pleraque Ablativum capiunt; multa etiam Genitivum.*

50 A. *Quædam utrumque Casum regunt.*

Scio gens Italia opulentus arma (*abl.*), vir, pecunia sum.

Eo victor (*N. 105. Obs.*), opulentus præda (*gen.*), exercitus reduco.

Verres ornamentum (*abl.*) fanum atque oppidum habeo plenus domus, villa refertus.

Refertus Gallia negotiator sum, plenus civis Romanus. (*N. 200. 1.*)

Miles is res (*abl.*) indigeo, qui ad oppugnationem castra sum usus (*dat.*).

Hic non tam ars (*gen.*) indigeo quam labor.

---

Imperium is Gallia adeo fruges (*gen.*) homoque fertilis sum, ut abundans multitudo vix rego videor possum.

Insula Delos, refertus (*N. 200. 3*) divitiæ, parvus, sine murus, nihil tum timeo.

Litteræ ego reddo a tu, plenus res (*gen. N. 200. 2*) novus maximeque mirabilis. (*N. 9. 3.*)

Pereloquens videor, non tardus sententia, non inops verbum (*abl. N. 201. 1*), vox canorus, facetus satis.

And so Philip entered upon the war when very much in want of money, Perseus on the contrary when very rich.

Nor did I discover, being myself in need of every thing, what I could promise you.

He filled the multitude with an idle expectation that a mighty war was being prepared by sea and land.

And this mistake, useful to the Romans, occurring filled the Samnites with flight and fear.

Neither did your virtue need to be strengthened by me.

And this appears to have been instituted of old for this reason, that no plebeian might be in want of help against a more powerful enemy.

50B. *The greater number either prefer or require an Ablative.* See Note 201.

Obs. *Hither refer Verbs (a) of giving, enriching, releasing, spoiling, defrauding, and the like: (b) also of affecting, clothing, furnishing, surrounding, adorning, and the like: (c) also of being powerful, of assisting, of punishing, and the like:—most of which have an Ablative.* But see Note 190. Obs.

Where is your army? where is that province most fruitful in triumphs?

Democritus calls a mind free from terror the highest good.

He takes and burns the enemy's camp, which was empty of all defenders.

The whole country-house is rich; it abounds in pork, kid, lamb, poultry, milk, cheese, and honey.

How long therefore shall he, who has surpassed all enemies in wickedness, be without the name of an enemy?

This law has enriched those men with wealth, and has freed them from danger.

He departed; I awoke (*was released from sleep*).

The consul's letter has relieved the senate from part of their anxiety.

You have robbed and plundered Apollonius of all his exquisitely wrought silver.

He strengthens the decemvirs with large resources; then he provides them with attendants, with secretaries, with librarians, with criers, with architects.

Itaque admodum inops pecunia (*gen.*) Philippus, Perseus  
contra prædives bellum suscipio.

Nec quis tu polliceor, ipse egeus res (*abl.*) omnis reperio.

Impleo expectatio (*abl.*) vanus multitudo terra mareque  
ingens paro bellum.

Errorque hic, utilis Romani, oblatus fuga (*gen.*) formidoque  
Samnites impleo. (*N.* 202.)

Neque confirmatio (*abl.* *N.* 203) noster egeo virtus tuus.

Isque is res causa antiquitus instituo videor, ne quis ex  
plebes contra potens auxilium (*gen.*) egeo.

50B. *Plurima Ablativum vel malunt vel requirunt.*

Obs. *Huc refer Verba* (a) donandi, ditandi, solvendi, spoliandi, frau-  
dandi, *similia*: (b) item afficiendi, vestiendi, instruendi, cingendi,  
decorandi, *similia*: (c) item pollendi, adjuvandi, puniendi, *similia*:  
*quæ pleræque Ablativum habent.*

Ubi exercitus tuus? ubi ille uber triumphus provincia?

Democritus summus bonum animus terror liber appello.  
Castra hostis vacuus defensor capio atque incendio.

Villa totus locuples sum; abundo porcus, hædus, agnus,  
gallina, lac, caseus, mel.

Quousque igitur is, qui omnis hostis scelus supero, nomen  
hostis careo?

Hic lex is homo divitiæ augeo, periculum libero.

Ille discedo; ego somnus solvo.

Pars cura exonero senatus consul litteræ.

Apollonius omnis argentum optime factus spolio (*sing.*) ac  
depeculor.

Decemvir magnus confirmo opes (*N.* 6. *D.*); deinde orno  
apparitor, scribe, librarius, præco, architectus.



They surround themselves with a fortification and a rampart.

The swords of our armies were made wet with blood.

They are stronger in wealth, in arms, and in power.

He thinks that they ought to be punished with death.

---

There has never been any republic either greater, or holier, or richer in good examples.

His successor Lyco was rich in language, but in his facts themselves somewhat meagre.

The city was delivered up to him, destitute of the means of defence, crowded with wealth.

When we are free from necessary business and cares, then we desire to see, to hear, or to learn something new.

He at that time, an exile from his kingdom, driven into a small island, was safe through the sanctity of the shrine.

Fill the plains with the same slaughter with which you have filled the mountains.

Except error and blame, from which you ever have been and ever will be free, nothing can happen to man, which should be an object of dread or excessive fear.

Assuredly nothing can be better for man than to be free from all pain and trouble, and to enjoy the greatest pleasures both of mind and body.

The consul presents Decius with a crown of gold. The soldiers, who had been at that post with him, were presented with one ox and two tunics each.

They were desirous that their own land should be relieved as soon as possible from the pressure of so great a crowd of men.

Do you follow that philosophy which confounds truth with falsehood, robs us of our judgment, deprives us of our power of approbation, strips us of all our senses?

The populace was unwilling that the last day of so great a man should be cheated of its due honour.

They inflicted disgrace on him when dead, poverty when alive.

He confers much greater distinctions on them than have been conferred on all us.

Opus se vallumque circumdo.

Imbuo sanguis gladius exercitus noster.

Multum opes, arma, potentia valeo.

Censeo is mors sum mulctandus.

---

Nullus respublica nec magnus, nec sanctus, nec bonus exemplum dives (*N.* 201. 2) sum.

Hic posterus Lyco oratio locuples, res ipse jejunos (*comp.*) sum.

Hic trado urbs, nudus praesidium, refertus (*N.* 200. 3) copiae.

Quum sum necessarius negotium (*pl.*) curaque vacuus, tum aveo aliquis video, audio, addisco.

Is tum, extorris regnum, in parvus insula compulsus, fanum religio tutus sum.

Compleo (*pl.*) idem strages campus, qui mons repleo. (*N.* 202. 2.)

Præter peccatum ac culpa, qui semper careo et careo, homo accido nihil possum, qui sum horribilis aut pertimescendus.

Certe nihil homo possum bonus sum quam vaco omnis dolor, et molestia, perfruorque magnus et animus et corpus voluptas.

Consul Decius aureus corona dono. Miles, qui in praesidium simul sum, singuli bos binique tunica dono.

Levo quam primum regio suus tantus homo urgens turba (*N.* 235) cupio.

Tunc is philosophia sequor, qui confundo verus (*pl.*) cum falsus, spolio ego iudicium, privo approbatio, omnis orbo sensus?

Plebs fraude sollennis honor supremus dies tantus vir nolo.

Is ignominia mortuus, egestas vivus afficio.<sup>1</sup>

Is multo magnus ornamentum afficio quam omnis ego afficio.

---

<sup>1</sup> This and the next two Sentences illustrate Note 204.

I understood that you had been struck with a very great desire of seeing me.

Your colleague was sitting on the Rostra, clothed with a purple robe, on a golden chair, and crowned.

He gives orders to fortify the camp with a rampart (*of*) twelve feet in height, and a ditch (*of*) eighteen feet in breadth.

That island is a small one, surrounded by the sea which you mortals call the Atlantic sea, the great sea, or the Ocean.

We have been assisted by the same king both with cavalry and with troops of infantry.

They did not trust their own valour; for having been so often routed and put to flight, having been deprived of their camp and amerced in their land, they know both themselves and you.

The people condemn the defendants to pay ten thousand asses each.

When men accustomed to constant and daily toil are hindered by the weather from their work, they turn to a game at ball, or to dice.

51. *The Ablative of Time answers the questions, When? Within what time? How long before or after?*

Your servant came to me in the second watch.

He delivered your letter to me on the twenty-second day.

Around Henna are the most beautiful flowers at every season of the year.

Unceasing labour, slackened neither by day nor night, overcame them.

He orders the legion to set out in the middle of the night.

Canius came to supper in good time (*at the time*).

But we seem likely to know all (*all things*) within two or three days.

I finished that war in fifteen days.

Thus the labour of many months perished in a moment of time, through the treachery of the enemy and the violence of the tempest.

This state a few months before had of its own accord sent ambassadors to Cæsar.

Intelligo tu summus cupiditas afficio videndus ego.

Sedeo in Rostra collega tuus, amictus toga purpureus, in sella aureus, coronatus.

Castra in altitudo (*acc.*) pes duodecim vallum fossaque duodeviginti pes munio jubeo.

Parvus sum is insula, circumfusus ille mare qui Atlanticus, qui magnus, qui Oceanus appello in terra.

Ab idem rex adjuvo et equitatus et pedestris copiae.

Non ille suus virtus confido (*N.* 143. 1. *a*); quippe toties fusus fugatusque, castra exutus, ager mulctatus, et se et vos novi.

Plebs deni mille æs gravis (*N.* 164. 1) reus condemno. (*N.* 186. *Obs.* 1.)

Homo labor assiduus et quotidianus assuetus (*N.* 205. 1), quum tempestas causa opus prohibeo, ad pila se aut ad talus confero.

51. *Ablativus Temporis respondet si rogatur*, Quando? Intra quantum tempus? Quanto tempore ante *vel* post?

Puer tuus ad ego secundus vigilia venio.

Litteræ ego tuus alter (*N.* 16) vicesimus dies reddo.

Circa Henna sum lætus flos omnis tempus annus.

Labor continuus, non dies non nox remissus, subigo is.

Jubeo medius (*N.* 49) nox legio proficiscor.

Ad cœna tempus (*N.* 249. 1. *a*) venio Canius.

Sed videor omnis biduum triduumve (*N.* 300) sciturus. (*N.* 284. *A.*)

Is bellum ego perficio quindecim dies.

Ita multus mensis labor hostis perfidia et vis tempestas punctum tempus intereo.

Hic gens paucus ante mensis ultro ad Cæsar legatus mitto.

But a year later Paullus obeyed the auspices.

He meets Clodius about the eleventh hour, or not far off.

Some sorts are always green; others, bare in the winter, come into leaf in the spring time.

If the war is not finished in the summer, they ought to wait for the winter, and not, like summer birds, as soon as ever autumn begins, to look around for shelter and a retreat.

On the next day at dawn both fleets moved from the harbour, as if intending to fight that day.

It is a great undertaking to go by sea, and that in the month of July.

On the Nones of May I received two letters from you, one written six days (*on the sixth day*), the other four days before.

He ordered the defendant to be present on the Ides of March, on which day the new magistrates were about to enter upon their office.

At the end of the year a dispute between the patricians and the people put off the comitia for the election of consuls. Eumenes also set out for Rome at the same time as the ambassadors of the king.

The whole of Sicily is assessed every fifth year.

The consuls will consult the senate on these matters at the earliest possible opportunity.

Then, on the arrival of the dictator, the new army is joined to the old one, and the forces are doubled.

At the end of a war the soldiers have ever sought the rewards of their toil.

I shall recount the deeds of the Roman people in war and in peace.

When at Athens, at the time of the games, a certain old man had come into the theatre, all the Lacedæmonians rose up.

The channel of the Euripus does not ebb and flow seven times a day at regular hours, as common report says.

Masinissa has within the last two years got possession by

At annus post Paullus pareo auspiciū.

Fio obviam Clodius hora fere undecimus, aut non multo secus.

Alius genus semper vireo; alius, hiems nudatus, vernus tempus frondesco.

Si non sum (*subj. N. 37. 2*) æstas perfectus bellum, hiems opperior debeo, nec, sicut æstivus avis, statim auctumnus tectum (*pl.*) ac recessus circumspectio.

Uterque classis (*N. 173*) posterus dies lux primus, tanquam is dies pugnaturus (*N. 234. A*), e portus moveo.

Negotium magnus sum navigo, atque is mensis Quintilis. (*N. 247. 1.*)

Nonæ Maius (*N. 247. 2*) accipio bini a tu litteræ, alter sextus dies datus, alter quartus.

Idus Martius adsum reus jubeo, qui dies (*N. 78. 2*) novus magistratus in eo honor.

Extremus (*N. 49*) annus comitia consularis certamen Patres ac plebs dirimo.

Eumenes quoque idem tempus proficiscor Roma, qui legatus rex.

Quintus quisque (*N. 174*) annus Sicilia totus censeo.

Consul primus quisque tempus de hic res ad senatus refero.

Dictator deinde adventus novus vetus exercitus jungo, et copiæ duplico.<sup>1</sup>

Suus labor miles semper eventus bellum præmium peto.

Populus Romanus res bellum paxque (*N. 249. 1. a*) gestus perago.

Quum Athenæ, ludus, quidam in theatrum grandis natu venio, consurgo omnis Lacedæmonii.

Fretum Euripus non septies (*N. 249. 2. b*) dies, sicut fama fero, tempus status reciproco.

Amplius septuaginta oppidum castellumque ager Cartha-

<sup>1</sup> With regard to this and the next three Sentences see Note 246.

force of arms of more than seventy towns and castles in (of) the Carthaginian territory.

Within the last (*these*) two days every thing had become more cheering.

The affair is reported to Chrysogonus within four days from the date of these events (*in the course of the same four days in which they happened*).

He for many years had had no equal in dishonesty and avarice.

I was grieving, I was grieving, conscript Fathers, that the republic was about shortly to perish.

She herself died within a short time; but the virgin married him to whom Cæcilia had been married.

These within our memory have carried on fierce and long wars with the Roman people.

Pompey met my brother a few days after he had departed from thence.

They went, and a few days afterwards brought ten other ambassadors with them.

Hirtius fell in the midst of victory, when he had conquered in a great battle a few days before.

Who knows not that that law is a new one, passed twenty years ago?

There was not less terror and confusion at Rome, than there had been three years before.

They attacked the city four days after the fleet arrived.

The younger of his two sons, aged about twelve, died five days before the triumph; the elder, a boy of fourteen years of age, three days after the triumph.

What is your charge? That Roscius settled with Flavius in behalf of the company. When? Four years ago.

Flavius says that I promised this more than twenty-five years ago.

52. *The use of Prepositions in defining Time is frequent.*

These two things both make against us at this time.

giniensis biennium proximus Masiniassa vis atque arma possideo.

Omnis fio (N. 37. 1) hic biduum lætus.

Quatriduum, qui hic gero, res ad Chrysogonus defero.

Is multus annus par fraus avaritiaque nemo habeo. (N. 258.)

Doleo, doleo, Patres conscriptus, respublica brevis tempus pereor.

Ipse brevis morior; virgo autem nubo, qui Cæcilia nubo. (N. 144. A.)

Hic noster memoria (N. 246) bellum cum populus Romanus acerbus ac diuturnus gero.

Pompeius meus frater paucus post dies, quam inde discedo, convenio. (N. 254. 1. a.)

Eo, et post paucus dies alius decem legatus sui cum adduco. (N. 254. 1. c.)

Hirtius in ipse victoria occido, quum paucus dies magnus prælum ante vinco. (N. 254. 1. b.)

Quis nescio novus iste lex sum, viginti annus ante latus?

Roma non parvus terror ac tumultus sum, quam sum triennium ante. (N. 254. 2.)

Quatriduum post, quam appello classis, urbs aggredior. (N. 252. 1.)

Duo e filius parvus (N. 170), ferme duodecim annus natus, quinque dies ante triumphus, magnus, quattuordecim annus triduum post triumphus decedo.

Criminatio tuus quis sum? Roscius cum Flavius pro societas decido. Quis tempus? Abhinc annus quattuor. (N. 255. B.)

Hic ego abhinc amplius annus quinque et viginti (N. 19. 2) spondeo dico Flavius.

52. *In definiendo Tempore multus est Præpositionum usus.*

Hic duo res contra ego ambo facio in hic tempus. (N. 249. 1. b.)



I call into question what you have done from that day to this day.

We prolonged the conversation till late at night.

We live for the day ; and so we alone are free.

He leads back the army in silence before the end of the third watch.

---

As before in time of war he sought peace, so now in time of peace he seeks war.

I can write three letters in an hour.

From thence he can scarcely hear a message three times in the year.

About a hundred talents have been paid to Brutus this year : two hundred have been promised to Pompey within six months.

They have not entered a house for the last fourteen years.

During the course of so many years he did not even address Quintius to demand payment.

I dictated this to Tiro during supper.

Contrary winds detained Livius at Delos for several days.

They fought from the seventh hour till late at night.

He returned home that very day at evening.

The seventh day was drawing near, by which day Cæsar had appointed to return to the baggage and the legion.

They recorded in a decree of the senate that a truce had been made for a hundred years.

Having obtained this victory, they were confident that they should be victorious for ever.

They live only for the hour, and do not think even of their own interests.

As the siege was daily becoming more urgent and severe, so were more frequent letters and messengers being sent to Cæsar.

He concealed the death of the king, till the arrival of Perseus, from all who were without the palace.

He invited him to supper for the following day.

When immediately after his prætorship he had come to Athens, he called the philosophers together.

Ex is dies (*N. 6. K. 2*) ad hic dies qui (*pl.*) facio, in iudicium voco.

Sermo in multus nox produco.

Ego in dies (*acc.*) vivo; itaque solus sum liber.

De tertius vigilia silentium exercitus reduco.

---

Ut prius in bellum pax, sic in pax bellum quaero. (*N. 249. 1. b.*)

Terni in hora litteræ do possum.

Inde vix ter in annus audio nuntius possum. (*N. 249. 2. a.*)

Brutus curo hic annus talentum circiter centum: Pompeius in sex mensis promitto ducenti.<sup>1</sup>

Intra annus quattuordecim (*N. 19. 1*) tectum non subeo.

Inter tot annus ne appello quidem Quintius.

Hic (*pl.*) inter cæna Tiro dicto.

Livius Delos per (*N. 250*) aliquot dies adversus ventus teneo.

Ab hora septimus ad multus nox pugno (*impers.*).

Is ipse dies (*fem.*) domus ad vespera redeo.

Dies appeto septimus, qui (*N. 78. 1*) ad dies Cæsar ad impedimenta legioque revertor constituo.

Indutiæ in centum annus fio in senatusconsultum (*acc.*) refero.

Hic adeptus (*N. 234. C. 1*) victoria, in perpetuus se sum victor confido.

In hora vivo, et ne de utilitas quidem suus cogito.

Quantus sum in dies (*pl.*) gravis atque asper oppugnatio, tantus creber litteræ nuntiusque ad Cæsar mitto. (*N. 213. 1. a.*)

Mors rex in adventus Perseus omnis, qui extra regia sum, celo.

Ad cæna is invito in posterus dies.

Quum ex prætura Athenæ venio, philosophus in unus locus convoco.

---

<sup>1</sup> This and the next three Sentences illustrate Note 249. 3.

The Ædui delayed day after day ; they said that the corn was being collected and brought in.

They were looking day after day, to see if any help from the dictator would appear.

They began to feast before the close of day, and the banquet was not in accordance with military discipline.

By making haste they will arrive where they may wish, even quicker than if they had risen long before the end of the night.

At the approach of evening Cæsar withdraws the legions within this trench.

Immediately after that letter yours was read, and indeed not without great applause.

Some have written that it is night there for thirty successive days in the winter.

The ambassadors returned and the fall of Saguntum was announced nearly at the same time.

There was the same negligence there, which had betrayed Chalcis a few days before.

Some months after his property is said to have been sold.

I think that those things were done not less than ten years later.

He said that Milo would die in three days time. The deed was done three days after he had said so.

Immediately after the fifteenth (*the Ides*) of May I shall start for Cilicia, that June may be spent there.

I got your letter on the second of June.

He came to Rome on the twentieth of September.

I spoke thus in the senate on the twenty-first of October.

He neglected to keep the day of the proclamation ; he postponed it to the twenty-eighth of November.

A supplication was given out, to last for five days, counting from the eleventh of October inclusively.

The games will last from the fourth to the sixth of May.

Dies ex dies duco (*infin.*) Ædui; confero, comporto frumentum dico.

Dies de dies prospecto, si qui auxilium a dictator appareo (*subj.*).

Cœpi epulor de dies, et convivium non ex militaris disciplina sum.

Propero etiam cito, quam ai de multus nox vigilo (*subj.*), pervenio, quo volo.

Sub vesper Cæsar intra hic fossa legio reduco. (*N.* 251. 1.)

Sub is litteræ statim recito tuus, non sine magnus quidem clamor (*pl.*).

Nonnullus scribo dies continuus triginta sub bruma ibi sum nox. (*N.* 251. 2.)

Sub idem fare tempus et legatus redeo et Saguntum excidium nuntio. (*N.* 251. 3.)

Idem ibi negligentia sum, qui Chalcis (*N.* 5. *H.* 1. *δ*) dies ante paucus prodo.<sup>1</sup>

Aliquot post mensis bona is veneo dico.

Credo decem haud minus (*N.* 216. 1. *δ*) post annus is ago.

Dico Milo pereo triduum. Post dies tertius gero res, quam dico.

Ex Idus Maius in Cilicia proficiscor, ut ibi Junius consumo. (*N.* 247. 1 et 2.)

Ante dies quartus Nonæ Junius accipio tuus litteræ. (*N.* 248.)

Ad urbs accedo ante dies duodecimus Calendæ October.

Hic ego ante dies duodecimus Calendæ November dico in senatus.

Dies edictum oboeo negligo; in ante dies quartus Calendæ December differo. (*N.* 248. *Obs.* 1.)

Supplicatio indico, ex ante dies quintus Idus October cum is dies in quinque dies.

Ludus futurus sum a quartus ad pridie (*N.* 248. *Obs.* 2) Nonæ Maius.

---

<sup>1</sup> This and the next three Sentences illustrate Note 252. 2.

53. *The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition when the question is, By what road?*

They confessed that Clodius has been killed by Milo's slaves on the Appian road.

We were now finishing our journey along a hot and dusty road.

And so on the eleventh of November, when I was coming down along the Sacred Road, he pursued me with his followers.

54. *The Ablative is used without a Preposition<sup>1</sup> when the question is Where? if it is the name of a town, or if it stands with an epithet: otherwise the Preposition in is used.*

54A. *Singular names of Towns of the First and Second Declension define the place of station by cases in æ and i. (See Primer, 137, Note G. 2.)*

Obs. *The Prepositions ad and apud signify vicinity; hence the year placed before the names of Towns, Lakes, Rivers, and Places. See Note 264.*

Let the very beautiful statue taken at Carthage be replaced. At Puteoli the wall and gate have been struck by lightning in several places.

And at Capua a wolf, having entered the gate by night, had wounded the sentinel.

Sulpicius stopped sick at Pergamus: Villius had frequent interviews with Hannibal at Ephesus.

Scipio spent the last part of his life at Liternum, without any regret for the city.

I pitched my camp near Cybistra, which town is near Mount Taurus.

Four years afterwards I fought at (*near*) Thermopylæ.

For neither are the Roman arms less powerful by sea than by land.

So by the good fortune of three generals the republic was in one day saved in several places.

He commanded the (*that*) very spot, on which he had halted, to be fortified with a camp.

---

<sup>1</sup> Hither refer those Ablatives, *judicio, opinione*, and the like, after the verb *sto*.

53. *Ablativus Loci ponitur sine Præpositione cum rogatur, Qua via?*

Occido a servus Milo in Appius via Clodius confiteor.

Nunc iter conficio æstuosus et pulverulentus via. (N. 261.)

Itaque ante dies tertius Idus November quum Sacer Via descendo insequor ego cum suis. (N. 261.)

54. *Ablativus caret Præpositione<sup>1</sup> cum rogatur Ubi? si oppidi nomen est vel si stat cum epitheto: aliter usurpatur Præpositio in.*

54A. *Oppidorum nomina singularia ex Declinatione Prima et Secunda, locum stationis definiunt per casus in æ, i.*

Obs. *Præpositiones ad et apud vicinilatē significant; hinc præponuntur Oppidorum, Lacuum, Fluminum, et Locorum nominibus.*

Signum pulcher Carthago captus repono.

Puteoli plus locus murus et porta fulmen ico.

Et Capua lupus, nox porta ingressus, vigil lanio.

Sulpicius æger Pergamus subsisto: Villius cum Hannibal Ephesus sæpe congredior.

Scipio ultimus vita pars Liternum ago sine desiderium urbs. (N. 108. 2.)

Castra ad Cybistra (*neut. pl.*), qui oppidum sum ad mons Taurus, loco.

Quadriennium post depugno apud Thermopylæ.

Næque enim mare minus quam terra polleo Romanus arma. (N. 259. 1.)

Ita tres imperator felicitas unus dies locus multus (*comp.*) respublica conservo.

Is ipse, in qui consisto, locus castra communio jubeo.

---

<sup>1</sup> Huc refer ablativos illos, *judicio, opinione*, similes, post verbum *sto*.

On the fifth day you shall banquet as victor in the Capitol. And these studies were then cultivated with greater zeal in Latium, than they are now in the same towns.  
He performs his promises, he stands by his agreements.

---

Do not measure by your laws and institutions what is done at Lacedæmon.

The day arrived, on which he had ordered ten principal men of each of the states to be present at Amphipolis.

Mezentius was ruling at Cære, at that time an opulent town.

News was brought that it had rained chalk at Cales, and blood at Rome in the ox-market.

It is more certain to you that I am at Rome, than it is to me that you are at Athens.

Then, stopping five days at Apamea and three at Synnada, five at Philomelum and ten at Iconium, we did the same.

Dionysius, when expelled from Syracuse, taught boys at Corinth.

It was certainly in Cato's power to enjoy the delights of leisure at Tusculum, a healthy and neighbouring place.

Lo messengers! lo a letter! saying that Cæsar is near Corfinium, and Domitius at Corfinium with a strong army and one eager to fight.

The camp on the Allia having been lost, they shut themselves up in the town of Præneste.

Does not the battle at lake Regillus occur to your mind?

I cannot forget our defeats. The consuls with their legions were sent beneath the yoke at the Caudine Forks: the Roman cavalry was routed near the river Ticinus: a great defeat was received at the Trasimene lake, and afterwards at (*near*) Cannæ.

Sabinus kept within the camp, although Viridovix was daily offering battle.

He, who adopted you, could either have stood by reason of his age in the position of a son to you, or in that position in which he did stand.

Dies quintus victor in Capitolium epulor.  
 Studiumque hic in Latium (*N.* 260. 1) vehementer tum  
 colo (*imperf.*), quam nunc idem in oppidum.  
 Facio promissum, sto conventum.

Nolo (*N.* 305. *Obs.*) ad vester lex atque institutum exigo  
 is qui Lacedæmon fio.

Dies venio, qui adsum Amphipolis (*N.* 5. *G*) deni princeps  
 civitas jubeo.

Mezentius Cære (*N.* 5. *I*), opulentus tum oppidum, im-  
 perito.

Cales (*pl.*) creta, et Roma in forum boarius sanguis pluit  
 (*N.* 196. 2) nuntio.

Certus tu sum ego sum Roma, quam ego tu Athenæ.

Hic idem dein Apamea quinque dies moratus, et Synnada  
 (*neut. pl.*) triduum, Philomelum quinque dies, Iconium  
 decem, facio.

Dionysius, Syracusæ expulsus, Corinthus puer doceo.

Cato certe licet Tusculum se in otium delecto, salubris et  
 propinquus locus. (*N.* 100.)

Ecce nuntius! ecce litteræ; Cæsar ad Corfinium, Domitius  
 Corfinium cum firmus exercitus et pugno cupiens.

Amissus ad Allia castra, oppidum se Præneste includo.  
 (*N.* 224. *Obs.*)

Non venio tu in mens pugna apud Regillus lacus?

Clades noster obliviscor non possum. Consul cum legio ad  
 Furculæ Caudinæ sub jugum mitto: fundo ad Ticinus  
 amnis Romanus equitatus: magnus ad Trasimenus, et  
 postea ad Cannæ accipio clades. (*N.* 264. 2.)

Sabinus castra sui teneo (*imperf.*), quum Viridovix quotidie  
 pugno potestas facio.<sup>1</sup>

Is, qui tu adopto, vel filius tu locus per ætas sum possum,  
 vel is qui sum.

<sup>1</sup> Compare this and the next six Sentences, as well as some of  
 those above the line, with Note 259.



In the midst of the forum, in broad day, in your sight; I, second to none of the Campanians, am hurried away bound to death.

For some time he lived on the other side of the Tiber, as if in banishment, in a cottage, on a small farm.

An eagle, gently gliding down on poised wings, takes away his cap, as he is sitting in a carriage with his wife.

Bees settled on the lips of Plato, as he was sleeping when a child in his cradle.

The leading ideas of that discussion I have set forth in this book at my own pleasure.

In the Cato Major I have introduced Cato, himself aged, discussing the subject of old age.

At that time the island of Delos, situated so far from us in the Ægean sea, full of wealth, though small and unfortified, feared nothing: now we are deprived of the shores of Italy, and our own ports.

He did not persuade him to sell the island in the Prelian lake.

There is some hope, in my opinion indeed not much, but strong in these parts, that Afranius has fought with Trebonius in the Pyrenees, and that Trebonius was defeated.

While these things are going on in Africa and in Spain, Hannibal spent the summer in the district of Tarentum.

He was afterwards in Crete the comrade of Saturninus, his relation.

It is unnecessary to mention the sights which are to be seen among each people throughout all Asia and Greece.

These letters were written on all the walls throughout the whole of Tarracina.

And so on the eleventh of November, when I was coming down along the Sacred Road, he pursued me with his followers.

Since the upper sea is shut up, we will sail by the lower. Each censor did not think that he ought to abide by the opinion of the other censor.

55. *Like these are humi, domi, belli, militiæ, ruri.*

We, lying on the ground, cannot look up to that.

Forum medius, lux clarus, videns vos, nullus Campani  
secundus, vinctus ad mors rapio.

Aliquamdiu trans Tiberis, veluti relegatus, agellus quidam  
in tugurium vivo.

Is, carpentum sedens cum uxor, aquila suspensus demissus  
leniter ala, pileus aufero.

Plato in cunæ parvulus dormiens apīs in labellum conaīdo.

Is disputatio sententia hic liber expono meus arbitratus.

In Cato Major Cato induco senex de senectus disputans.

Tum insula Delos, tam procul (*N.* 223. 2) a ego in Ægæus  
mare positus, refertus divitiæ, parvus, sine murus, nihil  
timeo: nunc ora Italia ac portus noster careo.

Ab is non impetro, ut insula in lacus Prelius vendo.

Sum quidam spes, ego quidem non magnus, sed in hic locus  
firmus, Afranius in Pyrenæus (*sing.*) cum Trebonius  
pugno, pello Trebonius.

Dum hic in Africa atque in Hispania gero, Hannibal in  
ager Tarentinus sætas consumo. (*N.* 260. 1 et 2.)

Sum in Creta (*N.* 268) postea contubernalis Saturninus,  
proprius suis.

Non necari sum commemoro, qui apud quisque (*N.* 173  
*Obs.*) visendus sum totus Asia et Græcia. (*N.* 260. 3.)

Totus Tarracina omnis in paries inscribo is litteræ.

Itaque ante dies tertius Idus November, quum Sacer via  
descendo, insequor ego cum suis. (*N.* 261.)

Ego, quoniam superus mare obsideo, inferus navigo.  
Uterque censor censor opinio sto (*Ger.*) non puto.

55. *Similia sunt* humi, domi, belli, militiæ, ruri.

Is ego, humus stratus, suspicio non possum.

Public affairs were managed no better abroad than at home.

Diodotus the Stoic, when blind, lived many years at our house.

He banished his son Titus from mankind, and commanded him to live in the country.

---

Uncertain of the good faith of their allies, on the road not far from Capua, they threw their bodies, destitute of every thing, on the ground.

No great state can be quiet: if it has not an enemy abroad, it finds one at home.

A year followed remarkable for nothing abroad or at home, except that a colony was led forth to Fregellæ.

Why was it necessary for you to go to see a sacrifice which was to be celebrated at another man's house.

56. *The Ablative of a Town is without a Preposition, when the question is, Whence?—so domo, rure.* (See Note 268.)

I, on account of the crowded state of the road and the daily expectation of news, have not as yet moved (*moved myself*) from Thessalonica.

The ships, having been sent back from Dyrrhachium by the consuls, return to Brundisium.

Concerning his departure from Alexandria, there is as yet no rumour.

---

He fled by night from Antioch towards Laodicea.

I started from Cales for Capua on the twenty-ninth of January.

From whence, or to what place should they have carried it? from Philomelium to Ephesus?

But what a return from Narbo! and yet he was asking why I had returned so suddenly.

This is a pleasant spot and actually in the sea, inasmuch as it can be seen both from Antium and Circæi.

Nihilo militia, quam domus (N. 271. 1), bene respública (sing.) administro.

Diodotus Stoicus, cecus, multus annus domus noster vivo.

Titus filius ab homo relego, et rus (N. 272. 2. a), habito jubeo.

Incertus (N. 185. 2) de fides socius, circa via hand procul Capua omnis (N. 200. 4) egenus corpus humanus prosterno.<sup>1</sup>

Nullus magnus civitas quiesco possum: si foris hostis non habeo, domus invenio.

Sequor annus nullus res bellum domusve insignis, præterquam quod Fregellæ colonia deduco.

Quid tu necesse sum sacrificium, qui alienus domus fio (subj.), inviso?

56. *Ablativus Oppidi Præpositione caret cum rogatur Unde?—ita domo, rure. (See Note 268.)*

Ego, propter via celebritas et quotidianus expectatio res novus, non commoveo ego adhuc Thessalonica.

Navis, a consul Dyrrhachium remiasus, Brundisium revertor. (N. 40. B.)

De ille Alexandria discessus, nihil adhuc rumor.

Noctu Antiochea profugio Laodicea versus. (N. 121. B.) Ante dies quartus Calendæ Februarius Capua Cales proficiscor.

Qui ex locus, in qui locusne (N. 300. Obs. 2) is porto (imperf. potent.)? Philomelumne Ephesus?

Qui vero Narbo reditus (N. 262)! et tamen quæro, cur ego tam subito revertor. (N. 40. B.)

Sum hic quidem locus amœnus, et in mare ipse, qui et Antium et Circæi adspicio possum. (N. 266.)

<sup>1</sup> This and all the following Sentences illustrate some part of Notes 270, 271, and 272, with which carefully compare them.

I wrote yesterday from Ephesus: I write this letter from Tralles.

L. Albius, the son of Sextus, of the Quirine tribe, a good and most distinguished man, went with him.

He found that T. Ampius had attempted to take the money from the temple of Diana at Ephesus.

You have driven me from my home, you have driven Cn. Pompey to his home.

Lucumo, being a fugitive from his home, happened to settle at Tarquinii.

It was difficult to support his army, nor was anything sent from home.

However, when Tullius has returned from the country, I will send him to you.

*57. The Name of a Place is generally governed by a Preposition after a Verb of Motion.*

He sets out from the city, and comes to further Gaul.

Then they ordered him to set out at once for Etruria.

Certain persons brought from Greece to us a forged will of Basilus, a wealthy man.

There are two entrances from Syria into Cilicia.

In the fourth watch of the following night he set out for the river Trebia.

---

He himself at the beginning of spring advanced into Cœle Syria.

It is sufficiently certain that Æneas came first to Macedonia; and that thence, in his search for a home, he was carried to Sicily; that from Sicily he reached the Laurentian territory with his fleet.

He comes to Gomphi, which is the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus.

He determined to await there the arrival of the other legions from Italy, and to winter in tents.

And so the next night the camp was moved from the (river) Ticinus, and they hastened to the Po.

Do Ephesus pridie: hic (*supple litteras*) do Tralles (*pl.*).  
(*N.* 83 et 266. *Obs.* 1.)

L. Albius, Sex. filius, Quirinus (*N.* 266. *Obs.* 2), vir bonus  
et cum primus (*N.* 222) honestus, una proficiscor.

Reperio T. Ampius conor tollo pecunia (*pl.*) Ephesus ex  
fanum Diana. (*N.* 267. 8.)

Ego domus meus expello, Cn. Pompeius domus suus com-  
pello.

Lucumo, domus profugus (*N.* 262), Tarquinii forte con-  
sido.

Difficilis sum (*imperf.*) exercitus alo, nec ab domus (*N.*  
271. 5) quisquam mitto.

Ego tamen, quum Tullius rus redeo, mitto is ad tu.

57. *Loci nomen a Praepositione fere regitur post Verbum  
motus.*

Ab urbs proficiscor, atque in ulterior Gallia pervenio.

Tum extemplo in Etruria proficiscor is jubeo.

Basilus, locuples homo, falsus testamentum quidam e (*N.*  
221. 2) Græcia ad ego affero.

Duo sum aditus in Cilicia ex Syria. (*N.* 262.)

Quartus vigilia nox insequens proficiscor ad Trebia fluvius.

---

Ipse primus ver in Coele Syria procedo.

Satis constat Æneas (*N.* 5. *A.* 1) primo in Macedonia venio;  
inde in Sicilia, quærens sedes (*pl.*), defero; a Sicilia  
classis<sup>1</sup> ad Laurens ager teneo. (*N.* 268.)

Gomphi pervenio, qui sum oppidum primus Thessalia  
veniens (*pl.* *N.* 132) ab Epirus.

Ibi reliquus ex Italia legio adventus exspecto, et sub pellis  
hiemo constituo. (*N.* 262.)

Itaque proximus nox castra ab Ticinus moveo, festinoque  
(*imperf.*) ad Padus. (*N.* 62. *D.* 3.)

---

<sup>1</sup> Concerning the phrase *classis tenere* see Note 114. *A.* *Obs.*

The letter will be more full of news, than if I had written from Amanus (*a mountain range*). But to think that you will not be at Rome!

We wish to reach the Formian villa on the festival of Pales; thence we shall set out from the Formian villa on the first of May, that we may be at Antium on the third (*of May*).

He came to me in Cilicia, and his integrity and wisdom were of great use to me in many things.

58. *These Prepositions govern an Ablative: a, ab, &c.* (See also Notes 218-222, and R. 20 A.)

It has been thought unnecessary to append any Examples to this Rule, as many are to be found throughout the Exercises.

59. *Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially ab, de, ex.*

Your armies are besieging (*encamping around*) Saguntum, from whence they are prohibited by the treaty: soon the Roman legions will besiege Carthage.

Lepta came running, and announced to me that you had already passed the camp.

They bring word that Hasdrubal has moved from winter quarters, and that he is already crossing the Alps.

He says that he will wander through all Latium.

That earthquake diverted rapid streams from their course.

The news of this fresh reinforcement compelled both the Romans and the king alike to desist from the siege.

Virtue can never be overthrown by any violence, can never be removed from its post.

By the laying waste of the fields and the burning of their country-houses he forced the besieged to come out of the city.

---

He excelled all at that time both in wisdom and influence.

He perceives the hill bare of men, which on the previous days could scarcely be seen for the numbers on it.

Tanaquil addresses the people from the upper part of the house. She bids them be of good courage: she says that Servius Tullius will administer justice, and discharge the other regal duties.

Uber sum litteræ, quam si ex (N. 265. 2) Amanus mitto.  
At tu Roma non sum?

In Formianum volo venio Parilia (N. 246); inde Calendæ  
Maius de Formianum proficiscor, ut Antium sum ante  
dies quintus Nonæ Maius.

Ad ego in Cilicia (N. 267. 1) venio, multasque in res ego  
magnus usus sum et fides is et prudentia.

58. *Ablativum regunt variae Præpositiones :*

A, ab, absque, coram, de,  
Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e,  
Sine, tenus, pro et præ :

His super, subter, sub *addemus*,  
Et in de statu si dicemus.

59. *Præpositiones etiam compositas regunt Ablativum,*  
*præsertim ab, de, ex.*

Saguntum vester circumsedeo exercitus, unde arceo fœdus :  
mox Carthago circumsedeo Romanus legio.

Currens Lepta venio, egoque nuntio tu jam castra præter  
gredior. (N. 225. A.)

Nuntio Hasdrubal moveo (N. 113. B) ex hiberna, et jam  
Alpes transeo.

Pererro se omnis Latium dico.

Is motus terra (N. 109. 1) avertō cursus rapidus amnis.

Hic novus præsidium fama absisto oppugnatio simul Romani  
rexque cogo.

Virtus nunquam ullus vis (N. 6. G) labefacto possum, nun-  
quam demoveo locus.

Populatio ager atque incendium (pl.) villa cogo obsessus  
egredior urbs.

---

Omnis is tempus et prudentia et auctoritas anteeo (*imperf.*).  
Animadverto (N. 226) collis nudatus homo, qui superior  
dies vix præ (N. 193. 2) multitudo cerno possum.

Ex superior pars ædes populus Tanaquil alloquor. Jubeo  
bonus animus sum : Servius Tullius jus (pl.) reddo,  
obeoque alius rex munia.



I enter upon the remainder of my speech with great hope, since I have been carried past the most dangerous part in silence.

They lead two legions across the river Sicoris, and fortify a camp with a rampart twelve feet high.

He has scarce a third part of that army which he brought over the river Ebro.

I chose to welcome any fortune, to endure violence and injustice, rather than to move aside from my position.

And now they had come to a spot exactly suited for an ambush, where the Trasimene lake approaches nearest to the mountains.

O monstrous boldness! did you dare to go into that house? did you dare to enter that most holy door?

Scipio led in triumph and shut up in prison very many generals.

And so they decreed that Lentulus should be placed in confinement, when he had resigned the prætorship.

Keep away from Europe, and depart from all Asia which is on this side Mount Taurus.

He landed the soldiers near Pharos.

We must dispense with a number of examples.

60. *The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition a, ab.*

Eratothenes, whom I had proposed to myself as an example, is greatly blamed by Serapion and by Hipparchus.

These pursuits are very highly commended by fathers of families.

Then you all cried out together that the state had been again saved by me.

In this famous letter you will find nothing written by Epicurus in harmony and agreement with his decisions.

It is certain that Gaul was burdened by debt. By whom do they say that loans of so great an amount were borrowed? By the Gauls? Far from it. By whom then? By Roman citizens who carry on business in Gaul.

The greatest part, as has been before said, were driven by the enemy's horsemen into the river.

Magnus spes ingredior in (*N.* 227) reliquus oratio, quoniam periculosus locus silentium præterveho.

Legio duo flumen Sicoris transduco, castraque munio vallum pes duodecim.

Pars vix tertius is exercitus habeo, qui Iberus amnis trajicio.

Quivis excipio fortuna, subeo vis atque injuria malo, quam de meus status declino. (*N.* 227.)

Et jam pervenio ad locus (*pl.*) insidiæ natus, ubi maxime mons Trasimenus subeo.

O audacia immanis! tu ingredior ille domus audeo? tu ille sanctus limen intro?

Scipio multus dux in triumphus ductus carcer includo. (*N.* 224. *Obs.*)

Atque ita censeo, ut Lentulus, quum se prætura abdico, tum in custodia trado.

Europa abstineo (*pl.*), Asiaque omnis, qui cis Taurus sum, decedo.

Ad Pharos (*N.* 5. *D.* 2) navis miles expono.

Exemplum multitudo supersedeo. (Primer, § 144, iv. 1, et *N.* 224. 2.)

60. *Ablativus Agentis expetit Præpositionem a vel ab.*

Eratosthenes, qui ego propono, a Serapion et ab Hipparchus valde reprehendo.

Hic studium a paterfamilias (*N.* 4. 1) maxime laudo.

Tum vos universus iterum a ego conservo respublica conclamo.

Nihil in hic præclarus epistola scriptus ab Epicurus congreuens et conveniens decretum is reperio.

Constat opprimo æs alienus Gallia. A quis versura tantus pecunia (*pl.*) fio dico? A Galli? Nihil minus. A quis igitur? A civis Romanus qui negotior in Gallia.

Magnus pars, ut ante dico, ab hostis eques in flumen ago (*pl.*).

It remains that we should vie with one another in kind offices; in which I shall contentedly either surpass you, or be surpassed by you.

He is confuted by himself, and his writings are disproved by his own uprightness and character.

What do you say? People were being murdered very generally. By whose agency, and at whose instigation?

Being there informed by Acilius in a letter of the demands of Bibulus, he leaves the legion.

There is nothing more dangerous, or more to be guarded against by you all.

61. *The Ablative of Separation and Origin, even without a Preposition, is joined to Verbs and Participles.* (See Notes 228-9, and Primer, 138. N. H.)

The Romans promise that they will retire from all Greece.

They will prevent them from approaching.

The master will drive you from that house.

One of the censors orders him to be degraded from his tribe, the other forbids this.

Romulus sprang from Mara, his father.

In this state Romulus, sprung from a god, himself a god, held the regal power: now a slave, born of a slave, possesses it.

This is our true country; for hence are we sprung of a very ancient stock.

He says that that old man was descended from Deucalion.

---

They have retired from the country, and pronounced a sentence of exile against themselves.

He yielded me the possession of the gardens.

He himself, not going at all out of the way, pitched his camp near Antioch, above the river Mæander.

He commended the soldiers, because they had kept the enemy from all the country this side the Ebro.

The Roman garrisons were either driven from the citadels, or were treacherously betrayed and surprised.

Some he degraded from the rank of senators, others he deprived of knighthood.

Reliquus sum, ut officium certo inter ego; qui æquus animus  
vel vinco tu, vel vinco abs (*N.* 218. 3) tu.

Redarguo ipse a sui, vincoque scriptum is probitas ipse ac  
mos. (*N.* 157. *Obs.*)

Quis aio? Vulgo (*N.* 57) occido. Per (*N.* 158) quis, et a  
quis?

Ibi certus ab Acilius per litteræ factus de postulatam  
Bibulus, legio relinquo. (*N.* 158. *Obs.*)

Res nullus sum magis periculosus, magis ab omnis vos  
providendus. (*N.* 294. 2.)

61. *Ablativus Separationis et Originis etiam sine Præ-  
positione Verbis et Participiis adiungitur.*

Romani se Græcia omnis cedo polliceor.

Is aditus arceo.

Tu dominus ille sedes (*pl.*) arceo.

Censor alter tribus is moveo jubeo, alter veto.



Romulus pater Mars nascor (*perf.*).

In hic civitas Romulus, deus prognatus, deus ipse, teneo  
regnum: is nunc servus, serva natus, possideo.

Hic sum noster germanus patria; hinc enim ortus stirps  
antiquus sum.

Ille senex a Deucalion orior aio.

---

Cedo finis (*pl.*), ac semet ipse exsilium conscisco.

Ego hortus possessio cedo.

Ipse, nihil via digressus (*N.* 228. *Obs.* 1), ad Antiochia super  
Mæandrus amnis pono castra.

Collando miles, quod omnis cis Iberus ager hostis arceo  
(*subj.*).

Præsidium Romanus aut pello (*imperf.*) arx, aut proditus  
per fraus opprimo.

Alius senatorius locus moveo, alius equus adimo.

These artists have retired from their art.

He took possession of a hill near this spot, and began to hinder our men from their work.

It will be the part of your humanity to save a great number of these citizens from misfortune.

Some fled, fearing a trial: he forbade these the use of (*interdicted them from*) fire and water.

They had got to such a pitch of anger as to forbid the Macedonians their territories.

Then, in the sight of all, stones fell thickly from the sky.

Fortune did not grant you a legitimate birth.

If you consider Latona a goddess, do you not consider Hecate one, who is the daughter of Asteria, Latona's sister?

Hail, Hercules, thou son of Jove: my mother prophesied that an altar would be dedicated to you on this spot.

Ancus Martius was the grandson of Numa Pompilius on the mother's side (*being born of his daughter*).

C. Valerius, the consul's half-brother on the mother's side, was of great service to the Ætolians.

Claudius, the son of the same mother as the consul (i. e. *his half-brother*), had lately arrived.

The only person found to advocate the law was Varro, a man sprung not merely from a humble, but even from a mean position.

He made men believe that he was sprung not of human origin, but from a divine stock.

If I be not of the Claudian family, nor sprung of a patrician origin, yet I am one of the Quirites, yet I know that I am the son of two free born parents.

Because we call our children (*those born of us*) *liberi*, therefore the children of Ceres were called Liber and Libera.

You preferred Cicero, a man of no family, to the most noble individuals.

He was by far the first of the Latin race, being descended, if we believe common report, from Ulysses and the goddess Circe

Hic opifex se ars (*pl.*) suus removeo.

Hic locus propinquus collis occupo, nosterque opus prohibeo  
cœpi.

Sum humanitas vester magnus is civis numerus calamitas  
prohibeo.

Nonnullus iudicium veritus profugio : hic (*dat.*) aqua atque  
ignis (*N. 2. C. 1. a*) interdico.

Eo procedo ira (*pl.*), ut finis interdico Macedones.

Tum, in conspectus omnis, creber cœlum cado lapis. (*N.*  
228. *Obs. 2.*)

Tu fortuna non do, ut pater certus nascor.

Si Latona dea puto, Hecata (*N. 5. C*) non puto, qui mater  
Asteria sum, Latona soror?

Jupiter natus, Hercules, salveo : tu ara hic dico mater ego  
cœno.

Numa Pompilius nepos, filia ortus, Ancus Martius sum.

Ætoli C. Valerius, consul frater, mater genitus idem,  
egregie adjuvo.

Claudius, mater idem qui consul genitus, nuper venio.

Unus invenio suasor lex Varro, locus non humilis solum,  
sed etiam sordidus, ortus.

Fides facio, non sanguis humanus, sed stirps divinus sero  
sui. (*N. 230. 1. a.*)

Si Claudius familia non sum, nec ex patricius sanguis ortus,  
sed unus sum Quirites, sed ego duo ingenuus orior scio.  
(*N. 230. 1. b.*)

Quod ex ego natus liberi appello, idcirco Ceres natus  
(*particip.*) nomino Liber et Libera. (*N. 230. 2 et 3.*)

Cicero vos, a se ortus, homo nobilis præfero. (*N. 230. 3.*)

Is longe princeps Latinus nomen sum, si fama credo, ab  
Ulixes deaque Circa (*N. 5. C*) oriundus. (*N. 230. 4.*)

62. *Ablative of the Thing compared*, (1) *for quam (than) with Nominative*, (2) *for quam with Accusative, follows Adjectives or Adverbs.* (See Primer, 138. K. 1.)

62A. *Adjectives.*

Who was more illustrious than Themistocles? who more powerful?

For what is better, or what more excellent than goodness and beneficence?

Is anything more wretched than this, more disgraceful than this?

Nothing is more pleasant to me than his friendship.

But to me indeed on account of their excellent disposition they are dearer than my own life.

Why do you consider Herodotus more truthful than Ennius?

One rhythm is better and more suitable than another.

---

But, to pass over these things, what was more unseemly or more disorderly than this departure from the city, or rather than this most disgraceful flight? What terms ought he not to have accepted rather than abandon his country? Could anything have been worse than this?

Nothing will be more pleasant to them than the city and their own home, nor more burdensome and troublesome than a province.

Either I am ignorant of this enemy, or another place will be more famous than the Trasimene lake for our defeat.

Those of this army, who were under (*less than*) five and thirty, were sent on board the ships; the others were left to protect the city.

He is waiting for his brother, than whom he can find no one more like himself.

And so we can imagine things more beautiful than the statues of Phidias, the most perfect things of the kind that we see (*than which we see, &c.*).

You will find many to whom dangerous and rash counsels would seem more dazzling and grand than quiet and well considered ones.

In the silence of the night he heard a voice louder than that of a man.

62. *Ablativus Rei comparatæ*, (1) *pro quam cum Nominativo*, (2) *pro quam cum Accusativo, sequitur sive Adjectiva sive Adverbia.*

62 A. *Adjectiva.*

Quis clarus sum Themistocles? quis potens?

Quis enim sum bonus, aut quis præstans (*N. 13. 2*) bonitas et beneficentia?

Hic miser, hic turpis quisquam?

Nihil ego is sum familiaritas jucundus.

Ego vero propter excellens is ingenium vita sum meus carus.

Herodotus cur verax duco (*sing.*) Ennius?

Alius (*N. 171*) alius bonus atque aptus sum numerus.

---

Sed, ut hic omitto (*sing.*), quis fœdus, quis perturbatus (*N.*

13. 2) hic ab urbs discessus, sive potius turpis fuga?

Quis conditio non accipiendus sum potius quam relinquendus patria? Num quis hic malus?

Nihil sum hic urbs, nihil domus suus dulcis, nec laboriosus molestusque provincia.

Aut ego hostis hic ignoro, aut nobilis alius Trasimenus locus noster clades (*pl.*) sum.

Ex hic exercitus qui parvus quinque et triginta annus sum, in navis impono; alius, ut urbs præsideo, relinquo.

Frater exspecto, qui nemo reperio possum se similis. (*N. 215.*)

Itaque et Phidias simulacrum, qui nihil in ille genus perfectus video, cogito tamen possum pulcher.

Reperio (*sing.*) multus, qui periculosus et calidus consilium quietus et cogitatus et splendidus et magnus videor.

Nox silentium audio vox clarus humanus.



These unusually large preparations alarmed the Campanians.

I am confident that these things are either altogether false, or at any rate less serious than they are thought to be.

On neither side did more than six hundred foot-soldiers fall.

62 B. *Adverbs.*

Nor do the consuls move me, who are themselves moved more easily than a feather or a leaf.

No one is less timid than I, no one more cautious. Facts prove this.

Fortune is more powerful than human counsels.

This evil is spread more widely than you think.

They were preparing to attack Labienus; and now they were not further than a two days' journey from him.

The going out of the fire in the temple of Vesta alarmed men's minds more than all the prodigies.

The other systems of philosophers, one indeed more than another, but yet all, corrupt nature herself.

From the middle of the forehead of this bull one horn rises, longer and straighter than those horns which are known to us.

Now through success they are even more than usually incautious.

These, at their entrance upon the consulship, had attracted more than is usual the attention of the citizens.

Being attacked there by a long illness, he came to Rome later than had been expected by all.

63. *Instead of this Ablative the Conjunction quam is often placed with a Nominative or Accusative.*

He was younger by three years than Antony.

Nothing is to be more desired by man than prosperous, equable, and lasting good-fortune.

I consider you alone of more value than all those.

A sudden arrival of the enemy causes much greater confusion than one that has been expected.

Hic magnus solitus apparatus (*sing.*) conterreo Campani.

Hic ego aut omnino falsus, aut certe parvus opinio sum confido.

Ab neuter pars sexcenti plus pedes cado. (*N.* 216. 2. a.)

62 B. *Adverbia.*

Nec ego consul moveo, qui ipse pluma aut folium facile moveo.

Nemo ego minus timidus, nemo cautus. Res (*sing.*) de-claro.

Fortuna multum consilium humanus polleo.

Late opinio dissemino (*N.* 32. 2) hic malum.

Labiens adior par; jamque ab is non longe biduum via absum.

Plus (*N.* 217) omnis prodigium terreo animus homo ignis in aedes Vesta exstinctus.

Ceteri philosophus disciplina, omnino alius magis alius, sed tamen omnis, ipse depravo natura.

Hic bos a medius frons unus cornu exsisto, excelsus magisque (*N.* 9. 2) directus hic, qui ego notus sum, cornu.

Nunc ab (*N.* 193. 1) secundus res magis etiam solitus incautus sum.

Hic, consulatus iniens, plus solitus converto in se civitas animus.

Diurnus ibi morbus implicitus, sero spes omnis Roma venio.

63. *Pro hoc Ablativo sæpe ponitur Conjunctio quam cum Nominativo vel Accusativo.*

Triennium sum parvus quam Antonius.

Homo nihil sum magis optandus (*N.* 13. *Obs.*) quam prosperus, æquabilis, perpetuusque fortuna.

Unus tu plus quam omnis ille puto.

Hostis (*pl.*) repens adventus magis aliquantus conturbo quam expectatus.

It was easily seen that of all blessings none was more acceptable to the multitude than liberty.

Never has there been a single poet or orator who thought any one superior to himself.

What can be greater than the sun, which mathematicians prove to be more than eighteen times greater than the earth?

64. *Quam is elegantly omitted after the Comparatives plus, amplius, minus.* (But see Note 217.)

On the next day more than twenty cities are burned.

He said that less than five thousand infantry and cavalry had come with Fabius.

---

Those, who were really made subject to the sway and dominion of Rome, were more than a hundred and twenty states.

It is certain that twenty-two thousand of the enemy were slain, and that more than three hundred were taken alive.

Not more than five thousand were slain, less than half that number of men were taken prisoners.

NOTE.—*Before you proceed to the next Rule, read Note 233, and form the Participles of the Verbs given there.*

65. *A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative, which is called Absolute.*

Philip and Antiochus having been conquered, we received very great rewards from you.

My letter being now written and sealed, a letter was given me from you.

The Carthaginian sounded the signal for retreat, Hannibal openly saying that Minucius had been conquered by him, and he himself by Fabius.

With the approbation of all (*all approving*), they appoint a day for Manlius.

Cæsar said this to Dolabella in my hearing.

Facile apparet nihil omnis bonum multitudo gratus quam libertas sum.

Nemo unquam neque poëta neque orator sum, qui quisquam bonus quam se arbitror (*subj.*). (*N.* 302. *Obs.* 2.)

Quis possum sum sol magnus, qui mathematicus amplius (*N.* 216. 1. *b*) duodeviginti pars confirmo magnus sum quam terra?

64. Quam *eleganter omittitur post Comparativa* plus, amplius, minus.

Postridie amplius viginti urbs incendio. (*N.* 216. *Obs.*)

Dico minus quinque mille (*N.* 15) pedes equesque cum Fabius venio.

---

Qui vere ditio imperiumque Romanus fio, amplius populus sum centum viginti.

Constat viginti duo mille hostis cædo, plus trecenti vivus capio. (*N.* 216. *Obs.*)

Non plus quinque mille occido, minus dimidium is (*N.* 180) homo capio.

NOTA.—*Priusquam ad proximam Regulam progredieris, lege Notam 233, Participiaque Verborum ibi propositorum forma.*

65. *Substantivum cum Participio coalescit in Ablativo qui vocatur Absolutus.*

Præmium, Philippus et Antiochus devictus, amplius accipio a vos.

Scriptus et obsignatus jam epistola, litteræ ego reddo a tu.

Pœnus receptus (dat.) cano, palam ferens Hannibal ab se Minucius, se a Fabius vinco.

Approbens cunctus, dies Manlius dico.

Hic Dolabella, ego audiens, Cæsar dico.

A great calm having ensued, he soon reached land.

---

When the excitement is gone, they cannot bear the pain of disease.

Unhappy me! for though my tears are spent, yet grief remains deeply seated in my heart.

Information of that fact having been given, and the gates having been suddenly closed by the order of the pro-consul, all the guilty parties were seized, and, after the torture had been sharply applied, were condemned and put to death.

If their profits are wont to be diminished on the closing of the shops, what, think you, will happen on the burning of the same?

Not even after the expulsion of kings was the city closed against foreign worth.

Having excused his thoughtlessness, he discussed the question of peace at length.

Although I had received this so signal injury, yet on the selfsame day I sent some who were common friends to Metellus, to treat with him.

The sacrifice of Ceres had been neglected, since all the matrons were in mourning.

If he had remained, Rome could not have been taken.

I used to say that this was the one man of all others, in whose presence I should have least wished to be trifling.

This was done on account of the want of fodder, and even at their own instigation.

The battle was at first doubtful, the Roman cavalry having made many fruitless attempts to throw the enemy's line into confusion by a charge.

For a little time there was silence and quiet, as the Etrurians were not going to begin the battle, unless they were obliged.

These were being despised, though not only the Curii and Catos, but the Marii and Cælii were thought worthy of mention.

Summus tranquillitas consecutus, terra cito attingo.

---

Omissus contentio<sup>1</sup> dolor morbus fero non possum.

Miser ego ! consumptus enim lacrima, tamen infixus animus  
hæreo dolor.

Indicium is res factus, porta repente jussus proconsul clausus,  
comprehendo omnis, qui in noxa sum, et, quæstio acriter  
habitus, damno necoque.

Hic si quæstus (*sing.*) oclusus taberna minuo soleo, quis  
tandem incensus futurus sum ?

Ne rex quidem exactus claudio (*N. 35*) urbs peregrinus  
virtus.

Excusatus imprudentia (*N. 239. B*) dissero de pax verbum  
multus.

Hic acceptus tam insignis injuria (*N. 239. B*), tamen ille  
ipse dies mitto ad Metellus communis amicus, qui cum  
is ago.

Ceres sacrificium, lugens omnis matrona, intermitto.

Is manens, capio Roma non possum.

Dico hic sum unus homo ex omnis, qui præsens ego ineptus  
sum minime volo. (*N. 314. A. Obs.*)

Hic fio inopia pabulum, etiam ipse hortans.

Primo anceps sum pugna, nequicquam sæpe conatus eques  
Romanus (*N. 239. A*) impetus turbo hostis acies.

Parumper silentium et quies sum (*N. 90. 1*), Etrusci, nisi  
cogo (*subj.*), pugna non initurus. (*N. 240. 1.*)

Hic, non modo Curius et Cato, sed Marius et Cælius com-  
memorandus, jaceo. (*N. 240. 2.*)

---

<sup>1</sup> Before you do the Sentences below the line in this and the next Rule, read Notes 237 and 238.

There, on its being ascertained from the country people that the enemy's ships were stationed at Æthalia, a consultation was held.

And in a moment of time the fortune of the day was changed, those fleeing, who had but just now pursued.

Some having been sent to investigate that prodigy, stones fell thickly from the sky in their sight.

Romulus is said to have founded the city after having taken the auspices.

Nor did you think that you would be in any way safe, except by the overthrow of the republic.

Then the noise increased: at last there arose a shouting and clapping of hands, as if certain news of a victory had been brought.

66. *For the Participle is often substituted another Substantive or Adjective.*

The Carthaginians, Hannibal being their leader, waged war with the Roman people.

He was made consul for the second time, during my consulship.

Tarquin was made king, the children of Ancus being still alive.

That night, the Romans keeping quiet, finished the war.

And so, all being ignorant of it, the tyrant was received into the city.

---

There is not one of these, who does not know that, during the consulship of Lepidus and Tullus, you stood in the place of assembly with a weapon in your hand.

But he produces a decree of the senate, passed in the consulship of Lentulus and Philip.

I find that Plato came hither, when Lucius Camillus and Appius Claudius were consuls.

He came to Rome in the consulate of Marius and Catulus.

And even dumb beasts almost say, under the instruction and guidance of nature, that there is nothing unpleasant except pain.

They considered all the enemy's forces as even greater than

Ibi ex agrestis cognitus hostis navis ad Æthalia sto, consilium habeo. (*N.* 241.)

Vertoque momentum tempus fortuna pugna, tergum (*pl.*) dans, qui modo sequor. (*N.* 242.)

Missus ad is visendus prodigium, in conspectus creber cælum cado lapis. (*N.* 242.)

Romulus auspicatus urbs condo trado. (*N.* 243.)

Nec tu ullus modus, nisi eversus respublica, incolumis sum puto. (*N.* 244. 1.)

Dein fremitus incresco : postremo clamor plaususque, velut certus nuntius victoria allatus, exorior. (*N.* 244. 2.)

66. *Pro Participio sæpe suppletur alterum Substantivum vel Adjectivum.*

Bellum, Hannibal dux, Carthaginienses cum populus Romanus gero.

Consul iterum, ego consul, creo.

Tarquinius, vivus liberi Ancus, rex fio.

Nox is, quietus Romani, perficio bellum.

Itaque, ignarus omnis, accipio in urbs tyrannus.

---

Hic sum nemo, qui nescio tu, Lepidus et Tullus consul, sto in comitium (*N.* 7. *B.*) cum telum. (*N.* 245.)

At ille profero senatus consultum Lentulus Philippusque consul.

Plato huc venio, L. Camillus, Appius Claudius consul, reperio.

Roma venio Marius consul (*sing.*) et Catulus.

Mutus etiam bestia pæne loquor, magistra ac dux natura, nihil sum asper nisi dolor.

Omnis magnus etiam verum præsidium hostis, parvus suus,



For the ancients indeed used to discuss the question of a republic cleverly, as far as the mere meaning of the word went.

The consul has thrown out this against me as a mere nominal charge, rather than really to accuse me.

But, if you please, thus far for to-day : let us put off the rest till to-morrow.

And I have translated these men's speeches, using all their ideas, and the turn of those ideas, and their arrangement of the matter ; copying their words only so far as possible without their being at variance with our idiom.

I accept your excuse, so far as you write that this delay is caused by the negligence of others.

With what auspices could I receive those fasces ? how long could I hold them ? to whom could I give them up ?

67 A. *Cum* is subjoined to the (*Ablative*) *Cases of Personal Pronouns, and usually of the Relative, so that of two words one is formed : as, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, (a) quicum or (b) quocum, quâcum, quibuscum.*

Obs. *It is also sometimes subjoined to the Ablative of the Interrogative Pronoun ; hence is formed quicum (N. 25. Obs.).*

My familiar conversation with you, and likewise yours with me, has brought each of us to this mind.

We bring many honours with us : yes, all those very ones which have made you proud.

The Belgians are nearest to the Germans, with whom they are continually waging war.

Philip reminds us of our alliance with himself, and of our oath.

Terentia, who values you very highly, entered the town at the same time with me.

Let others hate the enemy : I equally with yourselves will take care of the city and the affairs of the city.

There was no one with whom I should more willingly have been than with yourself ; and few with whom I should have been so willingly.

Your contest, Romans, is not with an enemy with whom there can be any conditions of peace.

Nam vetus verbum tenus, acute ille quidem, de respublica dissero.

In ego jacio magis hic consul verbum tenus, quam ut res insimulo.

Sed, si placet, in hic dies hic tenus: reliquus differo in crastinus.

Qui ego oratio exprimo, sententia utens ille omnis, et is figura (*pl.*), et res ordo; verbum persequens is tenus, ut is non abhorreo a mos noster.

Accipio tuus excusatio ex is pars, qui tenus (*N.* 232) negligentia alius hic mora fio scribo.

Quis auspiciū iste fasces accipio (*conj.*, Primer, § 148. 5)? quis tenus habeo? quis trado?

67 A. Cum ita subjungitur Casibus Pronominum Personarum, et plerumque Relativi, ut ex duabus vocibus una fiat: ut, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, (a) quicum vel (b) quocum, quācum, quibuscum.

Obs. Subjungitur etiam nonnunquam Ablativo Interrogativi Pronominis; hinc fit quicum.

Sermo familiaris meus tu cum, et item ego cum tuus, adduco uterque ego ad hic consilium.

Multus ego cum decus affero: immo omnis idem qui vos superbus facio.

Proximus sum Belgæ Germani, qui cum continenter bellum gero.

Philippus ego societas sui cum admoneo, et iusjurandum.

Simul ego (*pl.*) cum in oppidum introëo Terentia, qui tu facio plurimus.

Odi alius hostis: ego (*pl.*) urbs et res urbanus vos cum pariter (*N.* 220) tueor.

Sum nemo, qui cum sum (*N.* 314. A. Obs.) libenter quam tu cum; et paucus, qui cum sum æque libenter.

Non sum vos, Quirites, cum is hostis certamen, qui cum aliquis pax conditio sum possum.

On the next day there came together to me the same throng by (*in company with*) which I had been conducted home on quitting the consulship.

Although with whom am I talking? With a most pre-eminently brave man.

#### ON THE GENITIVE.

68. *The Genitive, the case of the Proprietor, generally defines Nouns subjectively or objectively.*

##### 68A. *The Genitive of the Author.*

Numbers are the invention of Minerva.

On the next day that decree of the senate was passed, which I sent to you.

The Punic war of Nævius delights us.

I sent you a copy of Cæsar's letter; for you had asked me to do so.

His books on morals are perhaps by (*the books of*) Aristotle.

We can quote Plato as an authority, in whose books in many passages Socrates speaks of geometry.

It is not to be asked that you should fear the penalty of the laws.

I always gave you the greatest praise for eloquence.

There was there a statue of Cupid, in marble, by Praxiteles.

There was this statue, which I mention, of Cupid, in marble: in the other part was Hercules, beautifully wrought in brass: this (*he*) was said to be the work of Myro.

##### 68B. *The Genitive of the Possessor.*

The surest and largest revenues of the Roman people are at stake.

I despised the swords of Catiline, I will not fear yours.

He destroyed the town; he sold the men themselves and their property.

And so he himself, his wife, his kingdom, his fields, his towns, whatever in short was the king's, is the prize of the Roman people.

Ad ego idem frequentia postridie convenio, qui cum abiens  
consulatus domus reduco.

Quamquam quis cum loquor? Cum unus (*N.* 14. 2) fortis  
vir.

## DE GENITIVO.

68. *Genitivus, casus Possidentis, nomina plerumque definit  
subjective vel objective.*

68 A. *Genitivus Auctoris.*

Numerus (*sing.*) Minerva inventum sum.  
Postridie senatus consultum fio is qui ad tu mitto.

Nævius bellum Punicus ego delecto.  
Cæsar litteræ exemplum tu mitto; rogo enim.

Is (*N.* 52. A) de mos liber fortasse sum Aristoteles.

Auctor Plato laudo possum, qui in liber multus locus loquor  
de geometria Socrates.  
Ut lex pœna (*pl.*) pertimesco, non postulo.

Tu semper eloquentia magnus tribuo laus.  
Sum ibi signum Cupido, marmoreus, Praxiteles. (*N.* 160.  
*Obs.*)  
Signum sum (*imperf.*) hic, qui dico, Cupido, e marmor: ex  
alter pars Hercules, egregie factus ex æs: is dico sum  
Myro. (*N.* 195.)

68 B. *Genitivus Possessoris.*

Ago (*pass.*) certus populus Romanus vectigal et magnus.

Contemno Catilina gladius, non pertimesco tuus. (*N.* 160.)  
Oppidum diruo; ipse bonaque is (*N.* 52. A) vendo.

Itaque ipse, conjux, regnum, ager, oppidum, quisquis de-  
nique rex sum, præda populus Romanus sum.

There nothing belonged to the people, and the people itself belonged to one man.

He, whose property the merchandise was, fell upon his sword.

He at once got the keys of the gates into (*made them of*) his own power.

---

Sophonisba, the wife of Syphax, the daughter of Hasdrubal, meets him as he is entering the court.

I consider that the king's forces, however great they are, are ours.

Two of the citizens, whose houses were contiguous to the wall, come to him by a secret passage.

That district, belonging to what excellent, honest, and rich men! maintained at that time two hundred and fifty farmers.

I saved this our common country.

Let him remember that that army is the senate's, not his own.

The Macedonian states, which you confess to have belonged to my kingdom, are not being restored.

Wishing to make the nation of the Boeotians subject to his sway, he pitched his camp not far from Thebes.

That people, famous for their luxury and pride, had so broken a spirit, that of their own accord they put themselves and all that they had into the power of another.

They perceived that the Bruttii, whom they both hated and feared, had joined (*been made of*) the side of the Carthaginians.

And do you not consider this city an enemy's.

From whence it comes that the Tusculan territory is called the property of the Tuscans.

69. *Sometimes the Genitive depends on a word omitted.*

That gift was carried to the temple of Juno.

Thence they visited Oropus, a town of Attica.

This opinion indeed was not more my opinion than that of all.

---

Nihil ibi populus, et unus sum populus ipse. (*N.* 160. *Obs.*)

Ille, qui (*N.* 52. *B.*) merx (*pl.*) sum, in gladius (*acc.*) incumbo.

Clavis porta suus extemplo potestas facio.

---

Is vestibulum intrans Sophonisba, uxor Syphax, filia Hasdrubal, occurro.

Rex copiae, quantuscunque sum, noster sum duco. (*N.* 160.)

Duo ex (*N.* 170) oppidanus, qui sum aedificium junctus murus, ad is iter occultus pervenio.

Iste ager, qui homo! quam honestus! quam locuples! ducenti et quinquaginta (*N.* 19. 3) arator tum habeo.

Hic patria omnis ego servo.

Memini ille exercitus senatus sum, non suus.

Macedones civitas, qui regnum meus sum fateor (*pl.*), non restituo.

Bœoti gens ditio suus facio cupiens, haud procul ab (*N.* 223. 2) Thebæ pono castra.

Ille populus, luxuria (*R.* 39) superbiaque clarus, adeo infractus gero animus, ut se ipse (*N.* 23. *Obs.* 1) suusque omnis potestas alienus facio (*sing.*).

Bruttii, qui et odi et metuo, Carthaginienses pars fio cerno.

Et hic urbs vos non hostis (*pl.*) duco? (*N.* 161.)

Ex qui fio, ut ager Tusculanus Tusculani dico.

69. *Interdum Genitivus pendet a suppressa voce.*

Is donum ad Juno (*templum*) porto.

Inde Oropus (*oppidum*) Attica viso.

Hic quidem sententia non magis meus sum quam omnis.  
(*N.* 165. 1.)

---

'Cæcilia, Metellus' wife, went out into a certain chapel' to take an omen.

We see the statue of Q. Tremulus, who conquered the Hernici, before the temple of Castor.

My wife had been conducted from the temple of Vesta to the Valerian bank.

Cæsar leads back his army, with the loss of two cohorts, to Durocortorum, a town of the Remi.

I set out for the camp, from which I was absent a two days' journey.

The senate ordered twenty-five thousand asses (*pounds of copper*) apiece and their liberty to be given to the informers.

This name is much more hostile than that of the Tarquins to your liberty.

What shall I say about Crassus' study of civil law? what about that of this Scipio who is here present?

There are besides not Attic, but old and humorous Roman witticisms, more witty than those famous ones of Attic writers.

70. *A Genitive so stands that nature, token, function, or duty can be supplied.*

Obs. *To these you may add proprium (property, or characteristic); which word, and the rest that we have mentioned above, are sometimes expressed before the Genitive.*

But it is the character of a brave and firm man not to be disturbed in adversity.

To hope was the mark of a fool, to use persuasion of one devoid of shame.

It is his office who grants, not his who asks, to name the terms of peace.

First of all I say that it is the duty of a good senator always to come into the senate.

This is the characteristic of great courage, that of great genius as well.

I will say those things which become the consul.

---

It is the character of barbarians to live only for the day.

Cæcilia (*uxor*) Metellus exeo in quidam sacellum omēn capiendus causa.

Q. Tremulus, qui Hernici devinco, statua ante Castor (*templum*) video.

Uxor meus a Vesta (*ædes*) ad tabula Valerius duco.

Exercitus Cæsar, duo cohors damnum, Durocortorum (*opidum*) Remi reduco.

Proficiscor in castra, a qui absum biduum (*iter N. 273*).

Index viceni quini (*N. 19. 2*) mille æs (*as N. 164. 2*) et libertas do Patres jubeo.

Hic sum nomen multo, quam Tarquinii (*N. 165. 1*), infestus vester libertas.

Quis de Crassus civilis jus studium loquor? quis de hic Scipio?

Accedo non Atticus, sed, salsus quam ille (*N. 165. 2*) Attici, Romanus vetus atque urbanus sal.

70. *Genitivus ita stat ut suppleri possit,*

Indoles, indicium,

|

Munus, aut officium.

Obs. *His addas licet proprium; quæ vox, et reliquæ quas supra memoravimus, nonnunquam ante Genitivum exprimuntur.*

Fortis vero et constans est non perturbo in res (*pl.*) asper.

Stultus est spero, suadeo impudens.

Est quidem is qui do, non qui peto, conditio (*pl.*) dico pax.

Primum dico senator est bonus semper in senatus venio.

Hic animus, ille etiam ingenium magnus est. (*N. 275. 1.*)

Ille dico, qui est consul. (*N. 275. 2.*)

---

Barbarus est in dies vivo.



To be altogether unacquainted with our poets betrays either the most helpless idleness, or the most refined fastidiousness.

But yet I did not think that it was the part of a friend to be unmoved by the talk even of the base.

For you were retreating, Brutus, you were retreating ; since our friends the Stoics deny that flight is becoming to a wise man.

I wish, Cn. Pompey, that you had either never formed an alliance with C. Cæsar, or had never broken it. The one course had become your dignity, the other your wisdom.

I say nothing about the loss of the greatest part of the army. Let this be put down to your ill luck.

I could wish that you would send as soon as possible the statues, and everything else which shall appear to you to be suitable to that place, and to my pursuits, and to your own elegant taste.

It is the office of the mind to make a good use of reason ; and the wise man's mind is ever so disposed that it makes the best use of reason.

For it is the characteristic of folly to see the faults of others, to forget its own.

To be led by the contemplation of important subjects to the desire of knowledge must be considered as the mark of truly great men.

Deceit seems to be the characteristic of the fox, violence of the lion : either is most unsuitable to a man, but deceit is deserving of the greater hatred.

It is not my way to give an account of such things.

As soon as ever we began to be our own masters, we came at once to surrender our arms.

We made peace with them when conquered ; we considered them to be under our protection.

### 71. *Genitive of Quality with Epithet.*

But do you receive clients of this kind, do you receive cases of this kind ?

In this matter both I and Calvisius, a man of great judgment, blame you every day.

Rudis (*N.* 197) sum omnino in noster poeta aut iners segnitia est, aut fastidium delicatus.

Sed tamen non arbitror est amicus non commoveo etiam improbus sermo.

Cedo enim, Brutus, cedo; quoniam Stoicus noster nego fugio sapiens. (*N.* 62. *C.* 2.)

Utinam, Cn. Pompeius, cum C. Cæsar societas aut nunquam coëo aut nunquam dirimo. Est (*perf.*) alter gravitas, alter prudentia tuus. (*N.* 275. 1.)

Mitto de amissus maximus pars (*N.* 235) exercitus. Est hic infelicitas tuus.

Volo et signum et ceteri, qui tu is locus et noster studium (*sing.*) et tuus elegantia est videtur, quamprimum mitto. (*N.* 275. 2.)

Munus animus est ratio bene utor; et sapiens animus ita semper sum affectus, ut ratio bene utor.

Est enim proprium stultitia alius vitium cerno, obliviscor suus (*gen.*).

Duco magnus (*comp.*) res contemplatio ad cupiditas scientia summus vir puto. (*N.* 162.)

Fraus quasi vulpecula, vis leo videtur: uterque homo alienus (*N.* 151. 2. *c.*), sed fraus odium dignus magnus.

Non est consuetudo meus (*N.* 163) talis res ratio reddo.

Quum primum arbitrium noster ~~sum~~ cepi, extemplo venio ad tradendus arma.

Pax cum victus facio; tutela noster duco. (*N.* 162 et 163.

#### 71. *Genitivus Qualitatis cum Epitheto.*

Sed hic modus (*N.* 166) vos cliens, hic modus causa recipio?

Hic de res et ego et Calvisius, homo magnus iudicium, tu accuso quotidie.

For I have undertaken a great and weighty subject, and one requiring (*one of*) very much ease.

That district was one of present, not perpetual abundance. The name of Appius however is of happier memory.

To wish to treat ornamentally subjects of that description is boyish; but to be able to explain them in a clear and perspicuous manner shows a learned and intelligent man. Devices of every kind on the part of the Gauls met the uncommon bravery of our soldiers.

That grove had in its centre fair pastures, where cattle of every sort, sacred to the goddess, were grazing without any keeper.

They chose Valerius, a man of approved worth and consular dignity.

He had betrothed his daughter to L. Icilius, a spirited man, and one of tried worth in the cause of the people.

I understand that the business is very great, and requires the greatest wisdom.

Nor can all be of so firm and steady a spirit against evil report, as Fabius was.

To this messenger, because, I suppose, he seemed a man of doubtful trustworthiness, nothing was answered by word of mouth.

72. *To the Genitive of Quality refer the Genitives of Value, Measure, Weight, Number, Age, Material, and the like.*

Were you, but a few men, all certainly of less value than Albius and Atrius are, were you going to snatch Spain from the Roman people?

He was cultivating a field of four acres.

Forty golden bowls of great weight were brought by them into the senate house.

That army was one of twenty thousand.

There was a field of barley there, ripe for the harvest.

The plunder of the town consisted of inferior slaves and things of little value.

He had charge of my valuable library.

They fortify the camp with a rampart twelve feet in height (*a rampart of twelve feet*).

Res enim magnus complector et gravis et multus otium.

Is regio præsens sum copia, non perpetuus.  
 Memoria tamen felix sum nomen Appius.

Iste modus (*N.* 166) res dico ornatè volo puerilis sum ; plane autem et perspicue expedio possum doctus et intelligens vir.

Singularis miles noster virtus consilium quisque modus Galli (*gen.*) occurro.

Lucus ille lætus in medium pascua habeo, ubi omnis genus sacer dea pascor (*sing.*) pecus sine ullus pastor.

Valerius spectatus virtus et consularis vir lego.

Despondeo filia L. Icilius, vir acer, et pro causa plebes expertus (*N.* 234. *C.* 2) virtus.

Intelligo permagnus sum negotium, et magnus consilium. (*N.* 11.)

Neque omnis tam firmus et constans animus contra adversus rumor sum possum, quam Fabius sum.

Hic nuntius, quia, credo, dubius fides videor, nihil vox respondeo.

72. *Ad Genitivum Qualitatis refer Genitivos Æstimationis, Dimensionis, Ponderis, Numeri, Ætatis, Materiæ, et similes.*

Vos, paucus homo, parvus certe omnis pretium quam Albius et Atrius sum, Hispania populus Romanus eripio? (*N.* 36.)

Quattuor jugera (*N.* 6. *C.*) colo ager.

Ab is quadraginta patera aureus magnus pondus in curia infero.

Viginti mille ille exercitus sum.

Ibi seges far (*N.* 168. 2) sum, maturus (*nom.*) messis.

Præda oppidum vilis mancipium ac parvus pretium res sum.

Hic meus bibliotheca (*N.* 5. *C.*) multus nummus tracto.

Castra munio vallum pes duodecim

That ship was smaller than one of two thousand amphoræ.

Thanks were given them for their munificence; and the bowl, which was of least weight, was accepted.

Every one took from home for himself provisions for three months.

His father bound Hannibal, when a boy of about nine, by an oath.

The gold and silver mines also were not being worked.

No ship was more than three hundred amphoræ in burden.

The rest of the army was a little more than twenty thousand strong.

73. *The Elliptic Genitives may be remarked, parvi, minoris, to which supply pretii. See Note 210.*

Obs. *Hither refer those Genitives, flocci, nauci, nihili, pensi, and the like.*

I know that the authority of that order has always been of great account with you.

For amongst all the nobility I hold no one in greater estimation.

Or shall the world possess all other things, this one thing, which is of the greatest value, shall it not possess?

But in what value is that state to be held, from which the good and wise are expelled?

They do not value the whole republic a straw.

Others have bought a statue for not less, or even for more.

In no place in that province was corn at so high a price as he fixed it at.

---

I had persuaded myself from youth that, in the pursuit of virtue, all bodily torments and all chances of death and banishment were to be thought but little of.

He taught that some of those things were to be valued more, and some less highly.

Is navis parvus sum (*supple* quam navis) duo mille amphora.  
(*N. 1. Obs.*)

Is gratiæ<sup>1</sup> ago pro munificentia; patera, qui pondus parvus sum, accipio.

Tres mensis cibaria se quisque domus effero.

Hannibal annus ferme novem jusjurandum (*N. 3*) pater adigo.

Metallum quoque aurum atque argentum non exerceo.  
(*N. 168.*)

Nullus navis plus quam trecenti amphora (*N. 1. Obs. 2*) sum. (*N. 216. 1. a.*)

Paullo plus viginti mille alius exercitus sum. (*N. 216. 1. b.*)

73. *Notentur Elliptici Genitivi*, parvi, minoris, minimi, magni, pluris, plurimi, tanti, quanti, maximi, *quibus supple* pretiū. Vide Notam 210.

Obs. *Huc refer Genitivos illos*, flocci, nauci, nihili, pensi, *similes*.

Scio is ordo auctoritas semper apud tu magnus sum.

Plus enim ex omnis nobilitas nemo facio.

An ceteri mundus habeo omnis, hic unus, qui plurimus sum, non habeo?

Quantus vero iste civitas aestimandus sum, ex qui bonus sapiensque pello?

Totus respublica floccus non facio.

Alius signum aut non minor aut etiam plus emo.

Nullus in locus is provincia (*gen.*) frumentum tantus sum, quantus ille aestimo.

Ego ab adolescentia suadeo in virtus persequendus omnis cruciatus corpus, omnis periculum mors atque exsilium parvus sum ducendus.

Ex is alius (*N. 170*) plus aestimo, alius minor doceo.

---

<sup>1</sup> This word, when combined with *ago*, is always in the plural.

For I deem it of very great consequence that my deed should be approved of by you.

But that third sentiment is the worst, that every man should be held by his friends at the same value as he holds himself.

Do not consider how much that runaway slave is worth; for he is of little value, who is now worth nothing.

They assert that that is easy for him, a man who cares for nothing.

I sell my corn for no more than others, perhaps even for less.

There every one was purchasing corn at just as great a price as he had sold it for at home.

Produce me a written statement, what money you amassed in the province of Sicily; from whom, or for how much you bought each article.

At how great a price did he buy that! but what is necessary is well bought at any price.

74. Interest and refert admit a Genitive. But see Note 277, 1 and 2.

He writes that it concerns the commonwealth and the general safety, that he should have a conference with Pompey.

All, whom it concerned, had come.

How was it of importance to Milo, that Clodius should be killed?

There is a treaty about peace; and we are treating, the very party to whose interest it chiefly is, that there should be peace.

It (*this*) has been to the interest of many states in Greece to preserve the ancient style of tunes.

75. The same Verbs, instead of the Genitives of Pronouns, use the Possessive cases, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cujâ*, agreeing with *re*.

He thinks that it concerns him, that I should write to you as often as possible.

Per (*N. 11. Obs.*) enim magnus æstimo tu factum noster probo.

Tertius vero ille sententia deterior, ut, quantus quisque se ipse facio (*subj.*), tantus fio ab amicus.

Nolo (*sing.*) specto, quantus sum fugitivus iste; parvus enim pretium sum, qui jam nihilum sum (*subj.*).

Is ille, qui nihil pensum (*N. 211*) sum (*subj.*), facilis sum affirmo.

Vendo meus frumentum non plus quam ceteri, fortasse etiam minor.

Ibi quisque tantusdem frumentum emo, quantus domus vendo.

Edo (*sing.*) ego scriptum, quis argentum in provincia Sicilia paro; unde quisque aut quantus emo.

Quantus is emo! sed quantus quantus, bene emo qui necesse sum.

74. Interest et refert *Genitivum admittunt*. Vide Notam 277.

Interest respublica et communis salus scribo, se cum Pompeius colloquor (*infin.*).

Omnis, qui interest (*imperf.*), venio.

Quis (*N. 119. Obs.*) Milo interest Clodius interficio? (*N. 278. 1.*)

De pax ago (*impers.*); agoque is, qui maxime (*N. 279*) interest pax sum.

Civitas hic (*N. 275. 1*) multus in Græcia interest, antiquus vox conservo modus.

75. *Eadem pro Genitivis Pronominum usurpant casus Possessivos*, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cuiâ cum re congruentes.

Puto interest suus ego ad tu quam sæpe (*N. 10. C. 2*) scribo.



It does not concern us more than it does you, that you should not revolt.

---

And that you should do this, I consider to be not only to my interest, but also to your own.

When anything concerns yourself, there are no auspices; when your friends, then you become religious.

Since no mistake could be made in these things, I did not add what in no way mattered to you.

76. *To these Verbs are added the Genitives of Value, tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, permagni.*

This happens I know not how, not by my fault indeed: but what does that matter, if nevertheless it happens?

It is greatly to the interest of the commonwealth, that all the forces should assemble at one spot.

---

I chose rather to do what my friend would think was so much to his interest.

It greatly concerns Cicero, or rather myself, or in good truth both of us, that I should be present at his lessons.

I thought that it greatly concerned the honour and glory of the state, that subjects so important and so famous should be comprised in Latin literature also.

It matters little that justice be administered impartially and carefully by yourself, unless the same shall be done by the rest of the judges.

It is of very great consequence, at what time this letter has been given to you.

77. *A Genitive of the Thing distributed is joined to Partitive<sup>1</sup> words, which as far as may be take the Gender of the Genitive. See Primer 139, C.*

77 A. *Adjectives and Partitive Pronouns.*

One of the consuls lost his army, the other sold it.

Of animals some belong to the land, others to the water.

Not one of the ships was able to keep its course.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Nostrum, vestrum* follow Partitives.

Non noster magis quam vester refert vos non rebello.

---

Qui ut facio, non meus solum, sed etiam tuus interest arbitror. (N. 278. 2.)

Quum tuus quis (N. 275. 1) interest, nullus auspicium sum; quum tuus, tum fio religiosus.

Quum in hic erratur non potest (*imper.*), non adscribo is qui tuus nihil refert.

76. *Adduntur his Verbis Genitivi Æstimationis*, tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, permagni.

Hic, nescio quomodo, accido, non meus quidem meritum : sed quantus is refert, si tamen accido?

Magnus interest respublica omnis copiae in unus locus (*acc.*) convenio.

---

Malo facio, qui meus familiaris tantus suus interest arbitror.

Magnus interest Cicero, vel meus potius, vel mehercule uterque, ego intervenio discens.

Magnus existimo interest ad (N. 277. 3) decus et ad laus civitas res tam gravis tamque præclarus Latinus etiam litteræ contineo.

Parvus refert abs tu ipse jus dico æquabiliter et diligenter, nisi idem ab reliquis judex fio.

Permagnus interest, qui tu hic tempus epistola reddo.

77. *Genitivus Rei distributæ Partitivis<sup>1</sup> adjungitur, quæ, quantum licet, Genitivi sumunt Genus.*

77 A. *Adjectiva et Pronomina Partitiva.*

Consul alter exercitus perdo, alter vendo. (N. 172.)

Bestia terrenus sum alius, alius aquatilis.

Nullus navis cursus teneo possum.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Nostram, vestram* Partitiva sequuntur.

Why do we alone of all men wage war against Perseus and the kingdom of the Macedonians?

Nor did they prefer any one of the citizens to that man.

Each of these two things will perhaps happen, certainly one or the other will.

Each of these three men says that the ship with its cargo is his.

They will salute kindly, they will address affably each one of us.

He set out with all the cavalry and the light-armed (*ones of the*) soldiers.

---

Meanwhile many prodigies began to be reported, most of which met with disbelief and contempt.

A few of the beasts, being driven fearlessly against the enemy, were causing a great slaughter.

But neither is there any fool who does not suffer from some one of these diseases.

Now Rome was so strong that it was a match for any one of the neighbouring states in war.

Which of us two, pray, Labienus, is the people's friend? you or I?

Which of us thought Ser. Sulla ought to be defended? which of these here present helped him?

Fabius settled the matter by a plan unpleasant to neither party.

The Ciminian forest was at that time impassable and dreaded, having been visited up to that day by no one even of the merchants.

Those of them, who had borne curule offices, sat down on ivory chairs.

They sent chosen senators to Porsena, that all mention of that subject might be finished for ever.

77 B. *Numerals, whether Cardinal or Ordinal: also princeps and medius.*

About eight hundred of the Gauls were killed.

Twenty-five thousand of the enemy were slain, eight thousand were taken.

Cur ego omnis solus bellum adversus Perseus (*N.* 5. *E*) et regnum Macedones gero ?

Nec civis quisquam ille vir præfero.

Hic fortasse uterque sum, alter (*N.* 171. *Obs.* 2. *b*) certe.

Navis (*N.* 2. *A.* 1) cum onus hic tres suus quisque (*N.* 172) sum dico.

Saluto benigne, comiter appello unus quisque ego. (*N.* 111. 2.)

Cum omnis equitatus expeditusque miles proficiscor.

---

Prodigium interim multus nuntio, qui plerique parum credo spernoque.

Paucus bestia, intrepidus in hostis actus, ingens strages edo.

Nec vero quisquam (*N.* 169. 2) stultus non hic morbus aliquis laboro.

Jam res Romanus adeo sum validus, ut quilibet finitimus civitas bellum par sum.

Uter (*N.* 172) ego tandem, Labienus, popularis sum ? tune an ego ?

Quis ego Ser. Sulla defendendus puto ? quis hic (*dat.*) hic adsum ?

Fabius consilium neuter pars (*N.* 169. 3) acerbus res expedio.

Silva tum sum Ciminus invius atque horrendus, nullus ad is dies ne mercator quidem (*N.* 303. 3) aditus.

Qui is curulis gero magistratus, eburneus sella sedeo.

Delectus Patres ad Porsena mitto, ut in perpetuus is res mentio finio.

77 B. *Numeralia, sive Cardinalia, sive Ordinalia* : item princeps, medius.

Octingenti ferme Galli occido.

Cædo hostis viginti quinque mille,<sup>1</sup> octo capio.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mille* and *millia* may be followed by a Genitive of any gender.

He was the first of the kings to leave off that ancient custom.

---

He has bought a thousand acres of Pilius.

Syphax arrived with fifty thousand foot and ten thousand horse.

He embezzled by false entries and donations seven hundred millions of sesterces.

All Gaul is divided into three parts; of which the Belgians inhabit one, the Aquitani another, and the Celts a third. Of all foreign nations Sicily was the first to seek the friendship and protection of the Roman people.

The Druids at a certain time of the year sit as judges in the territory of the Carnutes, which district is considered the middle of all Gaul.

77 c. *Comparative and Superlative Adjectives.*

On the other hand the elder patricians thought their own young men too impetuous.

Claudia was esteemed the most virtuous of the matrons.

Surrender to the Romans seemed the lightest of evils.

Lesius was the last of all the Campanians, who undertook the supreme magistracy.

---

Then injuries began to be inflicted on the people by the younger patricians.

Timæus says that this city is the greatest of Grecian, but the most beautiful of all cities.

All the most spirited of the young men present themselves in arms as volunteers: the rest of the youth also follow.

I cannot now make even so much as a kind promise to Nigidius, pre-eminently the most learned and pious of all men.

Did not Lysis thus educate the Theban Epaminondas, who was perhaps the very first man of all Greece?

77 d. *Superlative Adverbs.*

And first of all he divides the year into twelve months, according to the course of the moon.

This state is by far the most powerful of all Gaul.

---

Hic rex primus antiquus ille mos solvo.

---

Is mille (*N.* 15. 1) jugera de Pilius emo.

Syphax cum quinquaginta mille (*N.* 15) pedes, decem eques advenio.

Sestertius (*N.* 1) septies millies (*N.* 20) falsus perscriptio donatioque avertio.

Gallia sum omnis divisus in pars tres; qui unus incolo Belgæ, alius Aquitani, tertius Celtæ.

Omnis natio exterus princeps (*N.* 94. *Obs.*) Sicilia se ad amicitia fidesque populus Romanus applico.

Druides certus annus tempus in finis (*pl.*) Carnutes, qui regio totus Gallia medius habeo, consido. (*N.* 176.)

### 77 c. *Adjectiva Comparativa et Superlativa.*

Senex contra Patres nimis ferox suus credo juvenis.

Claudia matrona castus puto.

Levis malum deditio ad Romani videor.

Lesius summus magistratus ultimus (*N.* 94. *Obs.*) omnis Campani capio.

---

Inde plebs ab juvenis Patres injuria fio cœpi. (*N.* 38. *C. Obs.* 2.)

Hic urbs aio Timæus Græcus magnus, omnis autem sum pulcher.

Ferox quisque (*N.* 174) juvenis cum arma voluntarius adsum: sequor et cetera (*N.* 175) juvenis.

Nunc Nigidius, unus (*N.* 14. 2) omnis doctus et sanctus, ne benigne quidem polliceor possum.

Nonne ita instituo Lysis Thebanus Epaminondas, haud scio an summus vir unus omnis Græcia? (*N.* 176.)

### 77 d. *Adverbia Superlativa.*

Atque omnis primum ad cursus luna in duodecim mensis describo annus.

Hic civitas longe plurimum totus Gallia valeo.

---

And want of sleep, endured now for four days and three nights, was most of all exhausting them.  
 I do not trust the good faith of all whom I see around you, and least of all do I trust the Ætolians.

77 E. *Substantives Partitive and put Partitively.*

Thenceforth no one of the allies assisted the Roman state with greater bravery and fidelity.  
 Of those things, which were thought of, not one ought to have been done.

---

No one of you, who have been summoned to this assembly, wishes or dares to say anything.  
 But of all pursuits, from which any gain is made, nothing is better, more productive, or more pleasant than agriculture.  
 The chief men of the state besought him not to transact any business on that day.

78. *These Genitives, gentium, terrarum, and others, follow the local Adverbs, huc, eo, quo, ubi, and the like.*

Where in the world are we? in what city are we living?  
 In whatever part of the world these are, there is all the strength of the republic, or rather the republic itself.

---

The affair is urgent: but you are far distant.  
 He, who managed our affairs, is neither present here, nor do I know where in the world he is.  
 The care of nothing anywhere in the world, nay, not even at a distance, escaped the Romans.  
 The Athenian state had advanced to such a pitch of anger as to pass these decrees.  
 But indeed you do not appear to me even now to understand to what a pitch of madness you have advanced.  
 The prætors have not yet cast lots for the provinces: the matter is in the same position in which you left it.

Maximeque omnis vigilia (*pl.*) is conficio, per quadriduum jam et tres nox toleratus.

Non omnis credo fides, qui circa vos video, atque omnis minime Ætoli.

77 E. *Substantiva Partitiva et Partitive posita.*

Nemo inde socius res Romanus fortiter ac fideliter juvo.

Nihil sum faciendus (*N. 36*) iste qui cogito.

Nemo vos, qui in hic concilium (*N. 7. A*) advoco, quisquam dico volo aut audeo.

Omnis autem res, ex qui aliquis acquirō, nihil sum agricultura bonus, nihil uber, nihil dulcis. (*N. 176. 2.*)

Precor primores civitas (*N. 176*), ne quis (*R. 79*) is dies serius res gero.

78. *Hi Genitivi, gentium, terrarum, alique, sequuntur Adverbia Localia, huc, eo, quo, ubi, similia.*

Ubinam gens sum? in quis urbs vivo?

Hic ubicunque terra sum, ibi sum omnis respublica præsidium, vel potius ipse respublica.

Res sum in manus (*pl.*): tu autem absum longe gens.

Qui noster res dispenso, neque adsum istic, neque, ubi terra sum (*subj.*), scio.

Nullus usquam terra res cura Romani, ne longinquus (*nom.*) quidem (*N. 303. 3*), effugio.

Athenienses (*N. 109. 2*) civitas eo procedo ira (*pl.*), ut hic decerno.

Quin ego ne hodie quidem (*N. 303. 2*) scio videor (*pl.*), quo amentia progredior.

Provincia prætor nondum sortior: res idem sum locus (*N. 178*), qui relinquo (*sing.*).



79. *A Genitive of the Thing measured follows words of Quantity, both Substantives and Adverbs, and Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns.*

79 A. *Substantives and Adverbs.*

He will pay you one half of the expences.

We delivered up to the enemy our arms, in which there was now no hope.

But although there is enough of courage in that youth, there is too little of authority.

---

He sees nothing of his own anywhere: he lives on plunder.

They fly to Cæsar, and tell him that they have nothing left except the soil of the land.

I have had enough of honours, enough and too much of life.

You have then, he says, plenty of wood: return, and pull up the rampart.

There have been many; but part of them wished to be famous in the pomp, part in the battle.

79 B. *Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns.*

His last years had more of authority, but less of toil.

The rest of the night was given on both sides to sleep.

Of the Gauls no one transacts any business without a Roman citizen.

What danger has been undergone for eight months, what toil?

---

If one stake happens to be pulled up, it does not open much space, and it is very easy to place another in its stead.

Very great loss was sustained by the death of Minucius, a brave and energetic man.

In case he should wish more hostages, they engage to give them.

That affair also added a good deal of glory and authority to the general in the eyes of the soldiers.

**79. Genitivus Rei demensæ sequitur Vocabula Quantitatis sive Substantiva et Adverbia, sive Neutra Adjectiva et Pronomina.**

**79 A. Substantiva et Adverbia.**

Impensa (*sing.*) pars dimidius vos præsto.

Arma, in qui nihil jam auxilium sum, hostis (*sing.*) trado.

Sed in iste juvenis (*N. 6. F.*), quanquam animus satis, auctoritas parum sum.

Nihil usquam et us (*N. 179*) video: raptum vivo.

Fuga se ad Cæsar recipio, et demonstro se præter ager solum nihil sum reliquus. (*N. 179.*)

Satis ego honor, satis superque vita sum.

Habeo (*pl.*) igitur, inquam, affatim lignum (*pl.*): redeo, et vello vallum.

Multus sum; sed is partim in pompa, partim in acies illustris sum volo.

**79 B. Neutra Adjectiva et Pronomina.**

Is extremus ætas auctoritas multus habeo, labor vero parvus.

Reliquus nox utrinque quies do.

Nemo Galli sine civis Romanus quisquam (*N. 26. B. 1*) negotium gero.

Quis per octo mensis periculum, quis labor exhaurio (*sing.*)?

Si evello (*perf.*) forte unus ramus, nec locus multus aperio, et alius repono perfacilis sum.

Multus Minucius mors damnum accipio, fortis ac strenuus vir.

Si amplius volo obses, do polliceor.

Aliquantus is quoque res dux fama et auctoritas apud miles adjicio.

There was that much of consolation for the soldiers who had been lost in that battle.

Whence we may suppose that in the other Delphic oracles also there was something unfair.

The Carthaginians made subject to themselves all the land (*what of land there is*) between the Alps and the Apennines.

Three towers one after the other, and all the wall between them, had fallen with a great crash.

There is by no means so much protection in foreign aid, as there is danger from domestic treachery.

Whatever zeal, wisdom, exertion, and talent there is in me, all this I promise and make over to you and the Roman people.

The banquet was prolonged to a late hour of the night.

They enrolled two city legions to meet the uncertainties of war.

Two regular armies are enrolled for sudden emergencies.

#### THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

80. *A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles, which have a transitive force, especially if they signify skill, care, desire, or whatever is contrary to these. A Genitive is also joined to Verbs and Adjectives, which signify power, impotence, inculpation, innocence, condemnation, acquittal, memory, forgetfulness. (N. 107. B.)*

#### 80 A. Substantives.

Lucullus took great delight in the reading of books.

A war had arisen from the wrong done to the Sabine women.

---

Diseases of the mind are boundless desires for wealth, for glory, for power.

Is solatium sum pro amissus is praelium miles.

Quo licet existimo in alius quoque oraculum Delphicus aliquis non sincerus (*N.* 179) sum.

Pœnus (*sing.*), qui inter Alpes Apenninusque ager sum, suus ditio facio.

Tres deinceps turris, quantusque inter is murus sum, cum (*N.* 194. 1. *a*) fragor ingens procido.

Nequaquam tantus in externus auxilium (*pl.*) præsidium sum, quantus periculum fraus domesticus.

Ego, quisquis in ego sum studium, consilium, labor, ingenium, is omnis tu et populus Romanus polliceor ac defero.

In serus<sup>1</sup> nox convivium produco.

Duo legio urbanus ad incertus bellum scribo.

Ad subitus res duo justus scribo exercitus.

#### GENITIVUS OBJECTIVUS.

80. *Genitivus objective jungitur Substantivis, Adjectivis aut Participiis quibus transitiva quædam vis est; præsertim si significant—*

*Peritiam, curam, desiderium,  
Vel quidquid his contrarium.*

*Genitivus item adjungitur Verbis et Adjectivis quibus significatur—*

*Potentia et impotentia,  
Criminatio, innocentia,*

*Damnatio, absolutio,  
Memoria et oblitio.*

#### 80 A. Substantiva.

Lucullus delector mirifice lectio liber.

Ex injuria Sabinus mulier bellum orior.

Animus est morbus cupiditas immensus divitiæ, gloria, dominatio.

---

<sup>1</sup> This and the next two Sentences illustrate Note 181.

80 B. *Adjectives.* See Note 182.

Balbus, a man most skilled both in law and his duty, cannot decide otherwise.

Socrates makes himself out ignorant and unacquainted with all things.

You have always been covetous of glory and greedy of praise beyond other nations.

The soldiers, unmindful of all difficulties, advance against the overhanging line of the enemy.

I deny that any house there, I deny that any man is free from injury.

---

And if this news shall be brought, I will inform you of our plan.

They were uncertain of every thing, and in suspense about the consul's position.

Let him say that he was not unskilled in the law of treaties, not unacquainted with precedents, not ignorant of war.

The younger Fabia, being unused to that custom, was startled at this.

There was present at this conversation Crassus, who, as you know, is very much attached to me.

Put this down to Greek literature, of which it is known that he was very fond in his old age.

Being more eager for victory than peace, he granted Philip no future conference.

This is common to those desirous of power, and those lovers of ease whom I have mentioned.

You have a leader, mindful of you, forgetful of himself.

I know that I am charged with this disgraceful peace.

He wishes to impeach the absent Sthenius on a capital charge.

The gods ought to care for you, as alone guiltless of the blame of this day's disaster.

Would you have dismissed the guard of the Roman people without the command of the people and senate, if you had been in your right mind (*master of your mind*)?

Pleminius, being unable to control his anger, thought that the injury done to him had been neglected by Scipio and made too little of.

80 B. *Adjectiva.*

Balbus, homo et jus et officium peritus, non possum aliter judico.

Socrates se omnis res inscius fingo et rudis.

Semper appetens gloria præter ceteri gens atque avidus laus sum.

Miles (*sing.*), omnis immemor difficultas, vado (*sing.*) adversus imminens hostis acies.

Nego domus ullus ibi, nego quisquam homo expers injuria sum. (*N.* 169. 2 et 183.)

Qui (*pl.*) si affero (*N.* 34. 2), facio tu consilium noster certus.

Incertus res omnis sum, suspensusque de status consul.

Dico sui non imperitus fœdus (*sing.*), non rudis exemplum, non ignarus bellum sum.

Ad hic, mos is insuetus, expaveo parvus (*N.* 169. 2) Fabia.

Intersum hic sermo Crassus, ego (*pl.*), ut scio, studiosus.

Attribuo (*sing.* *N.* 305. 2) hic Græcus litteræ, qui constat is perstudiosus sum in senectus.

Victoria quam pax avidus, colloquium postea Philippus non do.

Hic communis sum potentia cupidus cum (*N.* 150) is, qui dico, otiosus.

Habeo dux, memor vos, oblitus sui.

Scio ego reus sum hic ignominiosus pax.

Absens Sthenius res capitalis reus facio volo.

Tu unus insons ~~culpæ~~ clades hodiernus deus respicio debeo.

Præsidium tu ~~pópulus~~ Romanus injussu populus senatusque dimitto, si (*subj.*) tuus mens compos sum?

Pleminius, impotens ira, negligo ab Scipio ac nimis leviter fero suus injuria reor.

He said that he would be clear of all blame, but yet a sharer in all that happened.

We speak of Alexander not yet sunk in prosperity, which no one was more unable to bear.

They all in turn pledge their word: they console her sick at heart.

*Here see Note 185.*

80 c. *Verbal Adjectives and Participles.* (N. 13.)

No age has been more fruitful of virtues.

That nation is by no means negligent of religion.

Quintus Pompeius was proconsul, a most virtuous man and one most attentive to every duty.

Though good citizens, fond of our country, we shall find the sea dangerous.

---

They say that he was able to take a very great quantity of food and wine.

Nothing is more covetous of things like itself, nothing more greedy, than nature.

Since Pomponius, a man very fond of me, was setting out to you, I thought I ought to write something.

Trebatius has come, a man very fond of both of us.

Piso and Gabinius, men fearing the laws and judicial decisions, said that they were fettered by that fellow's law.

The sun was scorching with fierce warmth the bodies of the Gauls, which are by no means capable of enduring heat.

Let not one of you suppose that I have come hither forgetful of my position.

80 d. *Verbs.* (See Notes 186, 187.)

These benefits you have from me, whom you accuse of treachery.

I perceive that you were not acquitted of baseness, but that they were found guilty of murder.

Then the new magistrate condemns them in their absence to a capital punishment.

The wolf of Mars has reminded us of the race of Mars and of our founder.

Sui omnis culpa exsors (*N.* 183), omnis tamen eventus particeps sum dico.

Loquor de Alexander nondum mersus secundus res, qui nemo intolerans sum.

Do ordo omnis fides: consolor æger animus. (*N.* 184.)

*Hic vide Notam 185.*

80 c. *Participia et Verbalia.*

Nullus ætas virtus ferax sum.

Religio haudquaquam negligens is gens sum.

Q. Pompeius proconsul sum, castus vir atque omnis officium diligens. (*N.* 182.)

Bonus civis, amans patria, mare infestus habeo.

---

Cibus vinumque is capax sum fero. (*N.* 57.)

Nihil sum appetens similis se, nihil rapax, quam natura.

Quum Pomponius, homo amans ego (*pl. N.* 111. 1), ad tu, proficiscor, aliquis ego scribendus puto.

Trebatius venio, homo uterque ego (*N.* 111. 2) amans.

Piso et Gabinius, homo lex iudiciumque metuens, sui lex iste impedio dico.

Sol ingens ardor torreo minime patiens æstus corpus Galli.

Nemo vos (*N.* 111) conditio meus oblitus (*N.* 13. 1) ego huc procedo puto.

80 d. *Verba.*

Hic a ego beneficium habeo (*pl.*), qui proditio insimulo.

Video non tu absolve improbitas, sed ille damno cædes.

Novus deinde magistratus capitalis poena is absens damno.

Martius (*N.* 48) lupus gens ego Martius et conditor noster admoneo.



The place itself spoke of Camillus.

---

There were some to accuse the king on this day of rashness, and the consul of slowness.

Nor do we doubt that the accused is charged with a great crime.

But I do not put in a denial, and I convict you in this very thing not only of want of good-breeding, but also of madness.

The senate neither acquitted the king of that crime, nor charged him with it.

He shows that he ought to be found guilty of the height of baseness, if he did not hold their life dearer than his own safety.

The tribunes were moderate in the fine: although they had impeached him for his life, they named two thousand asses as his fine when condemned.

Some wished to sentence him to death, others to fine him a sum of money.

The state had been twice adjudged to discharge the same vow (i.e. *had twice gained the object of its vow*).

I am for the farmer, I wish Apronius to be condemned to pay eight-fold.

Did not those nuptial flutes remind you of his marriage?

They sent ambassadors to the tyrant, to remind him of his treaty with the Romans.

81. Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, *are put objectively*; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, *subjectively*. (See Notes 110, 111.)

82. *The Personal Genitive, contained in the Possessive Pronoun, takes another Genitive agreeing with or in apposition to itself.*

For the fault of me alone, and perhaps that of Lælius, cannot be corrected.

They remained here for the slaughter of you all.

Give thanks to your own personal valour.

---

To this he answers that these wars had been carried on till that day under his own auspices alone.

They were unable by their own unaided strength to bear so great a weight of war.

Locus ipse admoneo Camillus. (*N. 187. Obs. 1.*)

Sum (*perf.*), qui hic dies rex temeritas, consul segnitia accuso.

Nec dubito, quin magnus facinus reus arguo.

At ego non nego, tuque in iste ipse convinco non inhumanitas solum, sed etiam amentia.

Senatus nec libero is culpa rex, nec arguo.

Edoceo summus sui iniquitas condemno debeo, nisi is vita suus salus habeo (*subj.*) carus.

In mulcta tempero tribunus: quum caput anquiro, duo mille æs damnatus (*dat.*) mulcta dico.

Alius is caput damno, alius pecunia (*ablat.*) mulcto volo.

Bis idem votum damno respublica.

Faveo arator, cupio octuplum (*N. 186. Obs. 2*) damno Apronius.

Non ille tu nuptialis tibia is matrimonium commoneo?

Ad tyrannus legatus mitto, qui admoneo fœdus Romanus. (*N. 187. Obs. 2.*)

81. Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, *objective ponuntur*; *subjective* meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester. (Vide Notas 110, 111.)

82. *Genitivus Subjectivus in Possessivo latens Genitivum sibi congruentem recipit.*

Solus enim meus peccatum corripi non possum (*sing.*), et fortasse Lælius.

Ad vester omnis cædes hic resisto.

Vester ipse virtus gratia (*pl.*) ago.

Ad is respondeo hic bellum suus unus auspicium (*sing.*) gestus ad is dies sum. (*N. 37. 2.*)

Suismet (*N. 59. Obs. 2*) ipse vis (*N. 6. G.*) tolero tantus moles bellum non possum.

It will be seen by the fortunes of us two, how much a Latin knight excels a Roman.

My name, when I was absent, was an honour to this man. It concerns me as an orator.

83. Memini, reminiscor, recordor, obliviscor, *admit a Genitive or Accusative.*

83 A. *They sometimes govern a Genitive.* (N. 188. 1.)

I both remember human weakness, and I think of the power of fortune.

Let him remember both the old disaster of the Roman people and the ancient valour of the Heivetii.

For I remember, I remember, nor shall I ever forget that night.

Forget slaughter and conflagrations.

---

According to the advice of the old proverb, I remember the living; and yet I may not forget Epicurus, even if I were to wish it.

Forgive me, if, through obedience to his wishes, I shall appear to have too slight a remembrance of your firmness. He himself will certainly acknowledge, and will recollect with some pain his crimes.

Does not the battle at lake Regillus occur to your minds? have you so completely forgotten both your old defeats and our kindnesses towards you?

83 B. *They sometimes govern an Accusative.* (N. 188. 2.)

You can well remember his old age.

Recollect therefore, Antony, that day.

He suddenly forgot the whole case.

---

We remembered Cinna too powerful, and Sulla afterwards supreme.

I bethink myself of all the steps of your life, and I consider your manner of living and your pursuits.

Recollect those things which are worthy of your character. But it is not enough that I remember this: I hope that you too, who are wont to forget nothing, except injuries, call to mind and recollect something about his kindness when quæstor.

Noster duo eventus (*sing.*) cerno, quantum eques Latinus  
Romanus præsto.

Hic nomen meus absens honor sum.

Interest meus orator.

83. Memini, reminiscor, recordor, obliviscor, *Genitivum*  
*vel Accusativum admittunt.*

83 A. *Genitivum interdum regunt.*

Et humanus infirmitas memini, et vis fortuna reputo.

Reminiscor et vetus incommodum populus Romanus et pristinus  
virtus Helvetii.

Memini enim, memini, neque unquam obliviscor nox ille.

Obliviscor (*sing.*) cædes atque incendium.

Vetus proverbium admonitu, vivus memini; nec tamen  
Epicurus licet obliviscor, si cupio. (*N. 188. 1.*)

Ego ignosco, si, ille voluntas obtemperans, minus videor  
memini constantia tuus.

Ipse certe agnosco, et cum aliquis dolor flagitium suus  
recordor. (*N. 188. Obs.*)

Non venio in mens pugna apud Regillus lacus? adeo et  
clades vester vetus et beneficium noster erga vos obli-  
viscor?

83 B. *Accusativum interdum regunt.*

Is senectus probe memini possum (*pl.*).

Recordor igitur ille, Antonius, dies. (*N. 6. K. 1. a.*)

Subito totus causa obliviscor.

Memini Cinna nimis potens, Sulla postea dominans.  
(*N. 188. 2.*)

Omnis gradus ætas recordor tuus, vitæque tuus (*N. 91*) ac  
studium considero.

Is reminiscor, qui dignus tuus persona sum.

Sed parum sum ego hic memini: spero etiam tu, qui obli-  
viscor nihil soleo, nisi injuria, aliquis de hic quæstorius  
officium (*sing.*) reminiscens recordor.

84. Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet, and miseret, *impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative*.<sup>1</sup>

Obs. *Add to these* suppuget, pertædet, miseretur. See also Note 189. 2.

I am not only sorry, but ashamed of my folly.  
Wherefore I shall never repent of my wish, I do repent of  
my resolution.  
Neither were they weary of liberty.  
I pity the very walls and roofs.  
I gave up the use of my books, because I was somewhat  
ashamed of them

---

If nothing else shames us, do not even these citizens, whom  
our fathers sent as colonists to Sinuessa ?  
What is it, Hanno ? do you even now repent of the war that  
we have undertaken against the Romans ?  
But it is incredible how tired I am of the business.  
We feel more compassion for those who do not ask our pity,  
than for those who loudly demand it.  
You desired decemvirs ; we suffered them to be appointed.  
You got quite weary of decemvirs ; they resigned their  
office.  
Cæsar, beware lest you pardon ; beware lest you pity  
brothers, praying for a brother's safety.  
Are you not ashamed to dwell so long in this house ?  
I have never repented of having withdrawn from the war.

85. Misereor, miseresco, *take a Genitive* ; miseror, com-  
miseror, *an Accusative*. See Note 189.

Forgive our fear, and have pity on the times.  
Listen, judges, and at length have pity on the allies.

---

The immortal gods, in pity to the Roman name, spared the  
guiltless armies: they punished the rashness of the consuls  
with the loss of their own lives.  
I cannot sufficiently compassionate either the common con-  
dition of us all, or the end and fate of this man.

---

<sup>1</sup> Instead of the Genitive an Infinitive is sometimes used.

84. Piget, pudet, pœnitet, tædet, *atque* miseret, *impersonalia*, *Genitivum capiunt cum Accusativo*.

Obs. *Adde his* suppuget, pertædet, miseretur.

Ego non solum piget stultitia meus, sed etiam pudet.  
Quare voluntas ego meus nunquam pœnitet, consilium pœnitet.

Neque is libertas tædet (*imperf.*).

Ego miseret paries ipse atque tectum.

Liber usus dimitto, quod is ego suppuget (*imperf.*).

---

Si nullus alter ego, ne civis quidem hic pudet, qui Sinuessa colonus pater pater mitto?

Quis sum, Hanno? etiam nunc pœnitet bellum susceptus adversus Romani? (*N. 118. A.*)

Sed sum incredibilis, quam ego negotium tædet.

Is ego magis miseret, qui noster misericordia non requiro, quam qui ille effligito.

Decemvir desidero; creio patior. Decemvir vos pertædet (*N. 276. 2*); ab eo magistratus.

• •  
Cæsar, caveo ignosco; caveo tu frater, pro frater salus obsecrans, miseretur.

Hic tu in domus (*N. 271. 4*) tamdiu deversor non pudet?

Ego discedo ab arma nunquam pœnitet.

85. Misereor, miseresco, *Genitivum capiunt*; miseror, commiseror, *Accusativum*.

Ignosco (*sing.*) timor noster, et misereor tempus (*sing.*).

Audio, iudex, et aliquando misereor socius.

---

Deus immortalis, miseritus nomen Romanus, parco innoxius exercitus: temeritas consul ipse caput damno. (*N. 186. 2.*)

Non queo satis neque communis omnis ego conditio neque hic eventus fortunaque miseror. (*N. 302. Obs. 2.*)

## ON CASES OUT OF THE SENTENCE.

86. *The Vocative stands out of the Sentence either without an Interjection or with an Interjection.*

I now address you, Scipio, and you, Metellus.  
 This is the battle, soldiers, which you demanded.  
 What sayest thou, O excellent guardian and defender of the province?  
 O my friend Furnius, how clearly do you not understand your own cause!  
 O Caius Caesar, what a deliverance hast thou brought! how unforeseen! how sudden!  
 Immortal gods forfend! how strange and how great was that violence! how unexpected! how sudden!

Lucullus' speech, Catulus, had a strong effect on me.  
 I think that your fathers, P. Scipio and C. Lælius, are still alive.

These evils, O most foolish Æetes, you have brought on yourself.

The one wishes to live long, the other has lived long. Although, good heavens! what is there long in the life of man?

O Philosophy, thou guide of life! O thou searcher out of virtue, and expeller of vices! thou hast been the inventress of laws; thou hast been the mistress of morals and education.

O obscure, vile, and base one! O forgetful of thy father's family, scarce mindful of thy mother's! how mean, low, and sordid is this your deed!

But, miserable me! with what pain have I said this! Alas Postumus! art thou the son of Curius?

But, ho you! what are you about? what is being done?

87. *The Nominative and the Accusative are used in exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection.*

87. A. En and ecce, o, ah, heu, hem, proh, govern a Nominative. See Note 123.

Lo the day of election! the first class is called.

## DE CASIBUS EXTRA SENTENTIAM.

86. *Vocativus extra Sententiam stat vel sine Interjectione, vel cum Interjectione.*

Tu nunc appello, Scipio, tu, Metellus.

Hic sum, miles, pugna, qui posco.

Quis aio, bonus custos defensorque provincia?

O meus Furnius, quam tu causa tuus non novi! (N. 38. B. 1.)

O Caius Cæsar qui (N. 25) tu salus affero! quam improvisus! quam repentinus!

Proh deus immortalis! qui sum ille, quantus vis! quam inexpectatus! quam repentinus!

Ego, Catulus, oratio Lucullus vehementer moveo.

Ego vester pater, P. Scipio, tuque, C. Lælius, vivo arbitrator.

Hic malum, o stultus Æetes (N. 5. B. 2), ipse tu addo.

Ille volo diu vivo, hic diu vivo. Quanquam, o deus bonus! quis sum in homo vita diu?

O vita Philosophia dux! o virtus indagatrix, expultrixque vitium! tu inventrix lex, tu magistra mos et disciplina sum. (N. 105.)

O tenebræ, o lutum, o sordes! O paternus genus oblitus, maternus vix memor! quam humilis, demissus, et sordidus sum istic (N. 21. Obs.) factum!

Sed, miser ego! quantus hic (pl.) dico cum dolor! Hem Postumus! tune sum Curius filius?

Sed, heus tu! quis ago? equis fio? (N. 25.)

87. *Nominativus et Accusativus in exclamando usurpantur vel sine Interjectione vel cum Interjectione.*

87<sup>a</sup>. *Nominativum regunt en et ecce, o, ah, heu, hem* proh.

Ecce comitia (N. 7. B.) dies! primus classis voco.



When, being brought into the senate house, he had recounted this same tale, behold another miracle!

---

Behold the man to whom you are to entrust your children! see his memory of his dead friend! see his regard for the opinion of the living!

Lo that storm, sudden and unforeseen dismay, and fear about his deeds forced upon you!

He had left the city: he was going to Greece; when lo suddenly a letter from Domitius to him, and one from him to the consuls!

87 B. En and ecce, o (N. 126), ah, heu, hem, proh, *govern an Accusative*.

Lo a wretched man! if pain is the greatest evil, he cannot be called otherwise.

O wretched and unhappy day! O false hope! O fleeting fortune! O blind ambition! how quickly have all those things passed away!

O glorious day, when I shall set out for that divine assembly and multitude of souls!

---

O difficult and inexplicable matter, you say! But yet it is to be explained.

O monstrous boldness! did you dare to show your most shameless face to the household gods of that dwelling?

O excellent guardian of the sheep, as they say, a wolf!

O lost, O ruined me! why should I now ask this of you?

O happy that land which shall receive this man: ungrateful this land, if it shall banish him: wretched, if it shall lose him!

Unhappy me! am I now comparing myself with this plague and disgrace?

Alas me miserable! why am I compelled to blame the senate, which I have always praised?

To arms, and, your honour forfend, citizens! he loudly cries: the citadel is taken by the enemy; haste, defend it.

In curia delatus idem ille (*pl.*) quum enarro (*subj.*), ecce alius miraculum!

En qui tuus liberi committo (*subj.*)! en memoria mortuus sodalis! en metus vivus existimatio!

Ecce ille tempestas, subitus atque improvisus formido, terror injectus tu de is actum!

Urbs relinquo: eo in Græcia. Ecce subito litteræ Domitius (*gen.*) ad ille, ipse ad consul!

87 B. *Accusativum regunt en et* ecce, o, ah, heu, hem, proh.

En miser homo! si dolor summus malum sum, dico aliter non possum. (*N.* 310.)

O miser et infelix dies! o falsus spes! o volucer fortuna!  
o cæcus cupiditas! quam cito ille omnis prætereo!

O præclarus dies, quum ad ille divinus animus concilium (*N.* 7. A) cæsusque proficiscor!

O res, inquam, difficilis et inexplicabilis! Atqui explicandus sum.

O audacia immanis! tu ille ædes deus penates os importunus ostendo audeo?

O præclarus custos ovis, ut aio (*N.* 57), lupus!

O ego perditus, o afflictus! quid nunc hic tu rogo?

O terra ille beatus, qui hic vir excipio (*N.* 34. 1): hic ingratus, si ejicio: miser, si amitto!<sup>1</sup>

Miser ego (*N.* 127)! cum hic ego nunc pestis atque labes confero?

Heu ego miser! cur senatus cogo, qui laudo semper, reprehendo?

Ad arma, et proh vester fides, civis! clamito: arx ab hostis (*pl.*) capio; eo, defendo.

<sup>1</sup> Compare this and the preceding Sentences, and also some under Rule 87 C, with Note 126.

88. *So the Dative is put with hei, vae.* Note 128.

Alas me! alas me! this same flattery has ruined him.  
Woe to him who has so carelessly watched the gate!

Woe is me! now you too are helping his madness.  
A sword was added to the weight by the insolent Gaul;  
and words were heard intolerable to Romans, that it was  
woe to the conquered.

#### ON THE VERB INFINITE.

*The Infinitive with its Gerunds and Supines makes a Substantive of the Verb.*

89. *The Infinitive stands:—*

1. *Substantively, for Nominative or Accusative.*

To betray one's country is a sin.  
They think that to commit this to writing is unlawful.

For what is so absurd as to be delighted with many trifles?  
Is it not therefore better to die a thousand times, than not  
to be able to live in one's own country without the pro-  
tection of armed men?

The whole of this pursuit, namely philosophy, displeases  
some, and those not very unlearned men.

He held it enough to prevent the enemy from plundering.  
They say that there is positively no difference between the  
best health and the most severe sickness.

2. *Predicatively, in narration for a Finite Verb.* See  
Primer, p. 140, Note A.

The magistrates begin to wonder, and to seek for the  
author of the sudden joy.

Meanwhile many prodigies began to be reported.

Now the youth himself, now the father, begin to fall at  
the knees and to deprecate the anger of the dictator.

When Catulus had said these things, they all began to look  
at me.

88. *Ita Dativus ponitur cum hei, vae.*

Hei ego ! hei ego ! istic ille perdo assentatio.

Vae ille qui tam indiligenter observo janua !

Hei ego ! jam tu quoque hic adjuvo insania.

Addo ab insolens Gallus pondus gladius ; audioque intol-  
randus Romani vox (*sing.*), vae victus sum. (*N.* 128.)

## DE VERBO INFINITO.

*Infinitivus cum Gerundiis et Supinis Substantivum Verbi efficit.*

89. *Infinitivum stat :—*1. *Substantive pro Nominativo vel Accusativo.*

Peccatum sum patria prodo.

Nefas sum existimo is litteræ mando.

Quis enim tam absurdus quam delecto multus inanis res ?

Nonne (*N.* 43) igitur millies pereo sum bonus, quam in  
suus civitas sine armatus præsidium non possum vivo ?

Quidam, et is quidem non admodum indoctus, totus hic  
displiceo, philosophor.

Satis habeo in præsentia hostis rapina (*pl.*) prohibeo.

Inter bene valeo et graviter ægroto nihil prorsus dico  
intersum.

2. *Prædicative in narrando pro Verbo Finito.*

Miror magistratus, et quæro (*N.* 112) auctor repentinus  
lætitia.

Prodigium interim multus nuntio.

Jam ipse adolescens, jam pater, procumbo ad genu et ira  
deprecor dictator.

Hic quum dico (*N.* 322) Catulus, ego omnis intueor.

3. *Objectively, with Accusative of the Subject.* For Examples see Rule 10 and Part III. Examples for *Enunciatio Obliqua*.

4. *Carrying on the Construction of a Verb or Adjective.* See Primer, p. 140, Note B. 1. For Examples see Part II.

*Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive.*

90. *The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions.* See Note 284.

We do not consider the knowledge of these things necessary for living happily.

By those words he incited peaceable states to revolt.

---

That soul of yours was never content with these narrow bounds which nature has given us to live in, and always burned with the love of immortality.

The army, favourable to the cause of its commander and hostile to the consul, was encouraging him to disobey. He can use words pleasant to hear, and thoughts adapted to convince.

These questions are very easy to be decided (*to decide*).

Never was the same character more suited to two most opposite things, obedience and command.

91. *The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives.* (N. 107. B.)

Philosophers even after death teach by their books those who are desirous of learning.

They say that Cassius has changed his purpose of going to Alexandria.

I know that there has been a more honourable time for dying.

There was not an end before night of the flight and pursuit.

---

I easily understood that in all this matter I was not satisfying men who were desirous of war.

Being unaccustomed to sailing, he feared the sea.

3. *Objective, cum Accusativo Subjecti.*4. *Prolata Constructione Verbi vel Adjectivi.*

*Infinitivi Casus sunt Gerundia et Supina.*

90. *Accusativus Gerundii Præpositionibus adjungitur.*

Cognitio hic res ad beate vivo necessarius non duco.

Ille vox ad rebello pacatus populus incito.

Iste tuus animus nunquam hic angustiae, qui natura ego ad vivo do, contentus sum, semperque immortalitas amor flagro.

Exercitus, favens imperator causa et consul infestus, animus (pl.) ad non pareo addo.

Verbum ad audio jucundus (N. 296. B. 2) et sententia ad probo accommodatus utor possum.

Hic ad judico sum facilis. (N. 288.)

Nunquam ingenium idem ad res diversus, pareo atque impero, habilis sum. (N. 283.)

91. *Genitivus Gerundii Substantivis et Adjectivis additur.*

Philosophus etiam post mors studiosus disco liber suus doceo.

Cassius aio consilium Alexandria eo muto.

Scio sum honestus morior (N. 108) tempus.

Fuga sequorque non ante nox finis sum. (N. 283.)

Ego ego in hic omnis causa facile intelligo pugno cupidus homo non satisfacio.

Insuetus (N. 182) navigo mare timeo.

The nation which dwells near that spot, on account of the loudness of the sound, wants the sense of hearing.  
Who knows not that the hope of impunity is the greatest temptation to sin?  
But this fear was also his reason for moving earlier from winter quarters.  
But he has left himself neither the means of denying, nor the possibility of defending those things.

92. *The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs.* (See N. 286.)

You were neither able to pay (*equal to paying*), nor did you think that you would be safe.

---

You assigned too large expences to the legates, although the states were not capable of making payment.

93. *The Ablative of the Gerund is of Cause or Manner, or is joined to a Preposition.* (Note 287.)

By coming hither you have saved the army; by breaking forth hence save your own selves.  
Socrates by questions and interrogations used to elicit the opinions of those with whom he was discoursing.  
He strengthened that conspiracy by his disbelief of it.  
Do you think that he will be more modest when (*in*) making his requests in person?

---

The Roman state has increased by daring and action, not by these slow counsels, which the timid call cautious.  
It is folly to think that the war can be finished by sitting still, or by vows.  
And in short all great and noble tasks become endurable by being despised (*by our despising them*).  
He spent four hours, as much of the day as was left, in talking.  
Has a thirsty man, I ask, pleasure in drinking? Who, you say, could deny that?  
Nor indeed in philosophy did Plato's copiousness and dignity deter Aristotle from writing.

Is gens, qui ille locus accolo (*N. 155. Obs.*), propter magnitudo sonitus sensus audio careo.

Quis ignoro magnus illecebra sum pecco (*N. 108*) impunitas spes?

Ceterum hic quoque is timor causa sum mature moveo ex hiberna.

Is autem res nullus sui neque infitior ratio neque defendo facultas relinquo. (*N. 285.*)

92. *Dativus Gerundii Nominibus et Verbis additur.*

Tu nec solvo sum (*supple par*), nec tu incolumis sum puto.

---

Sumptus decerno legatus nimis magnus, quum solvo civitas non sum.

93. *Ablativus Gerundii Causæ vel Modi est, aut Prepositioni jungitur.*

Venio huc exercitus servo; erumpo hinc vosmet ipse (*acc.*) servo. (*N. 177. 1.*)

Socrates percunctor atque interrogo elicio soleo is opinio, qui cum dissero.

Is conjuratio non crêdo corrobore.

Verecundusne coram puto in postulo sum?

---

Audeo agoque res Romanus cresco, non hic segnis consilium, qui timidus cautus voco.

Stultitia sum sedeo aut votum debello credo possum. (*N. 283.*)

Omninoque omnis clarus et nobilitatus labor contemno fio tolerabilis. (*N. 288.*)

Quattuor hora, quantum supersum dies, dico absumo.

Sumne, quæso, sitiens in bibo voluptas? Quis iste (*pl.*), inquam, possum (*pres.*) nego?

Nec vero Aristoteles in philosophia deterreo a scribo amplitudo Plato.



They consider the pleasure, which they derive from learning, as a compensation for the greatest cares and labours.

Thus he compelled Verminas, who was almost treading on his steps, to desist from pursuit.

*94. The Supine in um is an Accusative after Verbs of Motion.*

The war being finished, the chief men of the states came together to Cæsar to offer their congratulations.

He gives his daughter to Mamilius in marriage (*to be married*).

---

The children of Ancus had gone to live in exile at Suessa Pometia.

He sends men acquainted with the Oscan language, to see what is being done.

Two ambassadors came, having been sent to observe and inquire into those matters.

All rose up together, and received that old man to a seat.

*95. The Supine in u is for an Ablative of Respect.*

I will pass over every thing which shall appear to me disgraceful to be spoken.

I know other things more pleasant than these to say.

O fact shameful not only to be seen, but even to be heard of!

---

Not to believe those, who are descended from the gods, is a thing difficult to be done.

That, like most things, was easier to say than to do.

Having nowhere dared anything worthy of relation, they agreed, in return for two months' pay and corn, upon a truce for thirty days.

You see that it is monstrous to say that such an old age was wretched.

Nor does he proceed further in narration than to say what is necessary to be known.

Cum magnus cura et labor compenso is, qui ex disco capio, voluptas.

Ita Verminas, prope vestigium instans, absisto (N. 287. 2) sequor cogo.

94. *Supinum in um Accusativus est post Verba Motus.*

Bellum perfectus, princeps civitas ad Cæsar gratulor convenio.

Mamilius filia nubo do. (N. 295.)

---

Ancus liberi Suessa Pometia exsulo eo.

Gnarus Oscus lingua exploro, quis ago, mitto.

Duo legatus venio, speculor missus inquiroque de is res.

Consurgo omnis, et senex ille sedeo recipio. (N. 295.)

95. *Supinum in u pro Ablativo Respectus est.*

Omnis prætereo, qui ego turpis dico videor.

Hic ego gratus alius dico (N. 297) scio.

O res (acc.) non modo video fœdus, sed etiam audio !

---

Difficilis (N. 296. B. 1) sum facio a deus ortus fides non habeo.

Is dico, quam res, ut plerique, facilis sum. (N. 283.)

Nihil usquam dico dignus ausus, triginta dies indutiæ paciscor bimestris stipendium frumentumque.

Video (pl.) nefas sum dico miser sum talis senectus.

Nec longe, quam qui scio est opus (N. 206. 1. a), in narro procedo.

96. *The Infinitive, with Gerunds, Participles, and Supine in um, governs the same Case as the Verb Finite.*

96 A. *The Infinitive.* For examples see Part II. Rule on the Prolate Infinitive.

96 B. *Participles.*

There is a long train after me of others seeking the same distinction.

By obeying my precepts and advice, you will show yourself a most excellent citizen and an exemplary consul.

He says that the Macedonians are free, enjoying their own laws.

At length the Germans, having gained the top of the ridge, drive the enemy from their post.

The land of the Tarquinii, which was between the city and the Tiber, having been consecrated to Mars, was thenceforth called (*was thenceforth*) the Campus Martius.

He returns to his country, a citizen not valued at three hundred sesterces.

Despairing of victory, I at first began to urge peace.

When Antony was placing a diadem on Cæsar, he turned aside, and by a groan indicated what a hatred he had of slavery.

What need have I of my home itself, if excluded from (*if wanting*) the forum?

He marches to the lower sea, to attack Neapolis (*Naples*).

That event did not at all diminish the courage of a man who was used to war, and who had experienced many turns of fortune.

They pray and entreat them, in pity to the Athenians to undertake the war.

And so valuing your judgment highly, and through respect for it, I collected myself.

Then he, having been asked his opinion, is said to have spoken thus.

It was agreed that on an appointed day they should call all the multitude together, to expel the Macedonian garrisons from the citadels.

96. *Infinitivum, cum Gerundiis, Participiis, et Supino in um, eosdem Casus regit ac Verbum Finitum.*

96 A. *Infinitivum.*

96 B. *Participia.*<sup>1</sup>

Longus post ego ordo sum idem peto decus.

Meus præceptum et consilium obtempero (*pres. particip.*),  
præstans tu civis et singularis consul præbeo.

Liber sum aio Macedones (*N. 5. H. 1. a*), utor lex suus.

Tandem Germani, summus jugum (*N. 49*) nanciscor, hostis  
(*pl.*) locus depello.

Ager Tarquinii, qui inter urbs ac Tiberis (*N. 5. G. 1*) sum,  
consecro Mars, Martius deinde Campus sum.

Redeo in patria, trecenti nummus non æstimo civis.

---

Despero victoria, primum coepi suadeo pax.

Antonius diadema Cæsar impono, sui avertō, gemitusque  
declaro, quantus habeo odium servitus.

Quis ipse domus ego opus est, careo forum?

Mare inferus peto, oppugno (*N. 234. A*) Neapolis.

Nihil is res animus militaris vir et multus experior (*N. 234.*  
*C. 1*) casus imminuo.

Oro atque obsecro is, ut, misereor (*perf. particip.*) Athenienses, bellum suscipio.

Itaque iudicium tuus magnus æstimo, isque vereor (*N. 234.*  
*B*), ego ipse colligo.

Tum ille, interrogo sententia, ita loquor fero.

Convenit, ut dies (*N. 6. K. 2*) certus multitudo omnis convoco ad præsidium Macedones arx expello.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the subjoined Sentences you are left to form the Participles of the Verbs. Consult Note 233.

96 c. *Gerunds and the Supine in um.*

Inflamed by the hope of obtaining pleasures, they had undertaken many and great labours.

These things are trifles, but by not despising such trifles our ancestors made this state very powerful.

Run, and come as soon as you can to laugh at these things. The senate and people have sent us to return thanks.

What will you say? that Metellus writes what is false? or that he is desirous of injuring his friend?

By allowing them their due praise, he himself carried away the greatest part of that praise.

I will do neither; and if in nothing else, yet certainly in modesty and the government of the tongue I, a youth, shall surpass you, an old man.

The slaves of proud kings, unmindful of their own liberty, are coming to attack that of others.

He besought his son not to go about to destroy the whole nation by his obstinacy.

97. *In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following:*

*The Object is attracted to the Case of the Gerund, the Gerund to the Number and Gender of the Object.*

There the fate of Decius is heard of, a great encouragement to dare every thing in behalf of the commonwealth.

He was fond of hearing Plato.

I see that you, Romans, use the specious pretext of freeing the Greek states.

Not without reason did they choose this spot for the building of the city.

Spain is better adapted than any part of the world for retrieving a war.

And now the ground was firm enough to support temples and porticos.

Nor could the consul entice them out to battle by laying waste the fields and burning the houses.

Your kindness in hearing me with attention has lengthened my speech.

96 c. *Gerundia et Supinum in um.*

Voluptas (*gen.*) potior spes inflammatus, multus labor magnusque suscipio.

Parvus sum hic, sed parvus iste non contemno majores noster magnus hic res facio.

Curro (*sing.*), et quamprimum hic rideo venio.

Gratias ago ego senatus populusque (*N.* 90. 1) mitto.

Quis dico (*pl.*)? utrum Metellus falsus scribo? an amicus lædo sum cupidus?

Concedo ille suus laus (*pl.*), ipse magnus pars is fero.

Neuter facio; et si nullus alius res, modestia certe et tempero lingua (*dat.*) adolescens senex tu vinco. (*N.* 34. 1.)

Servitium rex superbus, suus libertas immemor (*N.* 83), alienus oppugno venio.

Obtestor filius, ne pertinacia suus gens universus perdo eo.

97. *In Gerundiis Transitiis usitatio est Attractio Gerundiva; cujus Constructionis Regula est hæc:*

*Trahitur Objectum in Gerundii Casum, Gerundium in Numerum et Genus Objecti.*

Ibi audio Decius eventus, ingens hortamen ad omnis (*pl.*) pro respublica audendus.

Plato studiosus audiendus sum.

Speciosus titulus utor vos, Romani, Græcus civitas liberandus video.

Non sine causa condendus locus hic urbs eligo.

Hispania, quam ullus pars terra, bellum reparandus aptus sum.

Et jam area firmus templum ac porticus sustinendus sum.

Neque ille consul vastandus ager urendusque tectum ad certamen elicio possum.

Vester in ego attente audiendus benignitas proveho oratio meus.

With regard to the redemption of the estate you have long ago understood my wishes.

---

There is quite enough time to weigh the resources of each, and to choose our side.

The consuls depart in different directions to lay waste the fields and besiege the towns.

They build their houses more carefully, in order to avoid the cold and heat.

You ransomed the state from the Gauls with gold: while receiving the gold, they were slain.

It is disgraceful to receive money for the decision of a case. And so the state betook itself to a remedy, that had now for a long time been neither desired nor employed, the appointment of a dictator.

I claim for myself the office of restoring the hostages to their homes.

There is naturally in our minds a certain insatiable desire of seeing the truth.

I regret that our friends the Stoics have given the Epicureans such an opportunity of laughing at them.

I am not afraid lest any one should think that I say this merely for the sake of encouraging you.

The mountain, which the exiles had occupied, is grassy and well watered, and good for the feeding of cattle.

They appointed quinquevirs for the division of the Pomptine land, and triumvirs to lead a colony to Nepete.

Nor yet was that a hindrance to action.

Partly by inactivity, partly by managing their business badly, they stagger under a load of old debts.

He spent the rest of the year in going round the cities of Italy.

Both in the undertaking and the prosecuting and the concluding of war, justice and good faith have the greatest weight.

And hence it ought to be understood that the principle is derived from self-love.

Porsena, having changed his plans from storming the city to blockading it, pitched his camp on the banks of the Tiber.

De fundus redimendus jam pridem intelligo (*sing.*) voluntas (*sing.*) meus.

Omnino satis spatium sum ad considerandus uterque copiae, et ad eligendus pars. (*N.* 289. 1.)

Diversus (*N.* 94. 2) consul ad vastandus ager urbsque oppugnandus discedo.

Accurate ad frigus (*pl.*) atque aestus (*pl.*) vitandus (*N.* 91) aedifico.

Aurum civitas a Galli redimo: inter accipiendus aurum caedo.

Ille sum flagitiosus, ob res judicandus pecunia accipio.

Itaque ad remedium, jam diu neque desideratus nec (*N.* 302. 3) adhibitus, dictator dicendus, civitas confugio.

Ministerium restituendus domus obses egomet deponco ipse.

Natura insum mens noster, insatiabilis quidam cupiditas verum videndus. (*N.* 290.)

Doleo tantus Stoicus noster Epicureus irridendus se (*N.* 291) facultas do.

Non vereor, ne quis ego hic vos adhortandus causa loquor existimo.

Qui capio exsul mons, herbidus aquosusque sum, et pecus bonus alendus. (*N.* 286.)

Quinquevir Pomptinus ager dividendus, et triumvir Nepete colonia deducendus creo. (*N.* 289. 2.)

Nec tamen impedimentum is res (*pl.*) gerendus sum. (*R.* 34.)

Partim inertia, partim male gerendus negotium, in vetus aēs (*sing.*) alienus vacillo.

Reliquus (*R.* 79) annus circumeundus Italia urbs consumo.

In bellum et suscipiendus, et gerendus, et deponendus, jus multum valeo, et fides.

Ex qui intelligo debeo principium duco (*perf.*) a se diligendus.

Porsena, consilium ab oppugnandus urbs ad obsidendus (*N.* 235) versus, in ripa Tiberis castra pono.



They confer with him on the subject of receiving the kings into the city at night and by stealth.

98. *The Impersonal Gerundive Construction implies Necessity, principally in Intransitive Verbs.*<sup>1</sup>

*To this may be added a Dative, more rarely an Ablative with a, ab.*

*And any other Case governed by the Verb.*

*The Attributive Construction of the Gerundive implies Necessity, in Transitive Verbs.*

I must quit the province.

Answer had to be made to every thing by Demetrius, at that time a very young man.

I must live and die with that glory which has been gained.

We ought rather to forgive than to gratify your anger.

I think that you must not delay.

The standards must be advanced, and we must charge the enemy.

You have completed a long journey, which we also must enter upon.

He must be resisted, or we must give up our liberty and our dignity together.

And I, Brutus, had then only to study my duty and nature; you have now to study the public and the stage, as the saying is.

You will always have to take care lest you should appear to have been too rough or unfeeling in any matter.

You have brought me to that pass, that I must either forget the commonwealth, or myself and my friends.

I think that I ought to speak first of the character, next of the magnitude of the war, then of the choice of a commander.

He says that they must either conquer in war, or submit to their superiors.

And so I use the same refuge which I think you ought to use.

<sup>1</sup> *Tibi certandum est*, you must strive. In the subjoined Sentences it is generally left to you to form the Gerundive.

Cum is de accipiendus clam nox in urbs rex colloquor.  
(N. 289. 2.)

98. *Necessitatem significat Gerundiva Constructio impersonalis, in Verbis potissimum Intransitivis.*

*Huic addi potest Dativus, rarius Ablativus cum a, ab.*

*Et si quis alius Casus a Verbo regitur.*

*Necessitatem significat Attributiva Constructio Gerundivi in Verbis Transitivity.*

Ego de provincia decedo.

Respondendum ad omnis juvenis tum admodum Demetrius est. (N. 37. 2.)

Cum is gloria, qui pario, vivo atque morior. (N. 62. E. 2.)

Ira vester magis ignosco quam indulgeo.

Sentio tu non cunctor. (N. 37. 1.)

---

Infero (N. 292) signum, et vado in hostia. (N. 62. D. 2.)

Via longus conficio, qui ego quoque ingredior. (N. 292. Obs.)

Is resisto (N. 293), aut concedo una cum dignitas libertas.

Ac ego tum, Brutus, officium solum est et natura, tu nunc populus et scena, ut dico, serviendum est.

Caveo semper, ne quis in res asper aut inhumanus (N. 10. A) sum videor.

Ego in is necessitas adduco, ut aut respublica ego, aut ego meusque obliviscor.

Primum ego videtur de genus bellum, deinde de magnitudo, tum de imperator deligendus dico. (N. 37. 1.)

Aut bellum vinco aio, aut bonus pareo. (N. 62. D. 3.)

Itaque utor idem perfugium, qui tu utor (N. 62. C. 2) censeo.

I think that we ought to have used your and your army's help.

The property of many citizens is at stake, which you must consult for both on your own account and that of the republic.

#### ON THE PRONOUN.

99. *Se, suus, Reflexive Pronouns, are referred to the Subject of the principal Sentence, provided it be of the third person.*

The Volscians confess that they have been conquered.

Crassus was slain by his own hand.

What doings of his own does he recount?

100. *Reflexives can be referred to the Object, if that Reference involves no Ambiguity.*

His own citizens banished Hannibal.

Their own good deeds are advantageous to others.

It is necessary that the parts of himself should be dear to the man who has proposed to himself his own preservation.

His own conduct will punish him.

Hannibal sent away the Gauls each to his own home.

#### ON SOME PARTICLES.

101. *Many Conjunctions annex like Words to like.*

101 A. *They connect like Cases.*

It is the nature of any man to err; of no one, except a fool, to persist in error.

They admired his mind ready either for war or peace.

Now then you see that there is nothing so like death as sleep.

You have relieved both the city from danger and the state from fear.

Neither by going nor by staying do I avoid snares.

Tuus atque exercitus tuus auxilium utor censeo.

Ago bona multus civis, qui est a vos (*N.* 294. 1) et ipse et  
respublica causa consulendum. (*N.* 37. 2.)

#### DE PRONOMINIBUS.

99. *Se, suus, Reflexiva Pronomina, referuntur ad Sententiæ principalis Subjectum, modo tertiæ personæ sit.*

Volsci fateor se vinco.

Crassus suus interficio manus.

Suus qui narro facinus?

100. *Reflexiva ad Objectum referri possunt, si ea Relatio nihil habet ambigui.*

Hannibal suus civis e civitas ejicio.

Ceterus recte factum suus prosum.

Quis propono conservatio se necesse sum hic quoque pars se  
carus sum.

Ille ulciscor mos suus.

Gallus Hannibal in civitas quisque suus dimitto.

#### DE PARTICULIS NONNULLIS.

101. *Multæ Conjunctiones similia similibus connectunt.*

101 A. *Similes Casus connectunt.*

Quivis homo est erro; nullus, nisi insipiens, in error  
persevero.

Admiror is animus vel bellum vel pax paratus.

Jam vero video (*pl.*) nihil sum mors (*dat.*) tam similis  
quam somnus.

Libero (*sing.*) et urbs periculum et civitas metus.

Nec eo nec maneo insidiæ evito. (*N.* 302. 2.)

The enemy did not sustain the first charge : so powerful was either their memory of former defeats, or their present fear.

I have been ordered to speak, not as a senator, but as one charged with an unfortunate war as well as a disgraceful peace.

What I say is better known to all who were then in Italy, than to me who was not.

There was in him talent, memory, learning, and industry : in war he had achieved exploits, though disastrous to the republic, yet great.

You seem to be wondering, Scipio and Lælius, at what is not very difficult.

P. Crassus, rich in wealth as well as in title, discharged the office of ædile.

101 B. *They connect like Moods and Tenses.*

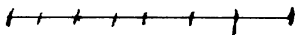
I neither concealed, nor abandoned, nor afflicted myself.

Hours and days and months and years glide by ; nor does past time ever return.

Go on therefore, and hand down your name to immortality.

Therefore let them either go forth, or keep quiet.

Past things can be better blamed than corrected.



They were either being swallowed up by the whirlpools, or were again seeking the shallows, and were there being promiscuously slaughtered by the enemy's horsemen who had entered the water.

It will be better for us to die, than to live widows or orphans without one or the other of you.

The censors think that their own decisions are so valuable, that one not only blames, but also rescinds the decision of the other.

We both wish to conquer, and especially to conquer under your command.

They appear to me to have brought the play of life to a close, and not, like unpractised actors, to have broken down in the last scene.

Hostis primus impetus non fero : tantum seu memoria prior  
clades, seu præsens terror valeo.

Jubeo dico, non tanquam senator, sed tanquam reus tam  
infelix bellum quam ignominiosus pax.

Is (*pl.*), qui dico, notus omnis sum qui in Italia tum sum,  
quam (*N.* 214. 2) ego qui non sum.

Sum in ille ingenium, memoria, litteræ, diligentia (*N.* 299):  
res bellum gero, quamvis respublica calamitosus, attamen  
magnus.

Res haud sane difficilis, Scipio et Lælius, admiror videor.

P. Crassus, quum cognomen dives, tum copiae, fungor  
sedilicium munus.

101 B. *Similes Modos et Tempora connectunt.*

Neque ego (*nom.*) ego abdo, neque desero, neque affligo.  
(*N.* 302. 1.)

Hora quidem cedo et dies et mensis et annus ; nec præteritus  
tempus unquam revertor.

Pergo igitur, nomenque tuus commendo immortalitas.

Proinde aut exeo, aut quiesco.

Præteritus magis reprehendo possum quam corrigo.

Aut haurio gurgis, aut vadum retro repeto, atque ibi a/  
ingressus aqua hostis eques passim trucidō.

Bene pereō (*fut. indic.*), quam sine alter (*N.* 173. *Obs.*) vos  
vidua aut orba vivo.

Censor suus iudicium tantus sum arbitror, ut alter alter  
iudicium non modo reprehendo, sed etiam rescindo.

Tum vinco cupio, tum dux tu vinco.

Videor ego fabula ætas perago, nec (*N.* 302. *Obs.* 1), tan-  
quam inexercitatus histrio, in extremus actus corruo.

102. *But if another Principle of Construction interfere, the same Conjunctions connect different Cases, Moods, and Tenses.*

102 A. *They connect different Cases.*

He sends Clodius, his own and Scipio's friend.  
To you I owe both my own safety and that of all these.  
It concerns no one more than you.  
Nor can he try cases at Rome and Athens at the same time.

---

He adopts a plan, though not of a refined character, yet praiseworthy for its piety.  
They furnished salt at a higher rate in the markets, and at different prices in different places.  
Take care that we see you either at the Formian villa, or at Antium, or at the Tusculan villa.  
I think that this concerns both me, and the commonwealth, and above all you.

102 B. *They connect different Moods and Tenses.*

Tullus selects that spot for his palace, and there he dwelt.  
The Sabines were seeking the mountains, and a few reached them.  
In the same manner had his wife been brought up, and in the same manner were his children being brought up.  
Either accept every thing, or I proffer nothing.

---

They rise suddenly from the ambush, and there were enemies in front and on all sides.  
The flight of a large number then first began: and now neither the lake nor the mountains were any impediment to their fear.  
You will besiege indeed the walls of one city, but in one city you will have captured the whole of Greece.  
When he was ordering the standards to be moved (*plucked up*) with more haste, and had himself leapt on his horse, the animal suddenly fell, and threw the consul over his head.  
When I had finished my speech, and he was speaking against me, he suddenly forgot the whole case.

102. *Sin autem alia Constructionis Ratio intercedat, eadem Conjunctiones diversos Casus, Modos, et Tempora connectunt.*

102 A. *Diversos Casus connectunt.*

Mitto Clodius, suus atque Scipio familiaris.  
 Tu quum meus salus tum omnis hic debeo.  
 Nullus magis quam tuus interest.  
 Nec possum idem tempus Roma et Athenæ res judico.

---

Capio consilium, quanquam non civilis exemplum, tamen pietas laudabilis.  
 Sal plus in forum, et alius alibi pretium (*N. 171. Obs. 1. b*) præbeo.  
 Tu aut in Formianum aut Antium aut in Tusculanum, curo, ut video. (*N. 54. Obs.*)  
 Hic ego et meus, et respublica, et maxime tuus interest arbitror.

102 B. *Diversos Modos et Tempora connectunt.*

Is sedes Tullus regia capio, ibique habito.  
 Mons Sabini peto, et paucus teneo.

Perinde uxor instituo (*N. 35*), liberique instituo.

Aut omnis accipio (*pl.*), aut nihil fero.

---

Subito ex insidiæ consurgo (*impers.*), et adversus et undique hostis sum (*imperf.*).

Magnus pars fuga inde primum cæpi: et jam nec lacus nec mons obsto pavor.

Oppugno vere mœnia unus urbs, sed in unus urbs universus capio Græcia.

Quum ocuis signum convello jubeo, et ipse in equus insilio, equus repente corruo, consulque lapsus super caput effundo.

Quum ego peroro, ille (*N. 299*) contra ego dico, subito totus causa obliviscor.



You will certainly have me, to whom you would be as dear as you were to your father.

103. *Ne, prohibitive, is used with an Imperative or Conjunctive Mood: utinam, o si, ut for utinam, with a Conjunctive.*

To-morrow return to your ranks: there shall be an opportunity of fighting; do not fear.

Let not the wicked man dare to appease the anger of the gods with gifts. Let men pay their vows carefully.

Let him not refuse his assistance to the commonwealth, and let him come with me to Macedonia.

Let us not pretend that which is not really the case.

#### ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

104. *Libet, licet, liquet, and most Impersonal Verbs, govern a Dative. (See Note 89.)*

It pleases us indeed; but it by no means pleases those who are in the provinces.

It is conducive to your dignity to act thus.

It is lawful therefore for old men to enjoy this fortune.

It has pleased you to urge me on to this.

But if this shall be displeasing to you, I will not press you.

I like not to bewail life, as many, and those learned men, have often done.

But, as I say, the Stoics like to call every thing by its own name.

It seemed good neither to me, nor to any one of your friends, that anything should be done in your absence.

I may address you, Atticus, in the same verses with which Ennius addresses Flamininus.

Nor could they long deliberate in quiet upon plans for recovering the commonwealth from so heavy a calamity.

Themistocles might have been a man of leisure, Epaminondas might have been; and, not to seek old and foreign examples, I might have been.

Ego certe habeo, qui carus æque sum ac (N. 304) sum  
(*indic.*) pater.

103. Ne *prohibitiva vel cum Imperativo Modo vel cum Coniunctivo usurpatur*: utinam, o si, ut *pro* utinam, cum *Coniunctivo*.

Crastinus dies redeo in acies (*sing.*): sum copia pugno; ne timeo (*imper.* N. 305. 1).

Impius ne audeo (*imper.* N. 305. 2) placo donum ira deus. Caute votum reddo.

Ne denego (*subj.*) opera respublica, et in Macedonia ego cum venio. (N. 305. 3.)

Ne is, qui non ago, simulo (*perf.*).

#### DE VERBIS IMPERSONALIBUS.

104. Libet, licet, liquet, et *plerumque Impersonalia, regunt Dativum*.

Ego vero placet; sed is, qui in provincia sum, minime placet.

Dignitas tuus ita facio expedit.

Hic igitur fortuna fruor licet senex.

Libet (N. 276. 1. *b*) vos ego ad hic (*pl.*) impello.

Sin tu is minus libet, non tu urgeo. (N. 275. 1.)

---

Non lubet (N. 276. 1. *a*) ego deploro vita, qui multus, et is doctus, sæpe facio.

Sed, ut dico, placet Stoicus suus quisque res nomen appello.

Ne ego placet, nec quisquam tuus, quisquam, tu absens, fio.

Licet (N. 95. A. 1) versus idem ego affari tu, Atticus, qui affari (N. 40. A) Flamininus Ænnius.

Nec diu licet quietus consilium erigendus ex tam gravis casus respublica sui cum agito.

Licet (N. 95. B. 1) sum otiosus Themistocles, licet Epaminondas; licet, ne et vetus et externus quæro, ego.

Neither was it fully decided by (*sufficiently clear to*) Brutus, who commanded the fleet, or by (*to*) the tribunes of the soldiers, what they should do.

Although he had not heard the case and there was the power of delaying judgment, he said that it was clear to him.

105. Piget, pudet, poenitet, tædet, and miseret, *Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative.* (See Rule 84.)

106. Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet, oportet, *take an Accusative.*

It pleases me that those illustrious names, which they extol to the sky, have thus fallen.

He was by nature more talkative than becomes a king.

It does not misbecome an orator to counterfeit anger.

It behoves you to consult for and show mercy to the human race.

How it used to delight him to foretell long beforehand to us the eclipses of the sun and moon!

I shall consider not only what it becomes him to hear, but also what me to say.

It will not behove you to be angry with me, for speaking in behalf of the commonwealth.

Even they, who can conquer, wish for peace: what ought we to wish for?

You, the elder brother, ought to have pleaded on behalf of the younger; you ought to have obtained forgiveness for his youth and error.

Still they thought that they ought (*it behoved them*) no less to abide by their own former decisions.

I did not think that those ornaments, with which he was adorning me, were suitable to me.

107. Pertinet, attinet, *take the Preposition ad with an Accusative.*

I will send him to you, if you shall think that it has any relation to the matter.

Neque satis Brutus, qui classis præsum, vel tributus miles constat (*imperf.*), quis ago.

Quum causa non audio et potestas sum amplio, dico sui liquet.

105. Piget, pudet, poenitet, tædet, atque miseret, *Impersonalia, Genitivum capiunt cum Accusativo.*

106. Delectat, juvat, decet, dedecet, oportet, *Accusativum capiunt.*

Juvat ego hic præclarus nomen, qui iste ad cælum fero, sic concido.

Sum natura dicax quam rex decet.

Orator simulo ira non dedecet.

Consulo et parco vos genus humanus oportet.

Quam delectat is defectio sol et luna multus ego ante prædico!

Non solum, quis iste audio, verum etiam, quis ego decet dico, considero.

Irascor vos quidem ego, pro republicaicens, non oportet.

Pax, etiam qui vinco possum, volo : quis ego volo oportet ?

Tu magnus frater pro parvus deprecor oportet (*imperf. N. 311*); tu adolescentia, tu error venia impetro.

Tamen nihilum minus sui superior suis iudicium consto puto oportet.

Ego ille ornamentum, qui ille ego orno, decet ego non puto. (*N. 275. 3.*)

107. Pertinet, attinet, *Præpositionem ad cum Accusativo sumunt.*

Mitto is ad tu, si quis (*N. 119. Obs.*) ad res puto pertinet.

Those things do not at all concern the life of mankind.

---

He thought that it did not much concern him, whether the sovereignty of the Massyli was in the hands of Lacumaces or Masinissa.

And so, as far as relates to all of you, if you are sorry for your fault, I have received enough and more than enough satisfaction.

108. Interest and refert admit a Genitive. (See Rule 74.)

109. *Neuter Verbs are used Impersonally in the Passive Voice for any Persons, an Ablative of the Person with the Preposition a, ab, or abs (R. 60), being either expressed or understood.*

A shout being raised, the allies ran forward (*it was run forward by the allies*).

Let silence be kept by me concerning his nightly revellings.

---

Full satisfaction is being given by you both to me and all my friends.

They fought for nearly three hours, and everywhere fiercely. So entirely were men living without disparagement of others' fame.

110. *Cœpit, debet, desinit, potest and quit, solet, incipit, placed before the Infinitives of Impersonals, become Impersonals themselves.*

Nor indeed can silence be kept concerning the legion of Mars.

It is wont to repent him, when he has done anything like a madman.

---

As soon as they have begun to be ashamed of what they ought not, they will not be ashamed of what they ought. Nor ought it to be doubted that there were poets before Homer.

Rightly have men long ago ceased to dispute against them. They set a high price on meadows, because that kind of property is least capable of injury.

Is nihil omnino ad vita homo attinet. (N. 275. 2.)

Haud sane multum ad sui pertinet credo, utrum penes  
Lacumaces (N. 5. F. 2) an Masinissa regnum Massyli  
sum.

Itaque, qui (N. 275. 1) ad vos universus attinet, sir error  
pœnitet, satis superque pœna (pl.) habeo (pres.).

108. Interest, refert, *Genitivum admittunt.*

109. *Verba Neutra in Passivâ Voce impersonaliter usur-*  
*pantur pro quibuslibet Personis, Ablativo Personæ cum*  
*Præpositione a, ab, aut abs, vel expresse vel intellecto.*

Clamor sublatus, procurritur ab auxilium.

Siletur de nocturnus is bacchatio.

A (N. 218. 3) tu quidem cumulate satisfis et ego et meus  
omnia.

Tres ferme hora pugnatur, et ubique atrociter.

Adeo sine obtrectatio gloria alienus vivitur.

110. Cœpit, debet, desinit, potest et quit, solet, incipit,  
*Infinitivis Impersonalium præposita, ipsa fiunt Impersonalia.*

Nec vero de legio Martius siletur potest.

Solet is, quum aliquid furiose facio, pœnitet.

Simul pudet, qui non oportet, cœpit (N. 84. 2), qui oportet,  
non pudet.

Nec dubitatur debet, quin sum ante Homerus poëta.

Recte jam pridem contra is desinit (pass.) disputatur.

Pratum magnus (R. 46) æstimo, quod is genus possessio  
(pl.) minime nocetur potest.

The snow had now covered every thing, nor could they live out of houses.

Epicurus loudly asserts that men cannot live pleasantly, unless they live wisely, honestly, and justly.

And hence it often happens, that public evils can in no way be remedied.

A full answer is wont to be given to each of these questions.

*OBS. Almost every Active Sentence may be changed into a Passive one, so that the Nominative of the Active Sentence shall become in the Passive an Ablative of the Agent.*

*EX. 111 A. If the Verb of the Active Sentence has an Accusative of the nearer Object, the Verb in the Passive will be Personal, the Accusative of the Active passing into the Nominative of the Passive; but the Nominative of the Active will generally be changed into the Ablative of the Agent with the Preposition a, ab, or abs. (N. 218.)*

*Obs. The following Sentences are to be translated Passively as well as Actively.*

The multitude praise them.

Meanwhile the legates were conducting affairs.

I have read and am reading your book carefully.

I will assist him with a ship, a horse, a tent, and also with provisions for the journey.

You will forgive me this.

Shall I make over your property, Postumus, for a sesterce?

You have very often destined these for slaughter.

He had arranged the plan of the whole war.

*111 B. If not, the Verb of the Passive Sentence will be Impersonal, and either will stand without a case, or will govern the same case which it governed in the Active.*

*Obs. The following Sentences are to be translated Passively as well as Actively.*

Cotta and the first ranks resist vigorously.

Nix (*pl.*) jam omnis oppleo, nec habitatur extra tectum potest.

Clamo Epicurus non potest jucunde vivitur, nisi sapienter, honeste, justeque vivitur.

Ex qui sæpe fio, ut nullus ratio publicus incommodum medetur quit.

Hic singuli copiose respondetur solet.

OBS. *Activa Sententia fere omnis ita in Passivam converti potest, ut Nominativus Activæ Sententiæ fiat in Passivâ Ablativus Agentis.*

111 A. *Si Activæ Sententiæ Verbum Accusativum habet propioris Objecti, Verbum in Passivâ Personale erit, Accusativo Activæ in Nominativum Passivæ transeunte; Nominativus vero Activæ in Ablativum Agentis cum Præpositione a, ab, vel abs, fere convertetur.*

Obs. *Hæ, quæ sequuntur, Sententiæ tam Passive quam Active vertendæ sunt.*<sup>1</sup>

Is (*ab*) multitudo collaudo.

Res interim (*a*) legatus gero.

Liber tuus et lego et lego (*a ego*) diligenter.

Is navis, equus, tabernaculum, viaticum etiam (*a ego*) juvo.

Hic (*abs tu*) ego ignosco.

Tuus, Postumus, nummus sestertius (*a ego*) addico?

Hic tu (*N. 280*) persæpe ad cædes constituo.

Is ratio totus bellum describo.

111 B. *Sin minus, Verbum Passivæ Sententiæ Impersonale erit, et vel sine casu stabit, vel eundem casum reget, quem in Activâ regebat.*

Obs. *Hæ, quæ sequuntur, Sententiæ tam Passive quam Active vertendæ sunt.*

(A) Cotta primusque ordo acriter resisto.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the examples under both parts of this Rule, the words in a parenthesis are to be used only in the Passive Sentences.



All raised a loud shout of dissent to his speech ; for it was unjust and strange.

---

Both parties strove to help (*that help might be given to*) the consul.

But nevertheless we will give satisfaction, nor will we spare trouble.

All ranks went out in crowds to meet the consul on his return.

*Here see Notes 281 and 282.*

112. *Where there can be no Ambiguity, the Ablative of the Agent is suppressed after Passive Impersonals.*

I come now to the subject about which we are treating.

So the battle was being carried on by the soldiers on both sides at a distance with slings, arrows, and other missiles. They called all to arms, and ran together to the walls and gates.

Let us submit to necessity, to which not even the gods are superior.

---

But now, if you please, let us leave the provinces, and return to the city.

When they had fought for a long time, our men got possession of the baggage and camp.

Kings reigned at Rome from the foundation of the city to its freedom two hundred and forty-four years.

The Gauls did not escape the notice of the geese, from which, being sacred to Juno, men were abstaining though in a very great scarcity of food.

And so the leaders were not persuaded by him more easily than the multitude.

For all who had not been pardoned, and also all who had, are said to be about to sail to Africa.

Every one wishes trust to be placed in him by others, and confidence, if given, generally secures confidence.

You confess that up to this day you have been the servants either of the Carthaginians or of the Romans.

The state had been raised to the hope that the war in Africa would be finished by them in the course of that year.

They could not be persuaded by him to remain any longer.

Is oratio vehementer (*ab*) omnis reclamo; sum enim iniquus et novus.

Certo (*ab*) uterque, ut consul opera navo.

Sed tamen satisfacio (*a ego*), neque parco labor.

Consul rediens obviam eo frequenter (*ab*) omnis ordo.

*Hic vide Notas 281 et 282.*

112. *Ubi nihil Ambigui esse potest, supprimitur Ablativus Agentis post Impersonalia Passiva.*

Venio nunc ad is de qui agitur.

Sic utrinque eminus funda, sagitta, aliusque telum pugnatur.

Conclamatur ad arma, concurriturque in murus atque porta.  
(*N. 62. D. 3.*)

Paretur necessitas, qui ne deus quidem supero. (*N. 112.*)

Sed jam, si placet, de provincia deceditur, in urbsque (*N. 300. Obs. 2*) reditur.

Diu quum pugnatur (*N. 37. 1*), impedimenta castraque noster potior.

Regnatur (*N. 62. C. 2*) Roma ab conditus urbs ad liberatus annus ducenti quadraginta quattuor. (*N. 19. 3.*)

Anser Galli non fallo, qui sacer Juno in summus inopia cibus tamen abstinetur.

Itaque non dux facile quam multitudo persuadetur. (*N. 145.*)

Omnis enim, qui non ignoscitur, etiam qui est, in Africa dico navigo.

Volo se quisque creditur; et habitus fides ipse (*acc.*) plerumque obligo fides.

Servitur (*N. 62. C. 2*) ad hic dies aut Carthaginenses aut Romani confiteor.

In is spes erigo civitas, in Africa is annus debellatur.

Hic persuadetur, ut diu moror, non potest.

113. *Hence it appears that the same Cases are governed by Passive Verbs as by Active, except only the Accusative of the nearer Object.*

Many examples of this construction have been already given under Rules 109, 110, 111, and 112.

114. *Vapulo, veneo, exsulo, liceo, fio, with some other Verbs, are construed in a Passive sense.*

They bring word that the seventh legion has been beaten. And not only were exemptions being sold to individuals, but even to whole states.

Is he in his country? He is excluded from Italy, he is banished.

There he is informed (*made sure*) by several that Æbutius had collected and armed very many men.

They are recalled by the (*that*) signal which had been agreed upon.

A shout was raised by the Roman sentinels, and the soldiers ran forward on both sides.

---

Did we not see at the auction a brazen statue of no great size sold for a hundred and twenty thousand sesterces? Above a thousand captives were sold by auction.

With regard to the gardens of Drusus, at what a price do you write that they were bid for!

I cannot believe that you will cross the sea, since you value Dolabella so highly, and are yourself so highly valued by us all.

Houses were being overthrown in the country (*the fields*) by frequent earthquakes.

The corn was not only being consumed by so great a number of beasts of burden and of men, but had also been laid by the season of the year and by violent rains.

It becomes one, who is well born and has had a liberal education, to wish to be spoken well of by his parents and relations, and also by good men.

NOTE.—*Having done the Sentences above the line in Part I., proceed at once to Part II.*

113. *Hinc apparet eosdem Casus a Passivis Verbis regi atque ab Activis, præterquam unum Accusativum proprioris Objecti.*

Hujus constructionis multa exempla jam ante data sunt sub Regulis 109, 110, 111, et 112.

114. Vapulo, veneo, exsulo, liceo, fio, cum aliis quibusdam, vi Passivâ construuntur.

Septimus legio vapulo nuntio.

Neque (N. 302. Obs. 1) solum singuli veneo immunitas, sed etiam populus universus.

Num (N. 43) sum in patria? Italia prohibeo, exsulo.

Ibi certus (comp.) fio a plus permultus homo cogo et armo Æbutius. (N. 282. 2.)

Is signum, qui convenit, revoco.

Ab Romanus statio (sing.) clamor orior, ac procuro (impers.) utrinque. (N. 62. D. 3.)

In auctio signum æneus non magnus nummus centum et viginti mille veneo non video?

Supra mille (subst.) captivus sub hasta veneo. (N. 57. Obs.)

De Drusus hortus, quantus tu liceo scribo!

Tu eo trans mare credo non possum, quum tantus facio Dolabella, tantusque ab omnis ego fio.

Creber motus terra ruo in ager tectum.

Frumentum (pl.) non solum a tantus multitudo jumentum atque homo consumo, sed etiam annus tempus atque imber procumbo.

Sum homo ingenuus et liberaliter educatus volo bene audio a parens, a propinquus, a bonus etiam vir.

NOTA.—*Confectis, quæ supra lineam sunt positæ, in Parte Primâ Sententiis, statim perge ad Partem Secundam.*

## PART II.

## ON CERTAIN MOODS AND TENSES.

*The Conjunctive Mood is used purely in various senses: but if it is subjoined to another Verb it is called Subjunctive.<sup>1</sup>*

115. *There are six Divisions of the use of the Conjunctive: Potential, Conditional, Concessive, Optative, Dubitative, Hortative.*

115 A. *Potential.*

Those people may perhaps admire these things overmuch.  
Nor do I do this, as some perhaps may think, by way of  
make-believe.

115 B. *Conditional.*

And I wish that I had obeyed that first letter; for so I  
should have retained my dignity without any trouble.

Justice therefore is to be cultivated for its own sake; for  
otherwise it would not be justice.

115 C. *Concessive.*

If therefore there is a hope of my return, you may strengthen  
that hope, and help on the matter.  
Then you might see the sad looks of the hearers.  
But let good men think thus of me.  
But, unless it is troublesome, I should like to know this.  
He should at least have valued those things less highly.

---

<sup>1</sup> You will find examples of this use under many of the Rules in Part III.

## PARS SECUNDA.

## DE MODIS QUIBUSDAM ET TEMPORIBUS.

*Modus Conjunctivus variis sensibus pure usurpatur : quum subjungitur alteri Verbo Subjunctivus<sup>1</sup> appellatur.*

115. *Puri Conjunctivi sex sunt Divisiones : Potentialis, Conditionalis, Concessivus, Optativus, Dubitativus, Hortativus.*

115 A. *Potentialis.*

Nimum forsitan hic ille miror.  
Neque is facio, ut forsitan quidam video, simulatio,

115 B. *Conditionalis.*

Atque utinam primus ille litteræ pareo ! sine ullus enim  
(N. 301. 2) molestia dignitas meus retineo (*pluperf.*).

Ipse igitur propter se colendus justitia sum ; nam aliter  
justitia non sum (*imperf.*).<sup>2</sup>

115 C. *Concessivus.*

Si sum spes noster reditus, is confirmo (*sing.*), et res adjuvo.

Inde mæstus audiens vultus cerno (*imperf.*).  
De ego autem ita considero vir bonus. (N. 306. 1. a.)  
Sed, nisi molestus sum, volo hic scio. (N. 306. 2.)  
Saltem is parvus (R. 73) æstimo.

---

<sup>1</sup> Hujus usus exempla invenies sub multis Regulis in Parte Tertia.

<sup>2</sup> The Conditional meaning of the Potential Mood may be also seen from the Examples on the Conditional Sentence in Part III.

115 D. *Optative, either without a Particle, or after the Particles ne, utinam, O si, si, ut for utinam.* But see Note 307.

May this illustrious city stand unhurt ! may my fellow-citizens enjoy a tranquil republic !

Matters there are very well. May I only see Balbilius safe, the support of my old age !

But let us pass over oracles ; let us come to dreams.

Often, so may Heaven help me, have I longed for you.

What will you be able, you will ask, to say for them ? May I cease to live, if I know !

The ruins of Saguntum (I wish that I may be a false prophet) will fall on our heads.

Would that you had been informed of my purpose !

#### 115 E. *Dubitative.*

Who on the other hand would not love modesty in youth ?

Should I (*am I to*) joke with you, or should I write something more serious than usual ?

But should I mention first his pride or his cruelty towards the Roman lower orders ? Without doubt his cruelty is the more atrocious.

Shall a patrician, and then a consul be made (*is one to be made*) of a foreigner ?

When I saw this, what could I (*what was I to*) do ?

Fortune bears the blame : for who could have thought that Pharnaces was going to be an enemy ?

Would that man, endued with that humanity, have been able to neglect a friend ?

#### 115 F. *Hortative.*

Let us go to Rome and crush this detestable conspiracy.

Let each one think he is protecting not his person, but his wife and children ; let him repeatedly ponder this in his mind that the senate and Roman people are now watching us.

113 D. *Optativus, vel sine Particula, vel post Particulas*  
ne, utinam, O si, si, ut *pro* utinam.

Sto hic urbs præclarus! tranquillius respublica civis meus  
perfruor!

Res ibi valde bonus. Modo Balbilius incolumis video, sub-  
sidium noster senectus!

Sed omitto oraculum; venio ad somnium. (N. 306. 1. b.)

Sæpe, ita ego deus (*pl.*) juvo, tu desidero.

Quis possum, inquam (*sing.*), pro is dico? Ne vivo, si  
scio!

Saguntum ruina (falsus utinam vates sum) noster caput  
incido.

Utinam meus consilium certus (N. 10. A. Obs.) fio (*sing.*)!

#### 115 E. *Dubitativus.*

Quis contra in adolescentia pudor non diligo (*pres.*)?

Jocorne tu cum, an gravis (N. 10. A) aliquis scribo?

In plebs vero Romanus utrum superbia prius memoro, an  
crudelitas? Sine dubius crudelitas sum atrox.

Ex peregrinusne (N. 300. Obs. 2) patricius, deinde consul  
fio?

Hic (*pl.*) quum video (*imperf. subj.*); quis agō?

Culpa fortuna sustineo: quis enim Pharnaces hostis sum  
puto (*imperf.*)?

An ille vir, ille humanitas præditus, amicus negligo possum  
(*pluperf.*)?

#### 115 F. *Hortativus.*

Eo Roma atque sceleratus hic conjuratio opprimo.

Unusquisque se non corpus suus, sed conjux ac liber protego  
puto; identidem hic animus reputo ego nunc intueor  
senatus populusque Romanus.



116. *There is a peculiar Use of the Perfect Potential; to affirm, deny, command, or forbid with a certain urbanity and moderation.*

Perhaps some one may say: How do these things hurt me? At times, I would say it with your leave, you appeared to me timid.

You cannot therefore at all frighten me by that example of yours.

Let good men, he says, see to those duties.

And yet you need not greatly fear those prices.

117. *The Infinitive carries on the Construction of a Verb or Adjective.*

(1) *Verbs of Wishing*: volo, nolo, &c.

(2) *Verbs of Power, Duty, and Custom*: possum, queo, nequeo, &c.

(3) *Verbs of Beginning, Continuing, or Desisting from Action*: cœpi, incipio, meditor, &c.

(1)

Do not deal with Verres in that way.

You would rather imitate their fickleness.

We long to see, hear, and learn something.

All day and night, like that bird, I look forth on the sea, and desire to fly away.

The same Ælius wished to be a Stoic; but he never either studied to be an orator, nor was he one.

(2)

Can desire be limited? It must be removed and plucked up by the roots.

There could have been no opinion more true, more weighty, more profitable, or better for the commonwealth.

He was unable to remain there many days on account of the want of corn.

You know how to conquer, Hannibal; you know not how to use a victory.

116. *Peculiaris Usus est Perfecti Potentialis, ut affirmet, neget, imperet, aut vetet cum urbanitate et moderatione quādam.*

Dico fortasse quispiam : Quis (N. 119. 2) ego iste lædo ?  
Ego interdum, pax tuus dico, timidus videor.

Nihil igitur ego iste tu exemplum terreo.

Video, inquam, iste officium vir bonus.  
Nec tamen iste pretium pertimesco.

117. *Infinitivum stat Prolata Constructione Verbi vel Adjectivi.*

(1) *Verba Voluntatis* : volo, nolo, malo, aveo, cupio, &c.

(2) *Verba Potentiæ, Officii, et Consuetudinis* : possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, soleo, consuesco, &c.

(3) *Verba Actionis Incipiendæ, Continuandæ, vel Depo-  
nendæ* : cepti, incipio, meditor, statuo, disco, doceo, conor,  
pergo, desino, &c.

(1)

Nolo (*sing. N. 305. Obs.*) iste modus ago cum Verres.

Is levitas imitor malo (*pl.*).

Aveo aliquis video, audio, addisco.

Dies et nox (*pl.*), tanquam avis ille, mare prospecto, evolo  
cupio.

Idem Ælius Stoicus sum volo (N. 308); orator autem nec  
studeo unquam, nec sum.

(2)

An possum cupiditas finio (N. 310)? Tollendus sum atque  
extrahendus radicitus.

Sententia verus, gravis, utilis, bonus respublica nullus sum  
possum. (N. 311.)

Ibi plus dies propter inopia frumentum maneo nequeo  
(*imperf.*).

Vinco scio, Hannibal; victoria utor nescio.

We ought to be unwilling to kill the father of a family at his own house.

Whatever we are, yet we ought not to have suffered these things which we have suffered.

This wind is accustomed to blow during a great part of every season.

In India several women are wont to be married to one (*each*) man.

That folly of old age, which is commonly called dotage, belongs to trifling old men, not to all.

(3)

They remained there, and began to cultivate the fields. The Nervii and their allies begin to attack the legion.

Pompey by the advice of all his friends had determined to engage (*to contend in battle*).

At this very time the cavalry attempt to break into the camp.

He was also preparing to surround the city with a stone wall.

He dared to entrust his life to four horsemen.

I shall not hesitate to admonish you, my junior by several years.

You think that you have rested long enough, and you proceed to finish the rest of your journey.

The sky does not cease to grow bright at the proper season.

I have never ceased to be the adviser of peace, harmony, and an accommodation.

117 A. *Also after the Verbs* videor, credor, putor, existimor, dicor, feror, *and the like.*

I seem to be able to be of no service to the commonwealth. Tullia is reported to have driven her chariot over her father's body.

For I appear to be now about to dare to address you.

He is said to have admired the general appearance of the camp.

His statue is thought to have been made of marble.

Nay, the artisans too, a class by no means suited for military service, are said to have been called out.

Debeo paterfamilias domus suus occido nolo.

Qualiscunque (*pl.*) sum, tamen hic, qui patior, patior non debeo. (*N. 311.*)

Hic ventus magnus pars omnis tempus flo consuesco (*perf.*).

Mulier in India plus singuli soleo sum nuptus.

Iste senilis stultitia, qui deliratio appello soleo, senex levis sum, non omnis.

(3)

Ibi remaneo, atque ager colo cœpi. (*N. 38. C.*)

Nervii atque hic socius legio oppugno incipio. (*N. 38. C. Obs. 1.*)

Pompeius suus omnis hortatu statuo proelium decerto.

Hic ipse tempus eques in castra irrumpo conor.

Murus quoque lapideus circumdo urbs paro.

Quattuor eques vita suus committo audeo (*perf.*).

Tu aliquot annus parvus natu non dubito moneo.

Satis diu tu puto requiesco, et iter reliquus (*N. 49*) conficio pergo.

Non intermitto suus tempus cælum nitesco.

Pax concordia, compositio auctor sum non desisto. (*N. 308.*)

117 A. *Item post Verba* videor, credor, putor, existimor, dicor, feror, *similia.*

Nihil videor opitutor possum respública.

Tullia per pater corpus carpentum ago feror.

Videor enim jam tu audeo (*N. 309. 1*) appello.

Admiror (*N. 309. 2*) dicor universus species castra.

Putor is statua constituo (*N. 37. 1*) e marmor.

Quin opifex quoque, minime militia idoneus genus, excieo (*R. 17*) dicor.

117 B. *Also after Adjectives.* See Note 312.

Cæsar armed the veterans, when they were now desiring to rest.

Having little by little grown accustomed to be conquered, they do not even themselves compare themselves with the Germans in valour.

The chief men of the state surround him as he is beginning to speak.

Then Hannibal moved from winter quarters, having already made a vain attempt to cross the Apennines.

Being ordered to throw away their arms, they do as they are commanded.

We are ready both to refute without obstinacy, and to be refuted without passion.

118. *A circumlocution of the Future Infinitive, as well Active as Passive, is often made by means of fore ut, futurum esse ut, with the Subjunctive.* But see Note 313.

He says that they will presently be glad that they have restrained their anger.

When the letter of Bibulus has been read, I think that the senate will at length be moved.

I foresaw that I should not be able to punish his associates.

NOTE.—*Having finished Part II., proceed onwards to Part III.*

117 B. *Item post Adjectiva.*

Cæsar veteranus, cupiens jam requiesco, armo.

Paullatim assuefactus supero, ne sui quidem ipse (N. 23.

Obs. 2) cum Germani virtus comparo.

Dico incipiens primores civitas circumsisto.

Tum Hannibal ex hiberna moveo, nequicquam ante conatus  
transcendo Apenninus (*sing.*).

Jussus arma projicio, imperatum facio.

Et refello sine pertinacia, et refello sine iracundia paratus  
(N. 312. 2) sum.

118. *Futuri Infinitivi, quum Activi, tum Passivi, circumlocutio sæpe fit per fore ut, futurum esse ut, cum Subjunctivo.*

Dico fore, ut postmodum gaudeo (*pres.*) sui ira (*dat.*)  
moderor.

Litteræ Bibulus recitatus (*abl. abs.*), puto fore, ut aliquando  
commoveor senatus.

Vidoo fore, ut is socius persequor non possum (*imperf.*).

NOTA.—*Perfectâ Parte Secundâ, perge porro ad Partem Tertiam.*

## PART III.

## ON THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

NOTE.—*Before you begin this Third Part, read Note 314, and translate the Sentences given there.*

119. *The Infinitive with the Accusative of its Subject is joined (a) Subjectively to the Copula est and Impersonal Verbs : (b) Objectively to many Verbs in which there is the force of feeling or declaring : (c) It sometimes forms an Apposition.*

Many examples of this Infinitive have been already given under Rule 18.

120. *For this Infinitive ut with the Subjunctive is often put ; often quod with an Indicative. See Note 318.*

It remains, that I console you and adduce reasons.

The next thing is (*it follows*) for me to instruct you, judges, about the corn that was bought.

I think that it concerns me, that you should do this.

This too is a great thing, that they are not without Greek literature.

I do not approve this sentiment, that our kindness to our friends should correspond to their kindness towards us.

It is the highest praise of old age, that it does not greatly desire any sensual pleasures.

They are indignant that you breathe, that you utter a voice, that you have the shape of men.

This occurs to me, that his wife has left Dolabella.

121. *Oportet and necesse est, if they take the Subjunctive, omit the Conjunction ut.*

It behoves him to learn and to unlearn many things.

## PARS TERTIA.

## DE COMPOSITA SENTENTIA.

NOTA.—*Priusquam hanc Tertiam Partem incipis, lege Notam 314, Sententiasque ibi datas verte.*

119. *Infinitivus cum Accusativo sui Subjecti (a) Subjective jungitur Copulæ est et Verbis Impersonalibus: (b) Objective multis Verbis in quibus inest sentiendi aut declarandi vis: (c) Appositionem facit aliquando.*

Hujus Infinitivi multa exempla jam ante data sunt sub Regulâ 18

120. *Pro hoc Infinitivo sæpe ponitur ut cum Subjunctivo; sæpe quod cum Indicativo.*

Reliquus est, ut tu consolor et affero ratio.  
Sequitur, ut de frumentum emptus vos, judex, doceo.

Hic ut facio (*sing.*), meus interest arbitror.  
Magnificus ille etiam, ut Græcus litteræ non egeo.

Hic ego sententia non probo, ut noster in amicus benevolentia ille erga ego benevolentia pariter respondeo.  
Summus laus senectus est, quod is voluptas nullus magnopere desidero.

Quod spiro, quod vox mitto, quod forma (*pl.*) homo habeo, indignor. (*N. 318. 2.*)  
Ille ego occurro, quod uxor a Dolabella discedo.

121. *Oportet et necesse est, si Subjunctivum capiunt, Conjunctionem ut omittunt.*  
Multus oportet disco atque dedisco.



We must do this either in the day-time or by night.  
It is necessary that I trace from a little further back the reason of my plans.

122. *Ne and ut for ne non after Formularies of fearing govern a Subjunctive.*

Why then did he free those slaves? He was afraid, no doubt, lest they should make disclosures, lest they should not be able to bear the pain of torture.

I see that you take upon yourself all sorts of labours. I fear that you may not be able to support them.

123. *To Formularies of wishing, asking, exhorting, commanding, permitting, taking care, striving, effecting, and the like, there is added a Subjunctive, either with the Conjunctions ut, ne, or sometimes without a Conjunction.*

123 A. *It is added Subjectively.*

It was permitted to this consul to enroll two new legions.  
Care must be taken lest friendships turn (*turn themselves*) even into bitter enmities.

All may storm: I will say what I think.

It was agreed that they should give gold instead of silver.

123 B. *It is added Objectively.*

But now let us wish that he may go into exile, rather than complain of it.

I ask of you to see carefully to these things.

They urge the standard-bearers to go faster.

He exhorts his men not to yield to fatigue.

Cæsar had given strict orders to Trebonius not to take the town by storm.

I will stave that no one except yourself may see my sorrow.

What cause induced you to leave your province?

He was compelled to deprive himself of life.

The importance of the business made us not afraid of sending you a letter too soon.

He was urgent with me that you should not hinder him.

I could wish that you would send me a letter more frequently.

Aut is interdiu aut nox facio oportet.  
 Alte paullo ratio consilium meus repeto necesse est.

122. *Post metuendi Formulas regunt Subjunctivum ne et ut pro ne non.*

Cur igitur is servus manumitto? Metuo (*N. 29. 1*) scilicet ne indico; ne dolor perfero non possum.

Omnis labor tu excipio video. Timeo, ut sustineo.

123. Optandi, rogandi, hortandi, imperandi, permittendi, curandi, enitendi, efficiendi, *similibusque Formulis additur Subjunctivus, vel cum Conjunctionibus ut, ne, vel omissa aliquando Conjunctione.*

123 A. *Subjective additur.*

Hic consul permitto, ut duo legio scribo novus.  
 Caveo, en etiam in gravis inimicitia converto se amicitia.

Fremo omnis licet: dico, qui sentio.  
 Pro argentum aurum do, convenit (*R. 114*).

123 B. *Objective additur.*

Nunc vero opto potius, ut eo in exsilium, quam queror.

Peto abs tu, ut hic curo diligenter.  
 Hortor signifer, ut ocus eo.  
 Cohortor suus, ne labor succumbo.  
 Caesar Trebonius magnopere mando, ne per vis oppidum expugno.  
 Enitor, ut præter tu nemo dolor meus sentio.  
 Quis tu causa, ut provincia tuus excedo, induco?  
 Cogo, ut vita se ipse (*N. 23. Obs. 2*) privo.  
 Magnitudo res facio, ut non (*N. 319*) vereor, ne nimis cito litteræ mitto.  
 Ego cum ago, ut se ne (*N. 319*) impedio (*sing.*).  
 Tu ad ego volo (*pres. R. 115*) litteræ crebro mitto.

Suffer them to call you timid instead of cautious; unwarlike instead of one skilled in war.

Beware, if you love me, of thinking that I did this.

123 c. *It is added by Apposition.*

They besought one thing, that he would not deprive them of their arms.

There is an old law, that the prætor should drive in a nail on the Ides of September.

In pain this is to be chiefly seen to, that we do nothing in an abject or cowardly manner.

124. *After many of these Verbs the Infinitive construction is equally good.*

I wish you, however, Atratinus, to be admonished of this.

That poor man is anxious that he should appear grateful to those from whom he has expectations.

He orders the soldiers to sit down; and to take their food.

And he forbid them to use imported salt.

Pompey interrupted him, and prevented him from saying more.

The camp was impregnable; nor could the king be compelled to fight.

125. *The Subjunctive is joined to Pronouns and Particles of Interrogation, when put subordinately: such Interrogatives are—*

Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,

Quam, quamobrem, quare, cur, quomodo, num, ne, ut, an, utrum.

125 a. *It is joined Subjectively.*

It is incredible how highly both I and my brother value Lænius.

It will afterwards appear what money they secretly gave you.

It matters more where I am, than what I am.

It can scarcely be computed, whether he is more avaricious or more cruel.

Sino timidus pro cantus, imbellis pro peritus bellum voco.

Caveo (*sing.*); si ego amo, existimo ego hic facio.

123 c. *Per Appositionem additur.*

Unus peto, ne se arma despolio.

Lex vetustus sum, ut prætor Idus September (*N.* 247. 2)  
clavus pango.

Hic quidem in dolor maxime sum providendus, ne quis  
abjecte, ne quis timide facio.

124. *Post multa ex his Verbis æquæ placet Infinitiva constructio.*

Ille tamen tu, Atratinus, sum admonitus volo.

Ille tenuis ille, a qui exspecto, gratus se videor studeo.

Consido miles (*sing.*) et cibus capio jubeo.

Et sal invectus utor veto. (*N.* 320.)

Is Pompeius interpello, et loquor multus (*pl.*) prohibeo.

Inexpugnabilis castra sum (*imperf.*), neque cogo pugno  
possum rex.

125. *Pronominibus et Particulis Interrogandi, subordinate positis, Subjunctivus jungitur: talia sunt—*

Quis, quantus, qualis, qui, quot, quotus, unde, ubi, quando,

Quam, quamobrem, quare, cur, quomodo, num, ne, ut, an, utrum.

125 A. *Subjective jungitur.*

Incredibilis sum, quantus facio et ego et frater meus  
Lænius.

Quis (*R.* 79. B) tu clam do pecunia, post videtur.

Ubi sum, quam qui (*N.* 25) sum, magis refert.

Utrum avarus an crudelis sum, vix existimo possum.

Nor was it quite clear to their minds, whether they should praise or blame so daring a march of the consul.

Teach me this, that there is no difference, whether I am in pain or not in pain.

125 B. *It is joined Objectively.*

He did not dare to repeat how many miles his farm was distant from the city.

I wish I had come nearer to you. Now I cannot guess, either where or when I shall see you.

I knew what you were doing, and where you were; but I could not at all guess when we should see you.

You are asleep, and do not even yet appear to me to understand how open we are to attack, and how weak we are.

I do not ask of you why Sextus Roscius killed his father: I ask how he killed him.

You ask how I conducted myself? Firmly.

I ask first, whether you leave your case to the senate.

Then I showed the tablets to Lentulus, and asked if he knew the seal.

I know not whether this has ever happened to any general of ours.

I know not whether a greater amount of trouble is not being prepared for me.

Thinking it of little consequence, whether the dictator was present or absent, they advanced to the camp.

125 c. *It is joined by Apposition.*

This also must be considered, to what enemy you are about to leave us: to Pyrrhus for instance, or to a barbarian?

I am ignorant of this one thing, whether I should congratulate you, or fear for you.

126. Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nullus, ut nemo, in a *Consecutive sense*, require a *Subjunctive*:—(a) *After the Demonstratives* sic, ita, eo, tam, adeo, tot, tantus, talis, is, hic, huc: (b) *The Demonstratives being understood*: (c) *After a Comparative and quam.*

Neque satis constat (*imperf.*) animus, tam audax iter consul laudo vituperone. (*N.* 44.)

Hic doceo, doleo, necne doleo, nihil intersum.

125 B. *Objective jungitur.*

Non audeo iterum dico, quot millia (*N.* 15. *Obs.*) fundus suus absum ab urbs.

Utinam prope (*N.* 124. 1. *b*) tu accedo! Nunc nec ubi nec quando tu video, possum suspicor.

Quis ago, et ubi sum, cognosco: quando autem tu video (*fut.*), nihil sane possum suspicor.

Vos dormio, nec adhuc ego videor intelligo, quam ego pateo, et quam sum imbecillus.

Non quæro abs tu, quare pater Sex. Roscius occido: quæro, quomodo occido.

Quæro, ego ego ut gero? Constanter.

Primum quæro, num tu senatus causa tuus permitto.

Tum ostendo tabella Lentulus, et quæro, cognoscone signum.

Hic nescio an nullus unquam noster accido imperator. (*N.* 43. *Obs.* 1.)

Nescio an amplus (*R.* 79. *B*) ego negotium contraho.

Adsum an absum dictator, parvus faciens, ad castra accedo. (*N.* 44.)

125 c. *Per Appositionem jungitur.*

Ille etiam animadvertendus sum, qui ego hostis relinquo (*pl.*): Pyrrhus videlicet, an barbarus?

Unus ille nescio, gratulor ne tu (*dat.*), an timeo.

126. Ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut nullus, ut nemo, *Consecutivo sensu, Subjunctivum postulant*:—(*a*) *Post Demonstrativa* sic, ita, eo, tam, adeo, tot, tantus, talis, is, hic, huc: (*b*) *Suppressio Demonstrativo*: (*c*) *Post Comparativum et quam.*

(a)

You were in Asia with supreme power for three years, in such a way that no money seduced you from the most perfect integrity.

I have not so feared unpopularity, as to have no hope in the justice of my fellow-citizens.

I am not so dull as to say that.

Nor was he so ignorant of facts, as not to know that the Æduli had refused help to the Romans.

His arrival restrained the Etrurians, so completely that no one dared to go beyond the fortifications.

He purchased that vessel lately at so high a price, that those, who were present, thought a farm was being sold.

Matters have been brought to such a pass, that we cannot be safe.

(b)

Nor have I touched any stream colder than this, so that I can scarcely try it with my foot.

(c)

This deed is too mean to seem to be worthy of your grandfather.

We will die a thousand times, rather than suffer so much disgrace to be incurred.

127. Ut, ne, ut ne, in a *Final sense*, require a *Subjunctive*.

We follow after these things, in order that we may live without care and fear.

That law was passed for this purpose, that it might check the luxury of the women.

Others were left to protect the city.

I think that that youth ought to be kept at home, lest some day this little flame kindle a wide conflagration.

They burned the town, that it might not be of any use to the Romans.

The accounts have been sealed up for this reason, that they may not be able to be falsified easily.

I could wish that you would write to me, that I may be ignorant of nothing whatever.

(a)

Summus cum imperium sum in Asia triennium, sic ut nullus tu pecunia ab summus integritas deduco. (N. 316. 1.)

Non ita invidia pertimesco, ut nihil in æquitas civis meus spes habeo. (N. 315.)

Non sum ita hebes, ut iste dico.

Neque tam imperitus sum res, ut non scio Ædui Romani auxilium nego.

Adventus is comprimo Etrusci, adeo ut nemo extra munimentum egredior audeo.

Tantus pretium ille vas nuper mercor, ut, qui adsum, fundus veneo arbitror.

In is locus res (*sing.*) deduco, ut salvus sum nequeo. (N. 315.)

(b)

Nec ullus hic frigidus flumen attingo, ut vix pes tento is possum.

(c)

Inferus sum istic (N. 21. *Obs.*) factum, quam ut avus tuus dignus sum videor.

Millies morior potius, quam ut tantus (R. 79. B) dedecus admitto patior.

127. Ut, ne, ut ne, *Finali sensu, Subjunctivum postulant.*  
Iste sequor, ut sine cura metusque vivo.

Iste lex ideo fero, ut finio luxuria muliebria. (N. 48.)

Alius ut urbs præsideo, relinquo.

Iste juvenis domus tenendus censeo, ne quandoque partus hic ignis incendium ingens exsuscito.

Oppidum, ne quis sum usus Romani (R. 34. B), incendo.

Ne corrumpo tabula facile possum, idcirco obsigno.

Tu volo ad ego scribo, ut prorsus ne quis ignoro.



128. Quum, in a Causal sense, generally governs a Subjunctive.

Since life without friends is full of snares and anxiety, reason itself warns us to make friendships.

But, since grief was depriving me of sleep, I determined to write.

129. Quod, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, and siquidem, in a Causal sense, delight in an Indicative. (See Note 321.)

And indeed I valued him even more highly, because I perceived that you were beloved by him.

I was at leisure by reason that I had dismissed my scholars.

He began to hate me, because he was indebted to me for (he owed to me) great kindnesses.

Since we have done what we ought (to have done), let us bear with calmness what happens.

Since the authority of the senate is of no weight with you, I appeal to the people.

Since just plans had not turned out well, he began to use base ones.

They are more than parricides, since it is a more atrocious deed to kill one's country's, than one's own parent.

130. Quum, quando, quoties, simul, ut, simul atque, simul ac, ubi, postquam, Conjunctions of Time, delight in an Indicative. (But see Note 322.)

When we read that eulogy, what philosopher do we not despise?

I told Gallus, when I was last at Rome, what I had heard. When I have got there, then I will write to you about my return.

It is many years since he has been in my debt.

Every one spoke as often as he wished, and as long as he wished.

As soon as I shall hear anything, I will write to you.

As soon as he was ordered to go into exile, he obeyed, and went.

128. Quum, *Causali sensu*, *Subjunctivum plerumque regit*.

Quum vita sine amicus insidiæ (*gen.*) et metus plenus sum ratio ipse moneo amicitia comparo. (*N.* 320.)  
Sed, quum ego ægritudo somnus privo, scribo instituo.

129. Quod, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, siquidem, *Causali sensu*, *Indicativo gaudent*.

Et mehercule etiam plus is facio, quod tu amo ab is sentio.

Otiosus sum propterea quod discipulus dimitto.

Ego odi, quia magnus ego debeo (*N.* 29. 1) beneficium, cœpi.

Quando præsto, qui debeo (*perf.*), moderate, qui evenio, fero.

Quandoquidem nihil apud tu auctoritas senatus valeo, provoco ad populus.

Quoniam rectus consilium haud bene evenio, pravus utor cœpi.

Plus quam parricida sum, siquidem sum atrox patria parens quam suus occido.

130. Quum, quando, quoties, simul, ut, simul atque, simul ac, ubi, postquam, *Conjunctiones Temporis*, *Indicativo gaudent*.

Is laudatio quum lego, quis philosophus non contemno?

Gallus narro, quum proxime Roma sum (*perf.*), quis audio. Quum illuc venio (*N.* 34. 2), tum de reditus meus ad tu scribo.

Multus annus sum, quum ille in æs meus sum. (*N.* 28.)  
Quoties quisque volo, dico, et quam volo diu.

Simul aliquis audio (*N.* 34. 2), scribo ad tu.

Simul atque eo in exsilium jubeo, pareo, eo.

This I perceived and foresaw, as soon as I beheld you. :

A new fear also came upon (*was added to*) the Romans, when they saw their allies routed.

When a violent storm has arisen, and the ship is being driven by the wind, then there is need of a brave man and a pilot.

I wrote this letter on the eleventh day after I had left you.

After that I came to Sicily, he suddenly became his friend.

He had been consul for the first time the year after I was born.

131. Quum, when partly Temporal, partly Causal, after a Principal Sentence in Historic time, takes the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive. (See Note 322.)

We made peace with them when conquered; we afterwards considered them as allies, when they were hard pressed by the African war.

When the Samnites had brought a great weight of gold to Curius as he was sitting at his hearth, they were rejected.

When the battle had lasted (*when it had been fought*) a long time, and our men were being hard pressed by numbers, all their missiles being spent, they charge the cohorts.

132. Dum, donec, quoad, antequam, priusquam, sometimes take an Indicative, sometimes a Subjunctive.

132 A. Dum, donec (*whilst, as long as*), quoad (*as long as*), delight in an Indicative.

Whilst Latin literature shall have a voice, that oak shall not be wanting to this spot.

As long as they were retreating with their arms and in a close body, the foot-soldiers pursued them.

As long as any day-light was left, they were retreating by secret paths.

Hic ego, simulac tu adspicio, sentio atque provideo.  
Addo quoque novus terror Romani, ut fusus auxilium suus  
video.

Ubi sævus orior tempestas, ac ventus rapio navis, tum vir  
et gubernator opus est.

Undecimus dies postquam a tu discedo, hic littera scribo.

Posteaquam ego in Sicilia venio, repente iste amicus fio.

Annus post consul primum sum; quàm ego nascor. (*N.*  
325.)

131. Quum, *sensu partim Temporali, partim Causali, post Clausulam Principalem in Historico, hoc est Præterito, Tempore, Imperfectum et Plusquamperfectum Subjunctivum exigit.*

Pax cum victus facio; socius deinde ducor, quum Africanus  
bellum urgeo (*imperf.*).

Curius ad focus sedens magnus aurum pondus Samnites  
quum affero, repudio.

Diu quum pugno, nosterque graviter (*comp.*) a multitudo  
(*sing.*) premo, consumptus omnis telum, impetus in cohors  
facio. (*N.* 317. 1.)

132. Dum, donec, quoad, antequam, priusquam, *nunc Indicativum, nunc Subjunctivum capiunt.*

132 A. Dum, donec (*whilst, as long as*), quoad (*as long as*), *Indicativo gaudent.*

Dum Latinus loquor litteræ, quercus ille hic locus non  
desum.

Donec armatus confertusque (*N.* 94. 2) abeo, pedes per-  
sequor.

Quoad lux supersum (*perf.*) quisquam (*R.* 79. B), devius  
callis sui recipio.

132 B. Dum, donec, quoad (*until*), *sometimes take an Indicative, sometimes a Subjunctive.* (See Note 323.)

Virginius waited until such time as he could consult his colleague.

He did not cease to lay waste the fields, until he drove the army of the Samnites from the country.

I will defend the province, until you send armies hither to relieve me.

132 C. Antequam, priusquam, *sometimes take an Indicative, sometimes a Subjunctive.* (See Note 324.)

I was ever a friend to Ventidius, before he became so openly an enemy to the state and all good men.

Before that I shall speak of the republic, I will explain to you shortly the reason of my return.

This cause expired before you had been born.

Before I answer on other subjects, I will say a few words about friendship.

Safe and untouched, they fled from an unknown enemy almost before they saw him.

133. Si, nisi, *sometimes are placed before the Indicative, sometimes before the Conjunctive Mood.*

133 A. Si, nisi, *where there is no uncertainty in the Condition, are placed before the Indicative.*

Now, if you have any certain news about Cæsar, I expect a letter.

Unless my eyes deceive me, your mother and wife are here.

If they have spoken more cheerfully than usual, they recall themselves again to sorrow.

I shall receive no injury, if you are (*shall be*) there.

If I shall not exist, I shall be altogether without feeling.

133 B. Si, nisi, *where a Condition is put forward as uncertain, are placed before the Conjunctive.* (See also Note 326. 1.)

If I were to require the greatest services of you, it would appear wonderful to no one.

132 B. Dum, donec, quoad (*until*), *nunc Indicativum, nunc Subjunctivum capiunt.*

Virginius, dum consulo (*imperf. N. 41*) collega, moror.

Populor non desisto ager, donec Samnites exercitus expello (*perf.*) finis (*pl.*).

Provincia tueor, quoad exercitus huc summitto (*pl.*).

132 c. Antequam, priusquam, *nunc Indicativum, nunc Subjunctivum capiunt.*

Ventidius sum semper amicus, antequam ille respublica bonusque omnis tam aperte fio (*perf.*) inimicus.

Antequam de respublica dico, expono vos breviter consilium reversio meus.

Hic causa ante morior, quam tu nascor. (*N. 325.*)

Priusquam de ceteri res respondeo, de amicitia paucus dico.

Ignotus hostis prius pæne, quam video (*imperf.*), integer intactusque fugio.

133. Si, nisi, *nunc Indicativo, nunc Coniunctivo præmittuntur.*

133 A. Si, nisi, *ubi in Conditione nihil incerti inest, Indicativo præmittuntur.*

Jam, si quis (*pl. N. 26. A*) certus habeo de Cæsar, exspecto litteræ.

Nisi ego frustror oculus, mater tu (*N. 148. C. 2*) conjuxque adsum.

Si hilariter (*N. 10. A*) loquor, revoco se rursus ad mæstitia.

Nihil accipio injuria, si tu adsum.

Si non sum, sensus omnino careo.

133 B. Si, nisi, *ubi Conditio, ut incerta, proponitur, Coniunctivo præmittuntur.*

Ego si abs tu summus officium desidero, mirus nemo videor (*pres.*).

I would not seek peace, unless I thought it useful.  
 If the Spaniards had not fled before the battle had been well begun, very few out of the whole army would have survived.  
 No one would have ploughed, if Metellus had not sent this letter.  
 They would certainly not have done this, if they thought that it did not at all concern the dead.  
 But if Cæsar's course had been the same, we should still have Pompey's two sons safe and unhurt.  
 But the memory is weakened. I believe this, unless you exercise it, or if you are by nature somewhat slow.

134. *Modo, dum, dummodo, modo ut, in a Conditional sense, govern a Subjunctive.*

We must turn aside from the way, provided only that very serious disgrace do not follow.  
 I will undergo the greatest dangers for my country, provided I be free from the charge of rashness, if anything shall happen to me.  
 I thought every thing of secondary importance, so that I might but obey the commands of my father.  
 He has bought it safely, if only he has bought it fairly.

135. *The Concessive Conjunctions, etsi, tametsi, etiamsi, sometimes take an Indicative, sometimes a Conjunctive Mood. (See Note 328.)*

Although I acquit myself of guilt, I do not free myself from punishment.  
 I perceive that the war will not be long, although even this (*this itself*) may seem otherwise to some.  
 Tullus did not treat them with contempt, although vain proposals were being made.  
 Even though many shall contend with me, yet I shall easily surpass them all.  
 Who would not love modesty in youth, even though it were of no use to himself personally?

Pax non peto (*imperf.*), nisi utilis credo.  
 Nisi Hispani vixdum consertus prælium (*abl. abs.*) effugio,  
 perpaucus ex totus supersum acies.

Aro nemo, si Metellus hic epistola non mitto.

Hic non facio profecto, si nihil ad mortuus pertinet arbitror  
 (*imperf.*).

Quodsi idem ratio Cæsar sum, duo Pompeius filius incolumis  
 habeo (*imperf.*).

At memoria minuo. Credo (*N. 326. 2*), nisi is exerceo  
 (*sing.*), aut si sum natura tardus (*comp.*).

134. Modo, dum, dummodo, modo ut, *Conditionali sensu*,  
*Subjunctivum regunt.*

Declino de via, modo ne (*N. 327*) summus turpitude sequor.

Magnus periculum pro patria subeo, dum, si quis accido  
 (*fut. perf.*) ego, a reprehensio temeritas absum.

Omnis postpono, dummodo præceptum pater pareo.

Impune is emo, modo ut bonus ratio emo.

135. *Concessivæ Conjunctiones*, etsi, tametsi, etiamsi, nunc  
*Indicativum, nunc Conjunctivum capiunt.*

Ego ego, etsi peccatum (*abl.*) absolvo, supplicium non  
 libero.

Intelligo non diuturnus bellum sum, etsi is ipse nonnullus  
 videor secus.

Haud aspernor is Tullus, tametsi vanus offeror.

Etiamsi multus ego cum contendo, tamen omnis facile  
 supero.

Quis in adolescentia pudor, etiamsi suus nihil interest, non  
 tamen diligo (*pres.*)?



186. *Quanquam, utut, delight in an Indicative.* (See Note 829.)

Although these things are grievous even to be heard, yet it is more tolerable to hear than to see them.

The Samnites keep their ground obstinately, although they receive more wounds than they inflict.

187. *Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quum, ne, in a Concessive sense, govern a Subjunctive.*

He often said, 'You effect nothing, pain: though you be troublesome, I will never confess that you are an evil.'

Therefore, though Octavius call Cicero his father, though he praise him and thank him, yet this will be clear, that his words are contrary to his deeds.

We are waiting for you and your army, without which, though all else succeed to our mind, we shall scarcely be quite free.

Cicero himself, though he was in very weak health, did not leave himself time even at night for rest.

You deny that there is so great a likeness. Though there be not, there can surely appear to be.

188. *The Comparative Particles, quasi, tanquam, ceu, velut, and the like, govern a Subjunctive.* (See Note 329.)

These men carefully humour the pleasure of Sextus Nævius, in the same way as though their own property or honour were at stake.

But I, as though my dispute had been with Crassus, said nothing about the man personally.

The games were then begun, as if that circumstance had had nothing to do with religion.

Fear came upon the senators, as if the enemy were already at the gates.

He supported me with all kind services, just as if he had been my brother.

189. *The Relative, qui, quæ, quod, and also the Correlatives and Universals, are joined to an Indicative, unless there be need of a Subjunctive.*

Look for examples under Rules 9, 9 A, and 18.

136. *Quanquam, utut, Indicativo gaudent.*

Quanquam hic etiam audio (*R. 95*) acerbus sum, tamen audio tolerabilis sum quam video.

Sto obniscus (*N. 94. 1*) Samnites, quanquam plus accipio quam infero, vulnus.

137. *Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quum, ne, Concessivo sensu, Subjunctivum regunt.*

Sæpe dico, 'Nihil ago, dolor: quamvis sum molestus, nunquam tu sum confiteor malum.'

Licet ergo pater appello Octavius Cicero, laudo, gratiæ ago, tamen ille apparet, verhum res sum contrarius.

Ego tu tuusque exercitus exspecto, sine qui, ut reliquus (*pl.*) ex sententia succedo, vix satis liber sum.

Ipse Cicero, quum tenuis valetudo sum, ne nocturnus quidem sui tempus ad quietem relinquo (*imperf.*).

Nego (*sing.*) tantus similitudo sum. Ne sum sane, videor certe possum.

138. *Comparativæ Particulæ, quasi, tanquam, ceu, velut, cum similibus, Subjunctivum regunt.*

Hic quasi suus res aut honos ago (*N. 86. 1. a*), ita diligenter Sex. Nævius studium mos gero.<sup>1</sup>

At ego, tanquam ego cum Crassus contentio sum (*imperf.*), de hominibus nihil dico. (*N. 314. A. Obs.*)

Cæpi (*N. 38. C. Obs. 2*) inde ludus, velut is res nihil ad religio pertineo (*pluperf.*).

Metus Patres capio, velut si jam ad porta hostis sum.

Ego omnis officium, juxta ac si frater meus sum, sustento. (*N. 304.*)

139. *Relativum, qui, quæ, quod, itemque Corre'ativa et Universalis, Indicativo junguntur, nisi opus sit Subjunctivo.*

Pete exempla sub Regulis 9, 9 A, et 18.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Morem tibi gero, I humour you.*

140. Qui, in a Causal sense, delights in a Subjunctive.

Shall I not deem you mad, you who have (i.e. because you have) dared first to do, then to confess this?

I seem to myself to have sinned, because that I departed from you.

141. Qui, in a Concessive sense, delights in a Subjunctive.

O my friend Furnius, how clearly do you not understand your own case, you who (i.e. though you) so easily apprehend the cases of others!

142. Qui, in a Final sense, governs a Subjunctive.

Obs. Hence quo for ut eo, governs a Subjunctive.

Let therefore a letter from you follow us, by which (i.e. in order that by it) we may learn not only all facts, but also all rumours.

They sent messengers to Rome, who might (i.e. in order to) inform the senate of their misfortune.

Whom shall I leave to govern the province?

He forbade fires to be made, in order that his arrival might be more secret.

143. Qui, in a Consecutive sense, governs a Subjunctive Mood:—(a) After the Demonstratives, talis, is for talis, tantus, tam, adeo, and the like: (b) Omitting the Demonstrative: (c) After a Comparative and quam: (d) After dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus.

(a)

For neither are you one who can (such an one that you can) be ignorant of these things.

Was there any avarice so great as to (so great as that it could) extinguish so great religion?

Who is there so senseless that these things can influence him?

(b)

It is not in your power perhaps to say what you may think; it is clearly in your power to be silent.

140. Qui, *Causali sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet.*

Ego tu non demens puto (*R.* 115), qui hic audeo primum facio, deinde confiteor?

Pecco ego videor, qui a tu discedo. (*N.* 316. 1.)

141. Qui, *Concessivo sensu, Subjunctivo gaudet.*

O meus Furnius, quam tu causa tuus non novi, qui alienus (*N.* 48) tam facile disco!

142. Qui, *Finali sensu, Subjunctivum regit.*

Obs. *Hinc*, quo *pro* ut eo, *Subjunctivum regit.*

Sequor igitur ego tuus litteræ, qui non modo res omnis, sed etiam rumor cognosco.

Nuntius Roma, qui certus (*N.* 10. *A.* *Obs.*) de suis casus senatus facio, mitto.

Quis relinquo, qui provincia præsum?

Ignis fio prohibeo, quo occultus sum suis adventus.

143. Qui, *Consecutivo sensu, Subjunctivum regit*:—(a) *Post Demonstrativa*, talis, is *pro* talis, tantus, tam, adeo, similia: (b) *Omisso Demonstrativo*: (c) *Post Comparativum et quam*: (d) *Post dignus, indignus idoneus, aptus.*

(a)

Neque enim tu is es, qui iste nescio.

Sum ullus cupiditas tantus, qui tantus exstinguo religio?

Quis sum tam excors, qui iste moveo?

(b)

Dico fortasse, qui (*pl.*) sentio, non licet; taceo plane licet.

The people, which is coming, is one to which (*such an one that to it*) nature has given large rather than strong bodies.

(c)

For the injuries to their reputation were greater than could be estimated.

(d)

Will there be any spot in the world worthier of receiving this worth, than this spot which gave birth to it?

Cæsar had judged him a fit person to send (*whom he might send*) with his instructions to Cn. Pompey.

144. *In fine*, qui, in a Consecutive sense, governs a Subjunctive Mood, wherever it means nearly the same as talis ut: for so it is constructed, (a) After est, sunt, invenio, reperio, habeo, and the like: (b) After aliquis, pauci, multi, solus, and the like, when put indefinitely: (c) After nemo, nihil, nullus, and the like, also after Interrogatives which expect a negation.

(a)

Cæsar has granted them their life, nor is there aught besides, which can be taken from them.

There are men who would prefer military to civil affairs.

There were some to accuse the king of rashness.

You will very easily find people to go to Rome.

I had no one to whom I could better commit that business.

(b)

Nor had he any one to whom to (*to whom he could*) tell it.

There were few with whom I should have been so willingly as with yourself.

But many have been found, who were ready to sacrifice their life for their country.

(c)

There is not one of you, before whose eyes I have not myself often performed some military exploit.

They did nothing which was unworthy of themselves.

Qui advento, gens sum, qui natura corpus magnus magis  
quam firmus do.

(c)

Nam fama damnum magnus sum, quam qui aestimo  
possum.

(d)

Sum dignus locus in terra ullus, qui hic virtus excipio,  
quam hic qui procreo?

Hic Cæsar idoneus judico, qui cum mandatum ad Cn.  
Pompeius mitto.

144. Qui *demum*, *Consecutivo sensu*, *Subjunctivum regit*,  
*ubique idem fere significat ac talis ut: sic enim con-*  
*struitur*, (a) *Post est, sunt, invenio, reperio, habeo, similia:*  
(b) *Post aliquis, pauci, multi, solus, similia, indefinite posita:*  
(c) *Post nemo, nihil, nullus, similia, item post Interrogativa*  
*negationem expectantia.*

(a)

Hic Cæsar vita concedo, nec sum, qui is præterea adimo  
possum.

Sum, qui urbanus res bellicus antepono.

Sum (*perf.*), qui rex temeritas accuso.

Facile tu reperio, qui Roma proficiscor.

Non habeo, qui potius is (*R. 79*) negotium do.

(b)

Nec aliquis, qui is narro, habeo.

Sum (*imperf.*) paucus, qui cum sum (*imperf.*) æque libenter  
ac tu cum.

Invenio autem multus, qui vita profundo pro patria paratus  
sum.

(c)

Nemo vos sum, qui non ante oculus ipse sæpe militaris aliqui

(*N. 26. B*) edo facinus.

Nihil, qui ipse sum indignus, committo.

There shall be no colony of yours, which shall surpass us in submission to you and fidelity.

But who was there found, besides Clodius, to blame my consulship?

What is there, that you would not fear from one who deems the very temples his prey?

145. *The Relative Particles, quo, qua, quomodo, ubi, cur, quare, unde, and the like, govern an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood by nearly the same Rules as the Relative, qui, quæ, quod.*

He has departed indeed to those places to which (*whither*) I myself must come.

I had one to whom (*whither*) I might fly, with whom (*where*) I might rest, in whose conversation I might lay aside all my cares.

But my speech shall stop at the point from which (*whence*) it began.

There has been and there will be opportunity enough, from which (*whence*) military glory may be acquired.

What reason, I pray, is there why they should disturb heaven and earth?

Or was this a sufficiently good reason for your proclaiming war against your country?

Very many things can be said, whereby this may be understood.

Let us not seek how to become a warning to others.

146. *Quominus, after Verbs which contain any matter of impediment, governs a Subjunctive of the action begun, but impeded.*

Obs. *Ne after the same Verbs prohibits the action.*

Neither do years hinder us from retaining these pursuits even to the extreme limit of old age.

Some chance prevented my doing that in this discussion.

I will make no objection to his being a most bitter enemy to me.

He explained his commission: he refused to give his vote.

He was the cause of their not following out their plans.

Nullus colonia vester sum, qui ego obsequium erga vos fidesque supero (*pres.*).

Quis autem, meus consulatus, præter Clodius, qui vitupero, invenio?

Quis sum, qui ab is non metuo, qui ipse templum præda puto?

145. *Relativæ Particulæ*, quo, qua, quomodo, ubi, cur, quare, unde, *cum similibus, iisdem fere Regulis, quibus Relativum*, qui, quæ, quod, *Indicativum vel Subjunctivum postulant.*

In is profecto locus (*N. 6. A*) discedo, quo ego ipse venio.

Habeo, quo confugio, ubi conquiesco, qui in sermo omnia cura depono.

Sed, unde cepi oratio meus, ibi desino.

Satis sum sumque, unde ducis bellum (*N. 109. 2*) pario.

Quis tandem sum, cur cælum et terra (*pl.*) misceo?

An hic satis dignus causa sum, cur patria indico (*pl.*) bellum?

Permutus dico possum, quare hic intelligo.

Ne quæro, quemadmodum ceteri exemplum sum (*A 94 B*).

146. Quominus, *post Verba quæ quid impediementi continent, Subjunctivum regit inceptæ, sed impeditæ actionis.*

Obs. Ne *post eadem Verba prohibet actionem.*

Nec ætas (*sing.*) impedio, quominus hic studium teneo usque ad ultimus tempus senectus.

Is in hic disputatio casus quidam, ne facio, impedio.

Ego, quominus ego inimicus sum, non recuso.

Mandatum (*pl.*) expono: sententia ne dico, recuso.

Per is stat, quominus inceptum persequor.



147. *Quin for qui non, after Negatives and Interrogatives, governs a Subjunctive.* (See Note 330.)

But in the fort there was not a single one of the soldiers, who was not wounded.

I deny that there was any jewel or pearl in all Sicily, which he did not examine.

Who ever saw that temple, but would be a witness to your avarice?

148. *Quin for quod non, ut non, after a Negation or an Interrogation of doubting, abstaining, impediment, cause, and the like, governs a Subjunctive.*

Nor do they doubt that he will cross the Euphrates in person with all his forces at the beginning of summer.

I did not doubt that you would read my letter with pleasure.

He did not refrain from bringing a charge of precipitation against (*from objecting precipitation to*) his brother.

I myself never see them without recollecting this man's kindness towards me.

We cannot refuse that others should dissent from us.

Nor was there much to save them from being driven also from the camp.

How can he refuse that the allies also should take care of themselves?

Did there appear to be any reason why he should not consecrate that statue to Concord?

149. *A Sentence, which is subordinated to Oblique Oration, whether a Conjunction or a Relative come between, requires a Subjunctive Mood.*

I think that the Roman nation is on this account unconquered, because in prosperity it remembers to be wise and provident.

He says that, when he does this, he consults the interest of the state.

I wish you however to know this, that all were very anxious about the death of the Sulla, before they knew something certain

147. Quin, *pro* qui non, *post Negativa et Interrogativa, Subjunctivum regit.*

Sed in castellum nemo sum omnino miles, quin vulnero.

Nego in Sicilia totus ullus (*N. 91*) gemma aut margarita sum, quin inspicio (*perf.*).

Quis unquam templum ille aspicio, quin avaritia (*gen.*) tuus testis sum?

148. Quin, *pro* quod non, ut non, *post Negationem vel Interrogationem* dubitationis, abstinentiæ, impedimenti, causæ, et similium, *Subjunctivum regit.*

Nec dubito, quin cum omnis copię ipse primus æstas Euphrates (*N. 5. F. 2*) transeo.

Non dubito, quin meus litteræ libenter lego (*fut.*).

Non tempero, quin festinatio frater objicio.

Ego ipse nunquam ille adspicio, quin hicce meritum (*gen.*) in ego recordor.

Non possum, quin alius a ego dissentio, recuso.

Neque multum abest (*impers.*), quin etiam castra expello.

Quid recuso possum, quin et socius sui consulo? (*N. 41.*)

Numquis (*R. 73*) sum causa videor (*imperf.*), quin is signum Concordia dedico?

149. *Sententia, quæ subordinatur Orationi Obliquæ, sive Conjunctione sive Relativo intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit.*

Populus Romanus eo invictus sum sentio, quod in secundus res (*pl.*) sapio et consulo memini. (*N. 38. A. 3.*)

Aio, quum hic facio, civitas se consulo.

Tu tamen hic scio volo, vehementer omnis sollicitus sum de Sulla mors, antequam certus scio (*perf.*).

I confess that; unless they are the saviours of the state, they are worse than parricides.

They say they understand that, although he had taken vengeance on the Helvetii in arms (*by war*), this had nevertheless been done (*had happened*) in accordance with the usage of all nations.

For their generals had easily persuaded the Romans that they were fighting for Italy and the city of Rome, though they were fighting far from their country.

They say that old age creeps on faster than they had thought.

The Stoics say that all are rich, who can enjoy the air and earth.

One of them said that the Athenians knew what was right, but were unwilling to practise it.

I wonder that you, Antony, do not dread the fate of those men whose deeds you are imitating.

Do not think, Pompey, that this is the army which subdued Gaul and Germany.

You can clearly see this, judges, that whatever misfortune Cluentius has seen has been all prepared by his mother.

They explained that they had intended to depart in silence to whatever part of the world they could.

150. *A Subordinate Sentence, which expresses somebody's opinion or thought, whether a Conjunction or a Relative come between, requires a Subjunctive Mood.*

Plato admirably calls pleasure the bait of sin, because by it, as he explains, men are caught, as fish by a hook.

Thanks were given to the consul, because, it was said, he had not despaired of the commonwealth.

The Romans however were less moved by these disasters, because, as they reflected, the consuls were going on prosperously.

They came to Cæsar and began to make private requests of him about their own affairs, since, in their judgment, they were unable to consult for the state.

He demanded hostages, arms, and the slaves who, so he believed (or, *so he said*), had gone over to them.

The command of Scipio in Africa was prolonged with the armies which, as expressed in the decree, he had.

Confiteor<sup>is</sup>, n<sup>ost</sup>r<sup>i</sup> conservator republica sum, plus quam parricida sum.

Dico intelligo se, tametsi ab Helvetii poena (*pl.*) bellum repeto, tamen is res ex usus omnis gens accido.

Romani (*dat.*) enim, quanquam precul a patria pugno, facile persuadeo dux pro Italia atque urbs Romanus is pugno.

Obrepro aio senectus cito quam puto.

Stoicus dico omnis sum dives, qui coelum et terra frutor possum.

Dico ex is quidam Athenienses scio, qui (*pl.*) rectus sum, sed facio nolo.

Tu miror, Antonius, qui factum imitor, is exitus (*pl.*) non perhorresco.

Nolo (*N. 306. Obs.*) existime, Pompeius, hic sum exercitus qui Gallia Germaniaeque devineo.

Ille, iudex, perspicio possum, quisquis (*R. 79*) malum Cluentius video, is omnis a mater conflo.

Expono se tacitus abeo, quo terra possum, in animus habeo. (*N. 332.*)

150. *Sententia Subordinata, quæ opinionem cujuscumque vel cogitationem indicat, sive Conjunctione sive Relativo intercedente, Subjunctivum exigit.*

Divine Plato esca malum (*pl.*) voluptas appello, quod is videlicet homo capio, ut hamus piscis.

Consul gratiæ ago, quod de republica non despero.

Romani tamen, quia consul prospere res (*sing.*) gero, minus hic clades commoveo.

Ad Cæsar venio et de suis privatim res ab is peto cœpi, quoniam civitas consulo non possum.

Obses, arma, servus, qui ad is perfugio, posco.

Scipio (*N. 148. C. 1*) cum exercitus, qui habeo, in Africa prorogo imperium.

151. *A Conjunction or a Relative, when it is subordinated to a Subjunctive, governs a Subjunctive.*

He prayed that, since he had not helped him when alive, he would not suffer his death to be unavenged.

Although I send you a letter of this sort pretty often, when I return thanks because you attend to my introductions, yet nevertheless I will not hesitate to write a second time on the same subject.

By which means it came to pass that in those times, as soon as ever the enemy had been subdued, all the land was ploughed.

They gave warning to Gallonius to depart from Gades of his own accord, while it was in his power to do so without danger.

Who has led you to suppose that these men will hold different sentiments about this matter, from what they held in my absence?

How quickly did all those things fall from gladness to sorrow, so that he, who a short time before had been consul elect, retained on a sudden no vestige of his former dignity!

We complain, because, as we suppose, we are treated badly by those whom we have benefitted.

The dictator consecrated the temple to Venus; because it had been so decreed, that he should consecrate it, whose authority was greatest in the state.

When he had ordered the ambassadors to await his arrival at the place at which they then were, they obeyed.

He spoke also about Hannibal, who, so he said, had slain more generals and men of the Romans, than were left.

The milder opinion prevailed, that the punishment should stop in the quarter from which (*whence*) the fault had arisen.

152. *Oblique Oration runs to great length in the writings of Historians; principally Enuniations, and also Petitions and Interrogations interspersed among them.* (Here see Note 333.)

Having inveighed in many words against the treachery of the insurgent chiefs, he declared that he went with a

151. *Conjunctio vel Relativum, quum subordinatur Subjunctivo, Subjunctivum regit.*

Rogo, ut, quoniam sui vivus non subvenio, mors suus ne (N. 319) inultus sum patior.

Licet sæpe (N. 10. A) tu hic genus litteræ mitto, quum gratiæ ago, quod meus commendatio observo, sed tamen non dubito de idem res iterum scribo.

Quare evenit, ut tempus ille, simul atque hostis (*sing.*) supero, ager aro omnis.

Denuntio Gallonius, ut suus sponte, dum sine periculum licet, excedo Gades (*pl.*).

Quis tu induco, ut hic vir alius (*sing.*) de hic res sentio, ac (N. 304) ego absens sentio, arbitrator?

Quam cito ille omnis ex lætitia ad luctus recido, ut, qui paullo ante consul designatus sum, retineo repente nullus vestigium pristinus dignitas!

Conqueror, quod ab is male tracto, qui benefacio.

Venus ædes (N. 6. I) dictator voveo; quia ita edico, ut is voveo, qui magnus imperium in civitas sum.

Quum legatus in is locus, qui tum sum, suus adventus exspecto jubeo, pareo.

Adjicio de Hannibal, qui multus et dux et miles Romani occido, quam quot (N. 332) supersum.

Vinco sententia lenis, ut, unde (N. 332) culpa orior, ibi pœna consisto.

152. *Oratio Obliqua longe excurrit apud Historicos; Enuntiationes in primis, tum etiam his adpersæ Petitiones Interrogationesque.*

Multus verbum in perfidia rebellans regulus invectus, lætus et erectus animus se eo profiteor ac cades Ilargetes: non

glad and cheerful mind to the slaughter of the Hergetes: for he said that they were not joined to them by any ties. He intreated them therefore to follow him to inflict punishment on (to demand satisfaction from) those wicked men.

The commanders of the cavalry having been summoned to a council, he shows that the time for victory has come: he tells them that the Romans are retiring from Gaul. He advises therefore to attack them while embarrassed on their march.

He thus treats with Cæsar: If the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetii, he said that the Helvetii would depart thence. As to his having surprised (*because he had unexpectedly attacked*) one canton, he begged that he would not on that account either trust too much to his own valour, or despise them.

Fabius said that he was humouring the fear of others. However, if they would give him a partner in command, how (*in what way*), he asked, could he (*did they think that he could*) forget Publius Decius? He added that of all men he should prefer no one as his colleague (*to be associated with him*).

They thought that nothing should be done rashly: they showed that aid would come from Cæsar. What, they asked in the last place, was (*did they conceive to be*) more disgraceful than to deliberate on most important matters at the instigation of an enemy?

He sent a letter to the senate, to say that Veii would soon be in the power of the Roman people. He asked what they decided should be done with the booty.

Cæsar hoped that he could bring matters to an end without a battle. Why, he asked himself, should he lose any of his men, even in a successful engagement? Why should he suffer soldiers, who had deserved so well of him, to be wounded? Especially when it was no less the part of a commander to conquer by wisdom than by the sword.

NOTE.—Having finished Part III., turn back to the beginning, and translate either all the Sentences in Part I., or those only below the line.

*enim is ullus se cum societas junctus sum. Proinde sequor ad expetendus ab iste scelestus homo pœna (pl.).*

Convocatus ad concilium præfectus eques, *venio tempus victoria (gen.) demonstro: excedo Gallia Romani. Proinde in agmen impeditus adorior.*

*Is ita cum Cæsar ago: Si pax populus Romanus cum Helvetiis facio, Helvetiis inde abeo. Quod improvise unus pagus adorior, ne ob is res aut suus nimis virtus confido, aut ipse despicio.*

*Fabius alius se timor indulgeo aio. Ceterum, si se socius imperium (gen.) do, quisnam modus se obliviscor P. Decius (gen.) possum? Nemo omnis se cum conjungo malo.*

*Nihil temere agendus existimo: venio a Cæsar subsidium (pl.) doceo. Postremo, quis sum turpis quam, auctor hostis, de summus res capio consilium?*

*Litteræ ad senatus mitto: Veii jam sum in potestas populus Romanus. Qui de præda faciendus censeo?*

*Spero Cæsar se sine pugna res (sing.) conficio possum: Cur etiam secundus prælium aliquis ex suis amitto? Cur vulnere patior optime de se meritis miles? Præsertim quum non minus sum imperator consilium supero quam gladius.*

NOTA.—*Perfectâ Parte Tertiâ, ad inceptum rursus revertere, Sententiasque in Parte Primâ aut omnes verte, aut eas tantum quæ infra lineam sunt positæ.*



## EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES.

1. *R.* refers to the Rules in Parts I., II., and III. ; *N.* to the Notes in Part IV. of this book.

2. Besides the Primer, Dr. Kennedy has published a larger work, entitled the *Public School Latin Grammar*. The references throughout these pages are to this latter book (edition of 1871).

3. Professor Madvig's *Grammar* has been translated from the original German by the Rev. G. Woods ; and this translation (edition of 1851) is the work referred to throughout Part IV.

*Note I.*—The Latin examples given in the Notes are seldom quotations, except in those instances where the name of the author is added. Independently, however, of these examples, the Notes may be fully illustrated by comparing them with the sentences in Parts I., II., and III.

*Note II.*—No alteration whatever has been made in the Notes beyond altering the reference to the Rules, and adapting the references to the *Progressive Grammar* to the *Public School Latin Grammar*.

# NOTES

ON

## NOUNS, VERBS, ETC.

---

### SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Certain words sometimes make *um* instead of *arum* or *orum* in the genitive plural. But in prose this contraction is only admissible in the case of numerals, the names of measures, weights, and coins, and a few other words: *as, duum, amphorum, modium, sestertium, decemvirum litibus judicandis*. See also Cic. Orat. 46.

*Obs.* When two words in combination are both capable of being thus contracted, contract (1) both, or (2) neither. Write *navis ducentum amphorum*, or *navis ducentarum amphorarum*. Similarly, for the sake of euphony, contract, if allowable, a genitive combined with *trium* or *millium*. Write *triumvirum*, not *virorum*. See Cic. Orat. 46. 156. Here too we may notice this genitive in the following combination:—*In classem quinque millia navalium socium sunt scripta* (Liv. xliv. 21). Elsewhere in this author we find *Romanorum sociorumque*; and in the passage quoted, had it not been for the descriptive epithet *navalium*, he would have written *quinque millia sociorum*. Lastly, it is to be observed that this genitive is used by the poets, where it would be inadmissible in prose: *Versaque juvenem Itrga fatigamus hasta* (Virg. *Æn.* ix. 609, 610); *Magnanimum heroum corpora* (Id. *Georg.* iv. 476): For other instances of its poetical use, see Madvig, § 34. Obs. 3, and § 37. Obs. 4.

2. A. Some nouns in *is* of the third declension (as *navis*), not increasing in the genitive, make the accusative sometimes (1) in *im*, sometimes (2) in *em*.

B. Those neuter nouns which end in *e* (as *mare*), and some others (Primer, § 22), make the ablative in *i*. But see Note 5. I.

C. (1) Some nouns in *is* of the third declension (as *ignis*), not increasing in the genitive, make the ablative in (a) *i*, or (b) *e*: (2) others (as *vis* and *securis*) make it only in *i*. See also Note 5. G. (3) The usual (perhaps in prose the invariable) ablative of *imber* is *imbri*.

3. In those compound words which in reality consist of two words

written as one, both parts are declined: as, Nom. *respublica*, Gen. *reipublica*, &c.—Nom. *unusquisque*, Gen. *uniuscujusque*, &c.

Obs. Do not write *fides iurandumque*, but *fides iusque iurandum*: and so in the case of other compound words combined with *que*, *ve*, or *ne*. See Note 300.

4. There was an old form of the genitive case of the first declension ending in *as* (Madvig, § 34. Obs. 2). Hence we have (1) Nom. *paterfamilias*, Gen. *patrifamilias*, &c.;—Nom. Plur. *patresfamilias*, &c. But there is also (2) another form of the word: Nom. *paterfamilie* (also written separately, *pater familie*), Gen. *patrifamilie*, &c.;—Nom. Plur. *patresfamilie*, or *patresfamiliarum*.

Obs. Similarly are declined *materfamilias* and *materfamilie*.

5. For the full declension of Greek nouns (chiefly proper names), as they are used by Latin writers, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 24. III. (p. 54). Such words retain their Greek terminations much oftener in poetry than in prose. For those which occur in these Exercises, the following Rules will be found sufficient:—

A. Those of the first declension in *as* (as *Æneas*) make the accusative in (1) *as* or (2) *am*; but some probably only in *am*.

B. Those of the first declension in *es* make the vocative in (1) *ē* or (2) *ē*. In prose the latter termination is preferable: *Tu te, Thyesta, damnabis* (Cic. Tusc. Disp. iii. 12. 26)?

C. Those of the first declension in *e* (as *bibliotheca*) make the accusative in *em*: so we have *Calen* (καλέν) *Syriam* (Liv.). But the form of such nouns is very uncertain, and usage must be carefully observed. In certain instances perhaps the Latin termination is best used throughout all the cases; but there are words, some cases of which prefer (1) the Greek, and others the (2) Latin form. Thus in Livy we find *Samothrace* (gen.), *Samothracem* (acc.), but *Samothracē* (abl.): on the other hand *Circe* (acc.) is used by Cicero, but *Circe* (abl.) by Livy. *Circe* is the preferable form for the nominative of this latter word (Cic. de Nat. Deor. iii. 19. 48), but we have authority for writing *Hecata* in that case. *Nunquam Hecata sis* (Plaut. Cistell. i. 1. 50). See two examples under Rule 61, and others.

D. (1) The names of towns and islands of the second declension in *os* (which termination may in some words be written also *us*, as *Tenedos* or *Tenedus*) are in prose to be declined throughout like *dominus*; (2) Cæsar however uses *Pharon* as the accusative of *Pharos*.

E. Those in *eus* are thus declined in prose: Nom. *Pergæus*, Gen. *ei*, Dat. *eo*, Acc. *ea*, Voc. *eu*, Abl. *eo*.

F. (1) Those of the third declension in *es* (as *Aristoteles*), not increasing in the genitive, are in prose to be declined throughout like *nubes*; (2) some of them however (as *Euphrates*) admit the Greek termination *en* in the accusative.

G. Of those in *is* of the third declension, not increasing in the genitive, some (1), as *Tiberis*, make the accusative in *im*, but (2) others, as *Tamesis*, in *in*; and the ablative of all ends in *i*.

H. (1) In the accusative of nouns of the third declension which

increase in the genitive, we find (a) sometimes the Greek terminations *a*, plur. *as*; but (b) more generally in prose the Latin *em*, plur. *es*. (2) *Ær* and *æther* prefer the Greek form.

I. Neuter names of towns in *e* of the third declension (as *Præneste*) make the ablative in *e*. This is an exception to Note 2. B.

6. A. The common plural of *locus* is *loca*, neuter. With regard to *loci*, plural, see Andrews' *Lexicon*.

B. *Vesper* is both of the second and third declension; but in classical prose the accusative in common use is *vesperum*, and the ablative *vespere*.

C. Nom. Plur. *jugera*, Gen. *jugerum*, Dat. *jugeribus*, &c.

D. The nominative *ops* is not found, nor is there good authority for using the dative *opi*: the other cases are—Gen. *opis*, Acc. *opem*, Abl. *ope*. This word in the singular generally means assistance; in the plural always, resources, wealth, &c.

E. The nominative and genitive singular of *preces* (pl.) never occur. We find—Dat. *precē*, Acc. *precem*, Abl. *prece*: but the word is more common in the plural.

F. *Juvenis* and *senex*, originally adjectives, are declined as substantives, their ablative always ending in *e*, not *i*. Observe also that their genitive plural always ends in *um*, not *ium*.

G. *Vis* (sing.) generally means force or violence; but *vires* (pl.), strength. The accusative singular is *vim*, the ablative *vi*.

H. (1) *Pecus*, *pecoris*, neuter, signifies cattle, collectively: (2) *pecus*, *pecudis*, feminine, signifies a single beast: (3) *pecudes*, plural, sometimes signifies domestic animals as opposed to untamed ones.

I. *Ædes* in the singular means a temple; in the plural, a house. This word was once written *ædis*; see Andrews' *Lexicon*.

J. The accusative of *requies* is (1) *quietem* or (2) *requiem*. For the other cases, see Andrews' *Lexicon*.

K. (1) *Dies* is always masculine in the plural; in the singular it is either (a) masculine or (b) feminine. (2) Observe that, when it is combined with a demonstrative pronoun, or otherwise denotes some set day, it is very often, though not always, feminine.

7. A. *Concilium*, a council, an assembly for consultation: *consilium*, the counsel there taken, a plan. This distinction however is not always observed.

B. *Comitium* (sing.), the place for the assembling of the *curiæ*: *comitia* (pl.), the assembly for electing magistrates.

C. *Vir* is often used in a good, and *homo* in a bad sense. But this is by no means a universal distinction.

#### ADJECTIVES.

8. (1) Adjectives in *is* (as *tristis*) make the ablative in *i*. (2) But adjectives which increase, making the genitive in *is* (as *tristior*, *præstante*), make the ablative sometimes (a) in *e*, sometimes (b) in *i*.

9. (1) Some adjectives, especially most of those ending in *us* pure,

*i. e.*, in *us* preceded by a vowel, must be compared by the use of the adverbs *magis*, and *maxime*, *admodum*, &c.: as, *arduus, magis arduus, maxime arduus*. (2) Other adjectives may be compared in the same way. (3) Verbal adjectives in *ilis* must form their superlative, though not their comparative, by the use of an adverb: in Cicero we find *maxime mirabilis*, but *mirabilior*,

10. A. The comparative degree does not always imply an express comparison between two things. It sometimes merely indicates the presence of a quality in a high, or too high a degree: as, *res gravior*, a somewhat important matter, more than usually important: *longius*, too far. For an explanation of this comparative, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 181. III. D. 4 (p. 302).

*Obs.* Notice the phrases *certiorem facere aliquem* (to inform any one), and *certior fieri* (to be informed), followed by a genitive, or an ablative with *de*. The positive degree (*certus*) is seldom (perhaps never in prose) used in this combination.

B. The superlative degree often intimates only a very high degree of a quality, and not the highest: as, *homo doctissimus*, a very learned man.

C. *Quam* combined (1) with a superlative and *possum*, or (2) with a superlative alone, indicates the highest possible degree of a quality: *Quam maxima possum voce, dico*, I speak with the loudest voice I can. *Veniat quam celerrime*, let him come as quickly as possible.

11. *Per* in composition has an intensive force. An adjective or adverb thus compounded is nearly equivalent to the superlative, as explained in Note 10. B, of the simple word: *permagnus* means much the same as *maximus*, very great, but not as *maximus*, greatest.

*Obs.* *Per* is sometimes separated from the word to which it thus belongs. *Id mihi pergratum perque jucundum erit* (Cic. ad Q. Fr. iii. 1. 4). See also Cic. ad Att. i. 20. 8.

12. *Non ita, nec ita*, are combined with adjectives and adverbs, with a restrictive sense: *Modus agri non ita magnus* (Hor. Sat. ii. 6. 1), a measure of land not very large. We use *so* in a similar way: as, 'It is not so very large after all.'

13. (1) Participles are often used adjectively, *i. e.*, they lose their idea of time, and merely denote a quality. Many present active and past passive, as well as a few deponent participles, are thus used: as, *amans* (fond of), *acceptus* (welcome), *iratus* (angry). (2) When thus used, they are to be considered as adjectives, and admit of comparison.

*Obs.* The participle in *dus* does not admit of comparison by inflexion, but is compared by the use of adverbs according to Note 9. 1.: as, *magis amandus*, more to be loved, more worthy of love.

#### NUMERALS.

14. (1) *Unus* is (*a*) used, if distinction or emphasis is required; if not, it is (*b*) omitted. (2) It is often added to a superlative to

increase its force: *unus omnium sapientissimus*, pre-eminently the wisest of all men.

15. *Mille*, singular, is used sometimes (1) as a substantive (*mille hominum*), sometimes (2) as an adjective (*mille homines*): *millia*, plural, is used only as a substantive (*tria millia hominum*).

*Obs.* *Millia*, by an ellipse of *passuum*, sometimes means miles.

It would not probably be possible to find good authority for using *mille*, singular, with a similar ellipse.

16. *Alter* means another of the same sort (*N.* 171), and hence, a second: it is used as an ordinal number more frequently than *secundus*: *anno trecentesimo altero*, in the three hundred and second year.

17. Distributive numerals answer the question, *how many each?* as, *Binas vestes habent*, they have two garments each. See also Public School Latin Grammar, § 32. 11. C (p. 78).

*Obs.* 1. A cardinal number is sometimes found where a distributive would be more correctly used. Thus, in the sixth sentence under Rule 27. C, *quindecim* is used by Cæsar where *quinos denos* would be more accurate: and in the corresponding English it would be more accurate to say, *each fifteen feet broad*.

*Obs.* 2. In some instances you may use either (a) a cardinal or (b) a distributive numeral. Thus to translate, 'The bushel (of wheat) is at five *denarii*,' you may either write, *Modius est quinque denariis*, one bushel costs (is at) five *denarii*, or, *Modius est quinis denariis*, each bushel costs five *denarii*.

18. Distributive numerals are to be used instead of cardinal ones, except in the case of *uni* (pl.), with substantives plural in form, but singular in sense: as, *Romani trina castra muniant*, the Romans fortify three camps, i.e., three in all. But, *Consules trinas legiones scribunt*, the consuls each enroll three legions, i.e., six in all; for *trini* only loses its distributive force, when combined with a substantive which has no singular.

*Obs.* Hence translate *two letters of the alphabet* by *duas litteras*; but *two letters* or *epistles* by *binæ litteræ*, since *litteræ* (pl.) means an epistle. Similarly translate *four temples* by *quattuor ædes*, but *four houses* by *quaternæ ædes* (*N.* 6. I). See also Note 53. *Obs.*

19. In writing compound numbers, cardinal, ordinal, and distributive, remember the following as general but not invariable rules:—(1) In numbers under twenty the smaller number without *et*, or the larger with *et*, precedes the other. In the former case the two numbers, if cardinals, coalesce so as to form one word (as *duodecim*). (2) In numbers between twenty and a hundred, the smaller number with *et*, or the larger without *et*, precedes the other. In the case of ordinals however the smaller without *et* may precede, as in the third sentence under Rule 51. (3) In numbers above a hundred, the larger number precedes with or without *et*. See Public School Latin Grammar, § 32. 11. D (p. 79).

20. The numeral adverbs, *decies* (ten times), and those of a higher number, when they define the number of sesterces, require *centena millia* (hundred thousand) to be understood. It is to be remarked however that these adverbs, when thus used, take a verb or participle in the singular: *HSbis et tricies* (3,200,000 sesterces) *Verri decernebatur* (Cic. Verr. iii. 70. 163).

## PRONOUNS.

21. *Iste* often indicates contempt; *ille*, admiration: *Hujuscemodi Scipio ille fuit* (Cic. Mur. 31. 66), that famous Scipio was a man of this sort.

*Obs.* Use *istuc*, not *istoc*, for the neuter of *istic*.

22. When two things have been previously mentioned, *hic* generally refers to the latter, *ille* to the former. But see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 86. A. 2 b (p. 202).

23. *Ipse* is a pronoun of all three persons, as may be seen from the last two sentences under Rule 3. B.

*Obs.* 1. *Ipse* is sometimes equivalent to *ultra*, both in prose and poetry: *Ipse considens medicatis sedibus* (Virg. Georg. iv. 65), they will settle of their own accord on the medicated seats.

*Obs.* 2. 'I praise myself,' is to be translated thus—*Me ipse laudo*.

24. The *m* of the penultimate in the accusative singular and genitive plural of *idem* is, for the sake of euphony, changed into *n*.

25. *Quis* is used substantively, standing by itself: as, *Quis nescit?* who knows not? *Qui* is used adjectively, agreeing with a noun expressed: as, *Ecqui pudor est* (Cic. Verr. iv. 8. 18)? is there any shame? But the foregoing is a general, by no means a universal distinction (Madvig, § 88. *Obs.* 1). *Qui* frequently inquires the qualities of a person or thing: as, *qui vir?* what kind of a man?

*Obs.* The old ablative form *qui* is only found when used adverbially, or combined with *cum*: *Qui fit, ut ego nesciam* (Cic. de Fin. ii. 4. 12)? how is it that I am ignorant? For *quicum* (relative or interrogative) see Rule 67 A. and *Obs.*

26. A. The nominative feminine singular, and the nominative and accusative neuter plural of the indefinite pronouns *quis* and *aliquis*, are *quæ* and *aliquæ*.

B. (1) The neuter interrogative pronouns *quid* and *ecquid*, and the indefinite, *quid*, *aliquid*, *quiddam*, &c., are used substantively, i.e., they stand by themselves: *Quid est?* what is it? *Aliquid virium* (Cic. ad Div. xi. 18), some strength. (2) But *quod* and *ecquod*, interrogative, and *quod*, *aliquid*, *quoddam*, &c., indefinite, are used adjectively, i.e., they agree with a substantive: as, *aliquid oppidum*, some town. Kennedy (*Public School Latin Grammar*, § 33. cf. p. 201. n. 1) supposes the former words to be the neuters of *quis*, *ecquis*, *quis*, *aliquis*, *quidam*, &c., and the latter of *qui*, *ecqui*, &c.: and this opinion,

though it does not appear certainly correct, has been followed throughout these Exercises.

## VERBS.

27. The present is used to describe a past action vividly. When so used, it is called the *historical present*. See the third sentence under Rule 28 B.

28. The present sometimes, especially when combined with *jam*, *jamdudum*, or *jam* with a numeral, indicates an action that has been going on, and is not yet finished: *Id jamdudum tractamus* (Cic. Læl. 22. 82), we have now been treating of this for a long time (and we are still treating of it). Similarly, *Id jumdudum tractabamus*, we had now been treating of this for a long time.

29. The imperfect denotes—(1) an action that was going on contemporaneously with some other (as, *Dum hæc scribebam, nuntius venit*): (2) a customary or often repeated action, and so, a habit: *Hæc dicebat Socrates*, Socrates used to say this. See also *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 66. 3. (p. 162).

30. The Latin perfect (so called) is sometimes (1) equivalent to the English preterite or Greek aorist (*scripsi*, I wrote, ἔγραψα), sometimes (2) to the English or Greek preterperfect (*scripsi*, I have written, γέγραφα).

31. The English preterite or aorist tense (*I loved, I was loved*) is to be rendered (1) by the Latin imperfect, when this tense is required by Note 29: but it should generally be rendered (2) by the Latin perfect. In continuous writing, the context or meaning of the passage will determine the tense; but in translating detached sentences either tense may often be correctly used.

32. The present tense of the English auxiliary verb in combination with a passive participle is sometimes (1) to be rendered by the present, sometimes (2) by the perfect, according to the meaning of the passage: *Laudatur ab omnibus*, he is praised by all; but, *Arx capta est*, the citadel is taken. So too the preterite (*was*), when similarly combined, is at one time to be translated by the perfect, at another by the pluperfect. See also Note 66.

33. In letter-writing the Romans generally used the perfect where we use the present, and the pluperfect where we use the preterite. See an example of this under Rule 56. The explanation is given in *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 66. 4. n. 1. (p. 163).

34. (1) The future perfect (as *venero*) is often elegantly used for the future imperfect (as *veniam*). See the sixth sentence under Rule 11. (2) The future perfect denotes that an action still future will be completed before some other takes place. Hence in many cases where we use a present, perfect, or future imperfect, a Roman with much greater precision would have employed a future perfect: 'If I shall see him, I will write,' *si eum videro, scribam*. 'As soon



as you obtain this' (or, 'shall have obtained this'), 'set out,' *simul hoc consecutus eris, proficiscere*.

35. In the compound tenses of passive and deponent verbs, *fui, fueram, fuero, fuerim, and fuisset*, are used respectively for *sum, eram, ero, sim, and essem*, with a stronger past force.

36. The future participle and that in *dus* may be conjugated with all the tenses of the auxiliary verb: *Locuturus eram* (or *fui*), I was about (or I was going) to speak; *Scio te venturum fuisse*, I know that you would have (that you were about to) come; *Amandus sum*, I ought (am meet) to be loved; *Hoc faciendum fuit* (or *erat*), this ought to have been done (was meet to be done); *Hoc faciendum erit*, this will have to be done.

37. In the compound tenses the auxiliary verb (1) often immediately precedes the participle: it is (2) often placed at a considerable distance from it, before or after.

38. The præteritive verbs, *odî, meminî, cæpi*, have only the perfect, and the tenses derived from it:—

A. (1) The perfect of the first two has a present meaning: *odî*, I hate. (2) Hence their pluperfect is equivalent to the imperfect, and the future perfect to the future imperfect, of an ordinary verb: *oderam*, I was hating, or I hated; *odero*, I shall hate. (3) Hence also their perfect or pluperfect subjunctive must be used, where you would use the present or imperfect of another verb (*N. 314. A*): *Faciâ, ut hoc meminêris*, I will make you remember this; *Fecî, ut hoc meminisses*, I made you to remember this. (4) Hence lastly their want of an imperative (*memento* and *mementote* being alone found) is supplied by the use of the perfect subjunctive; *Hoc meminêrit*, let him remember this. Compare Note 305. 3.

*Obs.* It is plain therefore that instead of these verbs you must sometimes use a periphrasis, or an equivalent verb. You cannot by the use of any tense of *odî* translate, 'You have hated him;' write therefore, *Is tibi odio fuit* (*R. 34 B*), or, *Is tibi in odio fuit*.

B. *Novi*, I know, the perfect of *nosco*, is used as a præteritive. Its contracted (1) form (*nosti, noram, &c.*) is throughout its conjugation more common than the (2) uncontracted one (*novisti, noveram, &c.*), and is always to be used in these Exercises, except in the eleventh sentence under Rule 20.

C. *Cæpi*, I began, has a præterite meaning; and hence the tenses derived from it have the signification peculiar to those tenses in the case of ordinary verbs: *cæperam*, I had begun; *cæpero*, I shall have begun.

*Obs. 1.* When a present, imperfect, or future imperfect is required, use the verb *incipio*, I begin.

*Obs. 2.* The passive participle *cæptus* is generally used in preference to the active voice before a passive infinitive: *Lapidés in murum jaci cæpti sunt* (*Cæs. B. G. ii. 6*).

39. Impersonal verbs have the third person singular of every tense in the finite moods, and the present and perfect infinitive. The future infinitive, except in some passive verbs, is wanting, and you must use for it the periphrasis explained in Rule 118.

40. A. The present of *affari* (to address) is only used in the indicative, and even there not in the first person.

B. Both the active form *revertor*, and the deponent *revertor*, are used by good writers in the sense of *I return*; or, rather, certain parts of each verb are thus used. See Andrews' *Lexicon*.

41. The case that a verb governs is regulated by the meaning of that verb. Thus *contingo* (I touch), *convenio* (I meet), *consulo* (I consult), take an accusative as transitive verbs (R. 20); but *contingit* (it falls to one's lot) governs a dative by Rule 30, or 31; *convenit* (it suits) a dative by Rule 29; and *consulo* (I care for, I consult the interest of) takes the same case by Rule 31.

42. An intransitive English active verb may sometimes be rendered by the passive voice of a Latin verb: 'Hope increases,' *spes augetur* (is increased).

#### INTERROGATIVES.

43. *Num*, like the Greek  $\mu\eta$ , expects a negative answer; *nonne*, like the Greek  $\nu\eta$ , an affirmative one:—*Num venit*, he has not come, has he? *Nonne venit*, has he not come?

*Obs.* 1. The phrases *nescio an*, *haud scio an*, are equivalent to the English word *perhaps*, or *probably*: *Nescio an hæc ita sint*, perhaps these things are so; but, *Nescio an hæc ita non sint*, perhaps these things are not so. See also two sentences under Rule 125. B.

*Obs.* 2. *Nescio quis* and *nescio qui* (some one, a certain one) are constructed like *aliquis*, or any other indefinite pronoun: *Nisi forte me Paconis nescio cuius querelis moveri putas* (Cic. ad Q. Fr. i. 1. 6).

44. In a double question, the first interrogative particle, which may be either *utrum*, *ne*, or *num* (this last only in a direct question), is often omitted. See examples of this omission under Rules 3. A, 8 B, and 125.

45. *Tandem* is often used with an interrogative sense: *Quonam tandem modo* (Cic. de Part. Orat. 4. 12)? in what way, pray?

---

#### NOTES ON RULES IN PART I.

46. From the last example to Rule 5 A, it will be seen that Adjectives, &c., when used as predicates, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case. Other examples of this agreement will be found among the sentences under Rule 19.

47. (1) Personal pronouns are, in syntax, to be considered as substantives. (2) Hence an adjective may agree with, or a substantive be placed in apposition to, an elliptical personal pronoun.

48. A Latin adjective used attributively, i.e., as an epithet, is often to be translated by the possessive case of an English substantive: as, *animus patrius* (Liv. xxxvii. 37), the heart of a father, or a father's heart; *res alienæ*, the affairs of others.

49. Observe the way in which *medius*, *religius*, *alius*, *ceteri*, and many superlatives relating to place or time, are often to be construed when used attributively: as, *mediæ urbe*, the middle of the city; *alius exercitus* (Liv. x. 38), the rest of the army; *summus mons*, the top of the mountain; *primo vere*, at the beginning of spring.

50. A possessive pronoun, when used attributively in English, is generally omitted in Latin, where such omission will cause no ambiguity: *Amo patrem*, I love my father.

51. Strictly speaking, there are no personal pronouns of the third person in the Latin language, except *eui*. But the demonstrative pronouns, *hic*, *is*, *ille*, *iste*, are constantly used as such, by an ellipse of *homo* in the masculine, and *mulier* in the feminine gender: as, *hi* (supply *homines*), these men, they; *ea* (supply *mulier*), that woman, she.

Obs. 1. A similar ellipse often takes place with interrogative and indefinite pronouns: as *quis* (*homo*), what man? who? *aliqui* (*homines*), some.

Obs. 2. The neuter, singular or plural, of the above pronouns is used with an abstract meaning, according to Rule 7. Obs.: as, *id*, that thing, it; *quid*, what?

52. A. There are in Latin no possessive pronouns of the third person, except *suus* and *cujus* (an antiquated word). This want is supplied by the genitive cases of the (*quasi*) personal pronouns (N. 51), *hic*, *is*, *ille*, *iste*: as, *hujus liber*, the book of him, his book; *eorum liber*, the book of them, their book; *illius initium*, the beginning of it, its beginning.

B. The old possessive relative and interrogative pronoun *cujus*, *cujæ*, *cujum* (whose), is not to be used in writing Latin prose. Use instead of it the genitive case of *qui* (relat.) or *quis* (interrog.); as the case may require: *Adveni hominæ quorum filios vidisti*, The men are here, whose sons (the sons of whom) you saw; *Cujus filius est?* whose son (the son of whom) is he?

53. Some adjectives were combined so often with the same substantive, that in the course of time it became unnecessary to express the substantive, and the adjective was used by itself. Hence many words, once adjectives, may practically be considered as substantives: as, *mortales* (*homines*), mortals; *vidua* (*mulier*), a widow; *continens* (*terra*), the mainland: add *hiberna* (*castra*), *dextra* (*manus*), &c.

*Obs.* *Decumæ* (from *decimus*), tenth parts, tithes, and *centesimæ*, hundredth parts, one per cent., are to be explained by an ellipse of the word *partes*. The distributive numerals are combined with *centesimæ*, in accordance with Note 18. See the last sentence under Rule 42.

54. Of the words which have been given in illustration of Rule 7, some (1), though originally neuter adjectives or participles, may be considered as substantives, and so translated: such are *extremum*, *malum*, *propositum*; and more might easily have been added, as *verum*, *dictum*, *visum*:—others (2) must be translated by an adjective and the word *thing*, *fact*, *event*, *object*, &c.: as, *turpia*, base deeds.

*Obs.* To Rule 7 refer such words as *Tusculanum*, the Tusculan estate, or villa.

55. Where the termination of a case leaves the gender doubtful, an adjective should be used by itself, only where (1) the substantive, of which there is an ellipse (R. 6), is clearly indicated by the context; or where (2) the adjective is obviously used in the neuter gender with an abstract meaning (R. 7): "*I hate a wicked man*," should be translated, *Odi malum hominem*; but, in the plural, *odi malos*, will have no ambiguity.

56. The nominative of a verb must sometimes be supplied from a previous clause or sentence. See the last example to Rule 1.

57. Verbs of saying, relating, and calling, of the third person plural, often have the nominative *homines* (men) understood.

*Obs.* Hither refer *vulgo* with a plural verb: *Vulgo loquebantur* (Cic. ad Att. xvi. 10), they said generally. Compare also the following sentences, in the first of which there appears to be an ellipse of *millia* (nom.), in the second of *milites* (acc.): *Romanorum sociorumque ad quinque millia occisa* (Liv. xxxix. 30); *Supra sex millia et sexcentos milites amisit* (Liv. xxxii. 7). Such constructions are common in Livy.

58. Personal pronouns may be used emphatically to express either (1) approbation, or (2) a contrary sentiment.

*Obs.* These pronouns are sometimes doubled for the sake of a strong emphasis: *Vos, vos, appello, fortissimi viri* (Cic. Mil. 37. 101).

59. The syllable *met* is suffixed, to give greater emphasis, to the cases of the personal pronouns, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*. It cannot, however, be suffixed to the nominative *tu*, unless *te* intervene (as *tutemet*): neither can it be suffixed to the genitives plural of *ego* and *tu*.

*Obs.* 1. Hence are formed the compound words *egometipsæ*, *voometipsi*, &c.; which words are, however, sometimes written separately, as in the first sentence under Rule 93.

*Obs.* 2. *Met* is found suffixed to *suus* in Livy. See an ex-

ample under Rule 82. You should suffix it, in writing Latin prose, to no other possessive pronoun.

60. The two words *ego quidem* coalesce, and are written *equidem*.

61. In the English and French languages, the second person plural is in common use as equivalent to the second personal singular. We say to a single person, 'You were there.' This idiom never occurs in Latin writings: but we often find, in Cicero's letters very often, the first person plural used as equivalent to the first person singular: *Hoc fecimus*, I did this.

*Obs.* 1. Hence the personal pronoun *nos* is often equivalent to *ego*, and must be translated, *I*: and similarly *noster* is often equivalent to *meus*.

*Obs.* 2. When *noster* is equivalent to *meus*, and a personal pronoun lies hid in it, that pronoun is *mei*, of me. Hence any word agreeing with this latent personal pronoun must be in the singular number: *Nostros vidisti flentis ocellos* (Ov.), you saw the eyes of me weeping. Change *flentis* to *flentium*, and the meaning becomes, 'You saw the eyes of us weeping.' See two sentences under Rule 9 A.

62. A. (1) The tense of the verb *sum* generally omitted is the present indicative: (2) but the perfect indicative and present subjunctive are also occasionally omitted. *Gravis* (understand *fuisti*) *illa fortuna populi Romani, grave fatum* (Cic. Phil. v. 14. 39). The perfect indeed may often be omitted after a relative. See Rule 26, thirteenth example.

B. (1) The person of this verb *sum* most commonly omitted is the third, singular or plural. (2) The omission of this person is very common in the perfect tenses of passive or deponent verbs. (3) The other persons must be omitted with caution, and seldom or never in prose, except in accordance with D. 2 or 3: *Nos abisse rati* (Virg. Æn. ii. 26), we supposed them to have gone.

C. (1) The third person of *sum* and the infinitive *esse*, used possessively, may be omitted. (2) *Est* and *esse*, impersonal, are sometimes omitted; and the latter often, when combined with a gerundive. See examples under Rules 32, 70, 98, and 112.

D. When two or more sentences or clauses come together, in each of which some person of the verb *sum* (or the infinitive *esse*) might be expressed—(1) this verb is sometimes omitted in every sentence or clause: (2) but more often it is expressed in the first, and omitted in all the rest: (3) at other times it is omitted in all except the last.

E. The auxiliary verb *sum* has frequently two or more participles combined with it. It is sometimes (1) placed next the first, more often (2) next the last of these two participles: *Oppida sunt expugnata atque incensa. Cedendum et obtemperandum est*.

63. The present infinitive placed after a nominative is called the *historical infinitive*: it may generally, but not always, be explained by supposing an ellipse of some person of *incipio*, I begin, or *cæpi*,

I began. Concerning this infinitive see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 117. 1. note (p. 262).

64. A. The present infinitive of a Latin verb indicates time contemporary with the time of the principal verb, in whatever tense that verb may be: *Dicunt consulem venire*, they say that the consul is coming—coming (that is) while they are speaking. *Dixerunt consulem venire*, they said that the consul was coming—coming (that is) at the time when they were speaking.

B. The perfect infinitive of a Latin verb indicates time anterior or previous to the time of the principal verb: *Audient consulem huc venisse*, they will hear that the consul has come (or came) hither—i. e., has come (or came) before the time at which they will hear of it. *Audiverunt consulem huc venisse*, they heard that the consul had come hither—had come (that is) before the time at which they heard of it.

C. The future infinitive of a Latin verb indicates time posterior or subsequent to the time of the principal verb. After a present or future tense it is to be translated by *shall* or *will*, after a past by *should* or *would*: *Audio te venturum esse*, I hear that you will come. *Audiveram te venturum esse*, I had heard that you would come.

*Obs.* A compound tense of the infinitive mood, e. g., the perfect passive or the future active, is composed of a participle and the infinitive mood of the auxiliary verb *sum*. This participle must agree in gender, number, and case (R. 5) with its subject, which will generally be the accusative before the infinitive (R. 18): *Audio urbem captam esse*, I hear that the city has been taken. *Audivi arma missa esse*, I heard that the arms had been sent. *Audio eos venturos esse*, I hear that they are about to come (or that they will come).

---

[Here do the following Exercise, using the Notes and Vocabulary prefixed to it.

#### *Notes and Vocabulary.*

*Note 1.* Omit the nominative of the verb in every sentence, in accordance with Rule 3. A.

*Note 2.* Beware in this Exercise of translating *that* by *ut*. Verbs of *feeling* and *declaring* (as *puto*, *audio*, *dico*) are followed by an accusative and infinitive according to Rule 18.

*Note 3.* The words *he*, *she*, *they*, after the conjunction *that*, are to be translated by *se*, when they refer to the same person as the nominative of the principal verb; by *eum*, *eam*, *eos*, where they denote a different person.

*Vocabulary.*—(Substantives.) *Ager*, a field: *exercitus*,

an army: *legio*, a legion; *signum*, a standard: *urbs*, a city.  
 —(Pronouns.) *Ego*, I: *is* and *sui* (see above, Note 3).—  
 (Verbs.) *Adsum*, I am present: *audio*, I hear: *capio*, I take: *dico*, I say: *discedo*, I depart: *doleo*, I grieve: *mitto*, I send: *sequor*, I follow: *vasto*, I lay waste.—(Adverb.)  
*Sæpe*, often.

### Exercise.

*Translate into Latin*:—1. I hear that the legions are following. 2. They say that the standards have been sent. 3. They said that the army had departed. 4. We shall hear that the fields are being laid waste. 5. He heard that the fields were being laid waste. 6. I think that the army has followed. 7. He thinks that we often grieve. 8. They thought that they (*see Note 3*) should capture the standards. 9. We hear that he captured the standards. 10. She says that she will depart. 11. He thought that the fields had been laid waste. 12. He thought that they would take the city. 13. We heard that the army was following. 14. I think that she is about to depart. 15. He will hear that I am present. 16. He said that the city had been taken.]

---

65. A. The future infinitive passive is compounded of the supine in *um* and *iri*, the infinitive passive (used impersonally) of *eo*, I go: *Puto arma missum iri*, I think that it is being gone by them (*i.e.*, that they are going) to send arms; hence, passively, I think that arms will be sent. Remember that *missum* being a supine, and not a participle, governs the accusative *arma*, and does not agree with it: it never therefore varies its termination. See Madvig, § 109, x (p. 108).

B. A deponent verb, since it has a future participle of an active signification (*N. 233. C. 1*), forms its future infinitive like an active (not like a passive) verb: *Dixerunt se profecturos esse*, they said that they would set out.

66. The English words *was* and *were*, and also, if combined with a past participle, *am*, *is*, and *are*, must sometimes be translated (1) by a present, sometimes (2) by a perfect infinitive, according to Note 64. A and B: *Putabant eum sapientem esse*, they thought that he was wise; but, *Scio eos sapientes fuisse*, I know that they were wise. *Aliunt virtutem nunquam vinci*, they say that virtue is never conquered (a general statement); but, *Confiteor nos victos esse*, I confess that we are conquered.

---

[Here do the following Exercise, using the Notes and Vocabulary given under Note 64.

*Exercise.*

*Translate into Latin*:—1. I think that we shall follow. 2. We thought that the fields would be laid waste. 3. He says that they are about to send an army. 4. He said that the legions were about to follow. 5. They think that the city will be taken. 6. They said that they would depart. 7. I hear that they are grieving. 8. They said that they were grieving. 9. I hear that she was present. 10. She said that she was present. 11. We hear that an army is being sent. 12. We hear that the city is taken. 13. They said that the cities were taken. 14. They say that cities are often taken.]

---

67. A. The accusative of a personal pronoun used reflexively (*i.e.*, to designate the same person as the nominative of the verb which it follows) is sometimes omitted before an infinitive, especially before the future infinitive active: *Pollicentur (se) secuturos*, they promise that they will follow. See Madvig, § 401.

B. When the context is such that the ellipse causes no ambiguity, the accusative of a personal or demonstrative pronoun, as the subject, may be omitted before the infinitive: *Ubi sunt? Puto (eos) abisse*; where are they? I think that they are gone. See Madvig, § 401. Obs. 2.

C. An ellipse of an indefinite pronoun or *hominem* often occurs before an infinitive in general statements: *Non esse emacem vectigal est* (Cic. Paradox. vi. 3. 51), for a man not to be fond of buying is an income. Compare Note 320.

68. An accusative with the infinitive is used to express surprise, indignation, or sorrow. This infinitive is certainly used interrogatively in some instances, and perhaps in all: *Mene Iliacis occumbere campis Non potuisse* (Virg. Æn. i. 97, 98)? *Is nunc, mea Terentia, sic vexari!* (or *vexari?*) that you, my Terentia, should be now so distressed! (Cic. ad Div. xiv. 2). See Madvig, § 399. This construction may be explained by supposing the ellipse of some such words as *credibile est?* or *ferendum est?*

---

69. The relative agrees with its antecedent in person (*R.* 9): therefore the relative, if in the nominative, must be followed by a verb in the same person as the antecedent would require: *Nos qui adsumus*, we who are present.



70. The relative stands first in a sentence or clause. When however it agrees with an antecedent and not with a following noun, it is put after a monosyllabic (and often after a dissyllabic) preposition by which it is governed: as, *Ille ad quem te misi*; but (generally) *quibus de causis*, for which reasons. See also Madvig, § 469.

71. In such sentences as, *Idem, qui antea, adsunt*, the case of the relative depends on a suppressed verb (here *adfuerunt*) to be supplied from the principal verb: *Eandem, quam apud senatum* (supply *habuerunt*), *orationem habent*, they deliver the same speech as they delivered before the senate.

72. The relative, especially at the beginning of a sentence, is often to be translated by a conjunction, and a demonstrative, personal, or (if in the genitive) possessive pronoun: *Quæ quum ita sint*, and since these things are so. *Quam ubi vidi*, and when I saw her.

73. When a proper name and another noun descriptive of it are combined, the relative may agree with either: as, *flumen Tamesis* (1) *quod*, or *flumen Tamesis* (2) *qui*.

74. A. (1) Sometimes the epithet of the antecedent is by attraction placed after the relative and in the same case with it: *Libri, quos histos in æde repositos Moneta Macer Licinius citat auctores* (Liv. iv. 20), the linen books laid up in the temple of Moneta, which Licinius Macer cites as authorities. (2) And observe that this is the proper place for numerals, numeral adjectives (as *multus*), comparatives, and superlatives: *Elephanto, qui unus superfuerat, vectus* (Liv. xxii. 2), carried on the only elephant which had survived.

B. Sometimes (1) an antecedent standing alone, sometimes also (2) an antecedent with its epithet, is attracted into the case of the relative; and the relative clause, under these circumstances, usually precedes: *Quem ceperant exules montem, herbidus est* (Liv. xxix. 31), the mountain, which the exiles had occupied, is grassy.

75. (1) When the relative clause precedes, there must often be a demonstrative pronoun in the principal clause: *Tu dubitas, quorum mentes vulneras, eorum adspectum vitare* (Cic. Cat. i. 7. 17)? (2) But the demonstrative, as a nominative or accusative, is frequently omitted, if the relative also be in either of these two cases: *Bonum igitur quod est, honestum est* (Cic. de Fin. iii. 8. 27). (3) Yet under these or any circumstances the demonstrative pronoun, if emphatic, must be expressed.

76. Sometimes by an ellipse of the antecedent, which may be easily supplied from the context, the relative immediately follows, and appears to be governed by, a preposition.

77. When the antecedent is a sentence, *id*, in apposition to that sentence, is often inserted before the neuter relative.

78. (1) The substantive, to which the relative refers, is sometimes treated after it. This was probably the original construction of

the relative, and is frequently met with in Cæsar, but not in that writer only: *Intellexit diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret* (Cæs. B. G. i. 16). Add Cic. Cat. ii. 9. 20. (2) Sometimes another word equivalent to, or descriptive of, the antecedent is introduced: *Cybistra, quod oppidum est ad montem Taurum* (Cic. ad Div. xv. 2), Cybistra, which town is near Mount Taurus. See also Madvig, § 320.

79. Most of the above rules concerning the relative apply also to the correlative and universal pronouns (*R.* 9 B): *Regressus sum ad naves, quantæ maxima celeritate potui* (Liv. xxi. 41): compare this sentence with Note 74. B.

80. A. *Qualis, quantus, quot*, in the relative clause, answer respectively to *talis, tantus, tot*, in the principal clause. But these demonstratives are sometimes omitted (compare Note 75. 2), as may be seen from some of the sentences under Rule 9 B.

B. *Qualis, quantus*, and *quot*, when used to compare two different nouns, agree with the latter: *Tot habet triumphos, quot* (nom.) *ores sunt partesque terrarum* (Cic. Balb. 4. 9). See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 123. 8. (p. 268).

81. (1) The adjectives, &c., which are attributed as epithets to collective nouns, must agree with them in gender and number by Rule 5: as, *maxima pars*, the greatest part. (2) But those adjectives, &c., which are predicated of such nouns, may be, and often are, in a different number (*R.* 15); and when so, their gender must be regulated *per synesim*, i.e., according to the signification of the collective noun: *Magna vis hominum vivi capti sunt*, a great number of men (i.e., many men) were taken alive. Compare Note 83. (3) Observe in the last place that, with the exception of *pars*, the phrase *magna vis, genus* and similar words combined with an ordinal numeral or a demonstrative pronoun, collective nouns seldom have a plural verb, &c., in prose writers. And indeed such sentences as the following are best explained by supposing an ellipse of *eorum*: *Quartum genus est mixtum et turbulentum: qui jam pridem premuntur* (Cic. Cat. ii. 10. 21). Add Cæs. B. C. iii. 83 (*unam fore tabellam qui censerent, alteram qui* —). *Eorum* may be expressed: *Alterum genus est eorum qui dominationem expectant* (Cic. Cat. ii. 9. 19).

82. (1) When there is a collective noun in the principal clause, the verb in a subordinate clause is often in the plural: *Hoc idem generi humano evenit, quod in terra collocati sunt* (Cic. de Nat. Deor. ii. 6. 17). (2) When there are two or several successive statements, the verb of one clause may be in the singular, agreeing in number with a collective noun, and that of another in the plural, its nominative being a plural pronoun implied by that collective noun. See the last sentence under Rule 15.

83. A substantive neuter or feminine in form, but not in meaning,

(2) This plural subject is often expressed : *Cives suam quisque domum abeunt*. See also Virg. *Æn.* ii. 666, 667.

100. Sometimes a different principle of construction requires the noun apposed to be in a different case from its subject. See the twenty-first sentence under Rule 54 A.

101. (1) Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when used substantively (*R.* 7), may have nouns in apposition to them : (2) and, on the other hand, they may, when so used, be placed in apposition to nouns. See examples under Rule 8 A.

102. An apposition is often introduced by conjunctions, such as *ut, velut, quamvis*. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 123. 6. (*d*) (p. 267).

103. (1) When the subject and the noun (or nouns) in apposition to it are of different numbers, or would separately require the one a singular, the other (or others) a plural verb, the number of the verb must be regulated according to the subject, *i.e.*, the former : *Indi, gens longinqua, victi sunt*. (2) But if a descriptive appellation (as *oppidum, colonia*) be added to a plural name of a town, the verb generally agrees with this descriptive noun : *Valerio Potito Volsci provincia evenerat* (*Liv.* v. 12). See *Madvig*, § 217.

104. When a proper name and a descriptive appellation are combined by apposition, the name of the town or person will often in English be translated by the possessive case : as, *sub Hasdrubale imperatore* (*Liv.* xxi. 4), under the command of Hasdrubal ; *ante oppidum Laodiceam* (*Cassius apud Cic. ad Div.* xii. 13), before the town of Laodicea.

105. *Substantiva Mobilia, i.e.*, substantives which have both a masculine and feminine form, agree as far as possible with the noun to which they are in apposition, or with which they are combined : as, *ensor magister morum*, but *philosophia est magistra morum*.

*Obs.* These substantives may often be rendered by English adjectives : as, *Pompeius pater*, the elder Pompey.

106. (1) Two or more singular subjects combined require a plural noun in apposition : and, *vice versa*, a plural subject often has two or more singular nouns coupled by a conjunction in apposition to it. Compare Rule 10, and see examples under Rule 8 A.

107. A. The subjective genitive is in the first place of the author and possessor ; also of quality and of distribution.

B. The objective genitive is governed by many adjectives and verbs ; also by many substantives, whether of a (1) transitive or (2) intransitive meaning : as, *amor virtutis*, the love of virtue ; *vacatio militie*, freedom from military service. The gerund in *di* is to be considered as an objective genitive.

*Obs.* 1. Thus *amor Pompeii* may have either of two meanings, according as *Pompeii* is the (*a*) subjective or (*b*) objective geni-

**five:** *amor Pompeii* (subj.), Pompey's love for others; *amor Pompeii* (obj.), the love of others for Pompey.

**Obs. 2.** Sometimes both genitives depend on the same substantive: as, *Pompeii amor patriæ*, Pompey's love for his country.

108. After nouns (1) of an intransitive and occasionally after those (2) of a transitive meaning, the objective genitive (or the gerund in *di*) is not rendered by *of*, but by some other preposition, as *from*, *in*, *against*, &c.: as, *fiducia* (intrans.) *virium suarum*, confidence in their own strength; *meus amor* (trans.) *virtutis*, my love for virtue (or, of virtue). See also Note 182.

109. (1) Two substantives, of which one is in the genitive depending on the other, may often be rendered by a compound English noun: as, *ductus aquarum*, an aqueduct. (2) At other times the substantive in the genitive may be translated by an English adjective (as, *hominum genus*, the human race); and this is especially the case with the genitive of material (*R. 72*). See Note 168.

110. (1) Possessive pronouns (*meus*, &c.) are used subjectively (*N. 107. B*); (2) the genitives (*mei*, *nostrî*, &c.) of personal pronouns are put objectively (*N. 107. A*): *fiducia tua*, your confidence; but *fiducia tui*, confidence in you.

**Obs.** But the genitives plural *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used subjectively with *omnium* (when this word precedes) instead of *nostræ* and *vestræ*. Thus *vita omnium vestrum* (*Cic. Cat. iii. 1. 1*) is equivalent to *vestra omnium vita* (*R. 82*), and may be translated *the life of all you*, or, *all your lives*. See also *Madvig*, § 297. a. **Obs.**

111. For the genitives plural of *ego* and *tu*, *nostrî* and *vestrî* are put (1) objectively, *nostrum* and *vestrum* (2) partitively. See examples under Rules 77 and 80. See also Note 291.

112. A Latin transitive verb is often to be rendered by an English intransitive verb (or phrase) combined with a preposition: as, *expecto*, I wait for; *curo*, I take care of; *supero*, I am superior to. But it will be very necessary for the beginner to bear in mind that a transitive verb, however it may be translated, governs an accusative, and an accusative only, of the nearer object (*R. 20*): *Expecto litteras*. *Curo urbem*. *Supero te*.

113. A. The accusative of a personal or demonstrative pronoun, denoting a noun or sentence that has gone before, is often omitted after a transitive verb: *Pacem cum victis fecimus: tutela nostræ* (supply *eos*) *duximus* (*Liv. xxi. 41*), we considered them to be under our protection.

B. The accusative of a personal pronoun, used reflexively, is often omitted after some verbs. Hence many transitive verbs are used intransitively: *Inde* (supply *se*) *moverunt*, they moved (moved them-

selves) thence. *Bene* (supply *me*) *habeo*, I am well. With regard to passive and deponent verbs used with a reflexive sense, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 36. f. p. 95, and § 127 A. 9. (p. 275).

114. A. Where no ambiguity can arise from the ellipse, the accusative may be omitted after certain verbs (compare Note 53): *Ad castra hostium* (understand *exercitum*) *ducere* (Lív. xxxi. 38), to lead his army, to march. *Inde Ephesum* (understand *classam*) *transiit* (Lív. xxxvi. 21), thence he sailed to Ephesus.

*Obs.* In the phrase *classis tenere ad* (see the seventh sentence under Rule 57) there is an ellipse of *portum* or *terram*, which words are found combined with *teneo*: *Pervicacem remis, ut tenerent terram* (Lív. xxxvii. 16). In such a construction as *Corcyram tenuit* (Lív. xxxii. 9) there is no need to suppose a similar ellipse.

B. Sometimes an accusative is governed by an elliptical transitive verb: *Quid plura* (Cic. de Leg. ii. 1. 3)? why should I say more? (understand *dicam*). *Tum ille, Finem, inquit* (understand *fac*) *interrogandi, si videtur* (Cic. de Fin. ii. 6. 17).

115. An accusative or other case is often governed by an elliptical infinitive, which may easily be supplied from the context: *Medicinam, si quam potero* (supply *afferre*), *afferam* (Cic. Cat. ii. 8. 17).

116. Under Rule 23 falls a common combination of *curo* and some other verbs with the participle in *du*: *Ex eo auro buculam curavit faciendam* (Cic. de Div. i. 24. 48), he took care that a heifer should be made, he had a heifer made of that gold.

117. (1) A neuter pronoun or numeral adjective (as *multa*) is the only accusative of the thing that may be used after *moveo* and its compounds, *jubeo*, or *cogo*; and such an accusative is also the most common one after verbs of asking. (2) But all verbs of asking cannot govern a double accusative. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 127. D. 1. (p. 279).

118. A noun denoting the mind or some part of the body is often used by the poets as an accusative of respect: *Torta redimitus tempora queros* (Virg. Georg. i. 349). Of this poetical idiom one instance from Livy is given under Rule 24. It probably never occurs in Cicero's prose writings.

119. (1) The substantive *nihil*, also neuter pronouns and numeral adjectives (as *aliquid*, *quid*, *multa*), are combined as accusatives of respect with intransitive verbs: *Nihil* (as to nothing, not at all) *admodum tanta clade territus* (Lív. xxvii. 2). (2) *Nihil* and some of the neuter pronouns are also sometimes thus joined to transitive verbs: *Nihil me terres*. (Lív. xxviii. 43).

*Obs.* Such accusatives of respect are very frequently used with impersonal verbs, and the phrase *opus est* (R. 49 C): *Nihil interest*, it is of no importance. *Quid refert?* what does it matter?

120. *Galeam induitur* (Virg. *Æn.* ii. 392); *magicas accingier ardes* (Virg. *Æn.* iv. 493);—In these and similar poetical constructions the accusative is, as it would seem according to Kennedy's arrangement (§ 117. 4. c. p. 206), an accusative of respect. May it not, at least in some instances, be considered as a cognate accusative (*R.* 21)?

121. *A. Penes* may either (1) follow or (2) precede its case.

*B. Versus*, whether standing by itself, or in combination with *in* or *ad*, follows its case. You will find examples under Rules 9 and 56.

122. *A. In* and *sub* only govern an accusative when the idea of motion is contained in them, not of necessity whenever they follow a verb of motion: *In campum rediit*, he returns to the plain: but, *In campo currit*, he runs on the plain—being on the plain, he runs there.

*B. Abdo me in silva*, being in the wood, I hide myself there. This is not incorrect: but in translating such a sentence as 'I hide myself in the wood,' the preposition must generally be followed by an accusative: *Abdo me in silvam*, I go into the wood and hide myself there.

123. *Super* (concerning) governs an ablative: but prose writers use the accusative almost always after *super* (above), and perhaps always after *subter* (below); and this, even when there is no idea of motion.

124. (1) *Propius* and *proxime* are sometimes (*a*) adverbs, and take a dative by Rule 29. *B.*, where see an example: but they are generally (*b*) used as prepositions, and govern an accusative. (2) The adjectives *propior* and *proximus* more often have the dative case. See Madvig, § 230. Obs. 2 (p. 207).

125. (1) *En* and *ecce* are generally found with a nominative: (2) the other interjections enumerated in Rule 87 seldom or perhaps never, except in the poets: *O ego laetus* (Horat. *Ars Poët.* 301)!

126. *A. O* as an interjection of calling is joined only to a vocative case.

*B.* It is also an interjection of (1) exclamation, (2) wonder, (3) indignation, (4) grief, (5) exultation, (6) irony. When used with any of these significations, it is joined either with a vocative or an accusative, but generally with the latter case.

127. An accusative is sometimes governed by the interjection *O* understood by ellipse.

128. The interjections *hei* and *oe* are hardly to be found in prose writers. The first three examples under Rule 88 are taken from Plautus, the last from Livy.

129. (1) The dative explained in Rule 31 is generally a *dativus commodi aut incommodi*, denoting that what is asserted is to the ad-

vantage or disadvantage of somebody: *Aves sibi nidificant*, the birds build nests for themselves. *Cæsari insidias parant*, they prepare a plot against Cæsar. (2) But sometimes it simply denotes that something is or is done with reference to a certain person, without any express idea of advantage or disadvantage: *Mors omnibus est parata* (Cic. Cat. iv. 10. 20), death is ready for all.

130. (1) Some of the examples under Rule 31 might be explained by Rule 29: (2) and on the other hand some of those under Rule 29 might have been placed under Rule 31.

131. The datives *mihi, nobis, tibi, vobis, sibi* (use this last word with caution in prose), are elegantly redundant, especially in questions and expressions of surprise, or when combined with an imperative. They imply, however, some interest in what is stated (*N.* 129. 1): *Pulset tum mihi lictorem* (Liv. ii. 29). *Quid illa sibi statuas volunt* (Cic. Verr. ii. 61. 150)? what do those statues mean? This dative is by some called *Dativus Ethicus*; and many passages where it occurs are referred to in Andrews' *Lexicon*, under the words *ego, tu, sui*. See also Madvig, § 248.

132. Observe the use of the dative in such constructions as the following: *Hæ insula dextra sunt navigantibus* (or *naviganti*) *a continente*, these islands are on the right hand as you sail (to those sailing, or to one sailing) from the mainland.

133. (1) In neuter and active phrases of naming, the appellation itself is sometimes in the nominative or accusative in apposition (or, in the first case, by Rule 19) to *nomen* or some such word: *Hæc urbi Beneventum nomen est*, to this city there is the name Beneventum. (2) But more frequently it is in the dative by attraction to the person or thing named: *Et Marco nomen damus*, we give him the name Marcus (or, as we more often say, the name of Marcus). (3) Very rarely, perhaps never in the best writers, it is, as in English, in the genitive after *nomen*.

134. To Rule 29 might be added words which signify *obligatio et solutio*, obligation and payment: as, *obligo, debeo, solvo, pendo, debitor*, and the like. Such words, however, may be referred to *commodum*.

135. Among adjectives signifying habit (*consuetudo*) may be classed those of ease and difficulty: as, *facilis, difficilis, pervius, inotius, &c.*

136. Many adjectives of advantage and fitness, as *utilis* and *aptus*, are often followed by the preposition *ad*. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 129. I. B. 6. 7. (p. 288).

137. Of adjectives which denote an affection of the mind (*benignitas, &c.* *R.* 29), some must, and others may be, followed by one or more of the prepositions *in, erga, adversus*. In the construction of these adjectives great caution is required.

138. The phrase *dicto audiens* (obedient) takes a dative of the person.

139. *Præsto*, at hand; *obviam* (adverb) and *obvius* (adjective), in the way:—by the first of these words is often conveyed the idea of help; by the last two, that of resistance.

140. A phrase is sometimes equivalent in meaning to a single word. Thus *fructum fero* is equivalent to *prosum*, I profit; and we may say that it governs a dative as a phrase signifying *commodum* (R. 29): *Asia multos annos vobis fructum non tulit* (Cic. de Leg. Ag. ii. 30. 83). So too *opem fero* is equivalent to *opitutor*.

141. *Probor* is always followed by a dative: *Probor tibi*, I am approved of by you. This dative is not, as may appear at first sight, a dative of the agent (R. 33): if so, we should also find, and we never do, this verb followed by the preposition *ab* with the ablative (R. 60). It must therefore be explained in a different way: *Res probabitur tibi*, the thing will be found agreeable to you, *i.e.* will be approved of by you. Hence *probor* is followed by a dative as a verb signifying *jucunditas* (R. 29).

*Obs.* The above remarks apply also to the participle *probatus*, often used adjectively; and similarly is to be explained the dative in some other combinations: *Mihi judicatum est* (it has seemed good to me, *i.e.*, it has been decided by me) *deponere illam jam personam* (Cic. ad Div. vii. 33). *Suspectum* (an object of suspicion to, *i.e.*, suspected by) *se patri faciebat* (Liv. xl. 5).

142. (1) *Suadeo alicui* (I use persuasion to some one, I try to persuade) is sometimes contrasted with *persuadeo alicui* (I persuade some one, I prevail upon him): (2) but *suadeo* is often used in the sense of *I urge, I persuade*, without any such contrast.

143. (1) The verbs *fido, confido*, with their participles, have sometimes (a) a dative, sometimes (b) an ablative: (2) *diffido* almost always, perhaps always in Cæsar, Cicero, and Livy, has a dative. Compare Note 208. 2.

144. A. *Nubo*, I marry, applies only to the wife. You may write (1) *nupsit*, or (2) *nupta fuit ei*; as we say, 'She married him,' or, 'She was married to him.' Observe that *nuptus* is often combined with *fui* and *fuera*m in preference to *sum* and *eram* (N. 35); and also that it may be constructed with *cum*: *Viri quibuscum illa nupta erant* (Cic. Verr. iv. 61. 136).

B. *Duco*, I marry, used both (1) with and (2) without the predicative accusative (R. 23) *uxorem*, applies only to the husband: *Ducit Cæciliam uxorem*, or *ducit Cæciliam*, he marries Cæcilia.

145. *Impero, credo, persuadeo, ignosco*, and other verbs which fall under Rule 29, are in the active voice sometimes used transitively with an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the more remote object, and sometimes intransitively with only this latter case: as,



*Minor tibi mortem*, I threaten you with death; *Minor tibi*, I threaten you. The dative is of course the only case which these verbs can govern in the passive voice (R. 113). Their construction differs much from that of the corresponding English verbs, and observation alone will make the learner familiar with their use. But the following rule will generally be sufficient :—Put the thing in the accusative (or nominative, if the verb is passive), and the person in the dative : 'I trust this money to you,' or, 'I trust you with this money,' *credo tibi hanc pecuniam*. 'This money is trusted to you,' or, 'You are trusted with this money,' *creditur tibi hæc pecunia*.

146. Certain words, which fall under Rule 29, are to be referred sometimes to one word in that Rule, sometimes to another, according to the meaning with which they are used. Thus *Probo me tibi*, I approve myself to you, is to be referred to *jucunditas*, but *Probo hoc tibi*, I prove this to you, to *demonstratio*. Thus also *nego* at one time signifies narration, at another refusal (a meaning contrary to *promissio*).

147. A construction may sometimes be explained by either of two rules with equal correctness. *Hoc tibi eripui*, I snatched this from you: *eripui* here governs the dative either as a verb signifying the opposite to *traditio* (R. 29), or as a verb compounded with a preposition (R. 30 A).

148. A. (1) The dative of the more remote object is generally rendered in English by the preposition *to* or *for*; but frequently by some other, as *against*, *from*, *with*, &c.: *Hoc tibi abstulit*, he took this from you. (2) But very many Latin intransitive verbs, which govern a dative, are equivalent to English transitive verbs: as, *Noceo tibi*, I do harm to you, I hurt you; *Placeo tibi*, I please you. The learner should pay particular attention to this observation, or he will be often likely to fall into the error of making intransitive verbs govern an accusative case.

B. When a transitive verb is followed both by an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the more remote object, the preposition *to* or *for* is in English frequently omitted before the dative, provided that case stand next the verb: *Do librum tibi*, I give a book to you, or, I give you a book. *Hoc tibi emi*, I bought this for you, or, I bought you this. The ellipse of the former preposition occurs also with *near* or *near*: *propinquus tibi*, near to you, or, near you.

149. Several substantives (as *pater*, *comes*, *hostis*, *similitudo*, *remedium*, &c.) sometimes (1) take a dative by Rule 29. E (where see examples), sometimes (2) a genitive: *Horum omnium communis hostis prædoque* (Cic. Verr. ii. 6. 17).

150. A preposition (as *cum* or *inter*) with its case may follow most of the adjectives enumerated under Rule 36, likewise verbs and substantives of the same signification: *Vos cum Mandonio consilia communicastis* (Liv. xxviii. 28)

151. (1) *Similis* and its compounds generally (a) have a genitive of a living being, but sometimes (b) a dative; (2) *alienus* takes a (a) dative or (b) genitive, but may also be followed by an ablative, either (c) without or (d) with the preposition *ab*; (3) *consors* takes the (a) genitive or (b) dative of the person, but (c) the genitive of the thing; (4) *consocius* on the other hand has the (a) genitive or (b) dative of the thing, but (c) the dative of the person. (5) With regard to these and the other adjectives enumerated in Rule 36, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 129. I. B. 5. (p. 288).

152. *Tempero* and *moderor* with a dative signify to restrain; with an accusative, to regulate or govern. But this distinction need not always be insisted on. We find *moderari animo* (Cic. ad Q. Fr. i. 1. 13), and, with the same or much the same sense, *moderari animos* (Liv. xlii. 62);—in both these instances the ideas of government and restraint are blended.

153. Verbs compounded with prepositions (R. 30 A) take a dative only of the more remote object: *Indixit bellum Romanis*, he declared war against the Romans. The learner must remember this, or he will be liable to fall into such mistakes as translating 'He declared war' by *Indixit bello*; whereas he should write *Indixit bellum*: for a transitive verb (here *dico*), when compounded with a preposition, still governs an accusative of the nearer object by Rule 20.

154. The verb *abripio*, which according to Rule 30 A we should expect to find with a dative, always takes in preference a preposition with its case; and *insum*, a very common word, is almost invariably (at least in the best prose writers) followed by the preposition *in*: *Nihil cognovi ingratus, in quo vitio nihil mali non inest* (Cic. ad Att. viii. 4).

155. Many of these compound verbs (R. 30 A.) vary their construction. This is done in four different ways:—(1) by the verb acquiring a transitive force, and so governing an accusative; (2) by the preposition, with which the verb is compounded, governing its own case (R. 59); (3) by the preposition in composition being repeated after the verb; (4) by the introduction of a new preposition. You will find examples under Rule 30 C.

Obs. *Accolo* (unlike *adjaceo*) always takes an accusative: *A sociis, qui accolunt viam, modica contrahendo auxilia* (Liv. xxviii. 13).

156. (1) After passive verbs and participles a dative of the agent frequently implies that what is done is to the interest of the agent (*N.* 129. 1). (2) This dative is found far more often with the past participle and compound tenses of passive verbs than with the present, imperfect, or future. Observe also that pronouns are the only words which are frequently thus put in the dative: *Mihi, ut urbi satis esset presidii, consultum ac provisum est* (Cic. Cat. ii. 12. 26). See the last two sentences under Rule 111 A, and Madvig, § 250. a.

157. The agent is the person by whom, the instrument is the thing by which, anything is done. The ablative of the agent requires the preposition *a* or *ab*: *A milite occisus est*, he was killed by a soldier. The ablative of the instrument stands without a preposition: *Gladio occisus est*, he was killed with (or by) a sword. Beginners should keep this distinction in mind, especially as—

*Obs.* An ablative of the agent and one of the instrument (or cause, manner, &c.) often occur in the same sentence, or near together. See instances of this under Rules 39. 40. 41. and 60.

158. The intermediate agent (or instrument), by means of whom (or which) any thing is done, is put in the accusative after the preposition *per*: *Per me occisus est*, he was killed by my instrumentality, another person being the originator of the deed. *Eum per litteras doctui*.

*Obs.* This accusative with *per* and the ablative of the agent or instrument are often found in the same sentence, or near together: *Ab eo per me occisus est*, he was killed by my hands at his instigation. You will find instances of this under Rules 40 and 77.

159. (1) The dative of the purpose (*R.* 34 A) can stand for a genitive or ablative after a passive participle in one of those cases. (2) It sometimes stands, where a nominative or accusative might be placed, in apposition to a sentence.

160. That a genitive of the possessor is exactly equivalent in force to a possessive pronoun may be seen from several examples (*e.g.*, the second) under Rule 68 B.

*Obs.* The genitive of the author or possessor need not always be translated by the preposition *of*: *Hic liber Platonis est*, this book is by Plato. *Omnia fortium virorum esse dixerunt* (Liv. v. 36), they said that every thing belonged to brave men.

161. This genitive (*R.* 68) follows also verbs of esteeming and naming, perhaps in all or most instances by an ellipse of *esse*: *Id Caesaris dicitur*, this is called (or, is said to be) Caesar's.

162. The same genitive (*R.* 70) follows also *videor* and verbs of thinking, by an ellipse of *esse*. This infinitive, which is omitted in the sixteenth and seventeenth sentences under Rule 70, is expressed in the thirteenth.

163. To Rule 70 refer the phrases *moris esse*, *tutela esse*, *lucri facere*, &c. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 135. I. 11 (p. 314). In such phrases *esse* is sometimes omitted according to Note 162.

164. *As æris*, a pound of copper, an *as* (a Roman coin); hence *æris*, either (1) with or (2) without *gravis*, is used elliptically, after numerals, in the sense of *asses*. Concerning the epithet *gravis*, see Andrews' *Lexicon*, under the word *as*.

165. (1) A genitive is frequently governed by an elliptical noun which is found in the same or a different case in a previous part of the sentence: *Vestra causa, nec* (supply *causa*) *ullius alterius, loquor* (Liv. xxi. 13), I speak for your sake, and not for that (not for the sake of) any body else. (2) This previous noun is under certain circumstances repeated, or an emphatic pronoun (*hic* or *ille*) is put for it. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 135. I. 5 (p. 312), and Madvig, § 280. Obs. 2.

166. *Modi*, the genitive of *modus*, coalesces, so as to form one word, with the genitives singular of several pronouns, especially with those of demonstratives. Thus are formed *ejusmodi*, *ejusdemmodi* (Cic. de Fin. ii. 31. 102), *cujusquemodi* (also written as two words), &c.

167. For the distinction, not however always observed, between the genitive and ablative of quality, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 135. III. a. 8 (p. 316), and Madvig, § 287. Obs. 2. Cicero generally uses the ablative with *sum*.

168. (1) The genitive of material may frequently, both in Latin and English, be changed for an adjective: *auri patera* (a bowl of gold) is equivalent to *patera aurea* (a golden bowl). See also Note 109. (2) This genitive is the only one of those under Rule 72, which can stand without an epithet. (3) Where some of the others appear to do so, *unius* is to be understood by ellipse: *Id* (understand *unius*) *diei iter est* (Liv. xlv. 28), that is a day's journey, i.e., a one day's journey. *Unius* is expressed in this combination in the third sentence under Rule 27 B.

169. (1) The words specified in Rule 77 only govern a genitive, when they are used partitively: as, *pauca navium*, a few of the ships. (2) They are often used attributively by Rule 5; as, *pauca naves*, a few ships; *viginti oppida*, twenty towns; *quisquam sapiens*, any wise man; *nemo civis*, no citizen. (3) But in many cases, where in English we use this attributive construction, the partitive is admissible, or even preferable in Latin. Thus to translate 'No nation surpasses us in valour,' you may write, *Nulla gens* (or, more elegantly, *nulla gentium*) *nos virtute superat*.

170. Partitive words, whether adjectives, numerals, or substantives, are often followed by a preposition, especially *ex*, instead of a genitive. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 135. iv. d. 7 (p. 318).

171. *Alius* implies difference; *alter*, similitude: *Da mihi alium librum*, give me another book, one of another sort; but, *Da mihi alterum librum*, give me another book of the same sort, a second copy.

*Obs. 1.* Observe the following phrases:—(a) *Oppida, alia aliis modis, capta sunt*, the towns were taken, some in one way, some in another; (b) *Oppida, aliud alio modo, capta sunt*, the towns were taken, one in one way, one in another. See also Andrews' *Lexicon*, under *alius*.

*Obs. 2.* *Alter* generally (a) denotes one of two things, and answers to *unus* or *alter* preceding (*unus—alter*, or *alter—alter*): but sometimes (b) it means either of two things, being then equivalent to *alteruter*, one or the other. See Rule 77 A, sixth example.

172. *Alter*, *uter* (relative and interrogative), *uterque*, *neuter*, are used, when only two persons or things are spoken of; *alius*, *qui* (relative), *quis* (interrogative), *quisque*, *nullus*, when more than two.

*Obs.* (1) *Alius* however is used, when only two persons are spoken of, to denote dissimilarity. See the fourth sentence under Rule 41. (2) *Quisque* also, implies Madvig (§ 495. *Obs.* 2), if combined with *suus*, may be used to denote each of two persons. The passage he quotes (*Liv. ii. 44*) does not prove this. But it is true that *quisque* thus combined is used when two bodies of men (designated by one or two collective nouns) are spoken of: *Hinc senatus, hinc plebs, suum quisque intuentes duces, velut in acie constitierant* (*Liv. vi. 15*). Add the fifteenth sentence under Rule 25, and the passage cited by Madvig.

173. (1) *Uterque* and *quisque* used partitively are always followed by the genitive of a pronoun: as, *uterque nostrum*; *quisque eorum*. (2) On the other hand, they generally agree with a noun. Write *uterque consul* (each consul, or both consuls) in preference to *uterque consulum*. (3) Sometimes, but very rarely, we find such a construction as *utrique consules*.

*Obs.* The plurals, *utri*, *neutri*, *utrique*, *quisque*, *alteri*, are to be used, when you wish to designate one or each of two parties or nations. Cicero, speaking of two classes of men, says, *Quos ego utrosque in eodem genere pono* (*Cic. Cat. ii. 9. 20*). *Quorum utrumque* would mean *each of which two men*.

174. *Quisque* is used to distribute superlatives and ordinal numerals: *Epicureos doctissimus quisque contemnit* (*Cic. Tusc. Disp. i. 31. 77*), all the most learned men despise the Epicureans.

175. The nominative singular masculine of *ceteri*, *cetera*, *cetera*, is not found, but other parts of this number occur: as, *cetera classis*, the rest of the fleet; *Argentum ille ceterum purum apposuerat* (*Cic. Verr. iv. 22. 49*).

176. (1) Partitive words sometimes govern a genitive of a collective noun. (2) In this and some other cases they do not take their gender from the genitive. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 135. iv. a. 3 (p. 318).

177. (1) *Hic*, here, *huc*, hither, *hinc*, hence; *illuc*, there, *illuc*, thither, *illinc*, thence. *Istic*, *istuc*, *istinc*, have the same distinction of meaning. (2) *Gentium* and *terrarum* are the only genitives which Cicero uses with adverbs of place.

178. The genitive *loci* is found after the ablatives of some demonstrative pronouns, and also after *quo*, relative or interrogative: *Re-*

*spondit se nescire, quo loci esset* (Cic. ad Att. viii. 10). See Andrews' *Lexicon*, under the word *locus*.

179. Words denoting quantity (*R. 79 B*) are frequently followed by the genitives of possessive pronouns and of adjectives of the third declension.

180. Livy often uses the phrase *dimidium ejus*, referring to a preceding numeral. In this phrase *dimidium* is a neuter adjective used substantively by Rule 7; and, as it signifies quantity, it governs a genitive (by Rule 79 *B*): *Ad tria millia hostium caesa erant, dimidium fere ejus captum* (Liv. x. 18). *Sexcenti pedites et dimidium ejus equitum* (see Liv. xxi. 59).

181. Neuter adjectives of either number, which contain no idea of quantity, sometimes govern a genitive, when used by Rule 7 as substantives: *Ad asperrima quæque belli parati* (Liv. xxxv. 18), ready for all the hardest services of war. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 134. *β.* 6 (p. 320).

182. Several of the participles and adjectives which fall under Rule 80, whether followed by a genitive or a gerund in *di*, are to be translated by the help of some other preposition than *of*. This is especially the case with most of those which signify knowledge and ignorance. Compare Note 108.

183. As *expers* and *exors* in the best writers govern only a genitive, they are referred to Rule 80, as adjectives signifying the contrary to *potestas*, and not to Rule 50.

184. A genitive after other adjectives besides those specified under Rule 59 is common in the poets, and answers to the Greek genitive of respect. See instances from Virgil and Horace cited by *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 136. *B. 2. β.* (p. 321). Hither too is to be referred the peculiar phrase *minor capitis* (Hor. Od. iii. 5. 42). This poetical use of the genitive is very rare in good prose writers. Livy however frequently combines *animi* with adjectives signifying an affection of the mind: *Confusus atque incertus animi* (Liv. i. 7).

185. Of the adjectives under Rule 80, a few (1) may be followed by an ablative, and many (2) by a preposition with its case: *Quis jure peritor, officio diligentior, commemorari potest* (Cic. Clu. 38. 107)? *Rudis in jure civili* (Cic. de Orat. i. 10. 40). *Gens ferox et ingenii avidi ad pugnam* (Liv. vii. 23).

186. Verbs of accusing, &c. (*R. 80 D*), sometimes admit also (1) a preposition, especially *de*, with its case; sometimes (2) an ablative, as *crimine, scelere, lege, capite*, &c. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 135. *II. 3. d.* (p. 315).

*Obs.* (1) Where the amount of a fine is stated, the ablative is necessary, and is to be referred to Rule 50 *B*: *Quindecim millibus æris damnatur* (Liv. iv. 44). Add Liv. v. 29. (2) The phrase *octupli aliquem damnare* affords an instance of perhaps the only exception to this remark.

187. *Moneo*, when it means to *remind*, is always followed in the best writers by the preposition *de*, and not by a genitive. Its compounds *admoneo* and *commoneo*, which are found with the same preposition, have also a genitive, when they are used as verbs of reminding. But *moneo* and *admoneo*, when they mean to *advise* or *admonish*, govern a double accusative by Rule 22 A. But see Note 117. 1.

Obs. (1) *Admoneo* (I remind, I speak of), when used with a general application, has no accusative of the person expressed. Compare Notes 67. C and 320. (2) Its accusative is sometimes to be supplied from a previous part of the sentence (*N.* 113. A). See *Livy* iii. 52.

188. *Madvig* (§ 291 and Obs. 1) says that *memini*, *reminisoor*, and *obliviscor*, govern (1) a genitive, when they mean to *remember* and *forget*, i.e. to *think of* or *not to think of* a thing; but (2) an accusative, when they mean to *have* or *not to have* a thing in the *memory*. This distinction is correct, but it is not always observed.

Obs. *Recordor* is found with a genitive two or three times in *Cicero*: but he generally, and other authors perhaps always, use it with an accusative.

189. (1) *Miseror* and *commiseror* properly mean to *express pity for*, to *bewail*. The former word is common in *Virgil*, and is used by him as equivalent to *misereor*, I pity: *Sortemque animo miseratus iniquam* (*Æn.* vi. 332). (2) *Miseresco* is not used by prose writers, except perhaps once impersonally: *Miserescobat non magis pœna homines quam sceleris* (*Liv.* ii. 5). But another reading is *miserabat*.

190. (1) Notice the various prepositions, &c., by which the ablatives enumerated in Rules 39, 40, and 41 (especially that of the cause) may be rendered in English. (2) It is often extremely difficult to distinguish these ablatives, one from another. Thus *sua voluntate* and *vi et minis*, which are placed under the ablative of manner, might be considered as ablatives of cause: and the second example to Rule 40 might perhaps have been placed under Rule 41.

Obs. Many ablatives, especially some of those of material, may be referred indifferently to Rules 39, 40, 41, or to Rule 50 B. Obs.

191. *Gratia* and *causa* (for the sake of) always follow the genitive they govern.

192. Observe the way in which *casu* and *forte*, causal ablatives, are to be construed: *Forte venit*, he happened to come. See also the fifth sentence under Rule 79 B.

193. (1) The cause is often expressed by the prepositions *ob*, *propter*, *per*, and in some cases by *ab* or *ex*. For this use of *ab*, chiefly found in *Livy*, consult *Andrews' Lexicon*. (2) *Præ* expresses the cause of hindrance: *Nec loqui præ morore potuit* (*Cic. Plane.* 41. 99), nor could he speak for grief.

194. (1) The ablative of manner, when it has an epithet, may stand either (a) with or (b) without the preposition *cum*: *Magno cum metu loquor*, or *Magno metu loquor*. (2) When without an epithet, it requires (a) the preposition (as, *Cum metu loquor*), except (b) in such phrases as *vi, jure, &c.* (3) Those words, which themselves signify manner (as *more, modo, ritu*), do not admit the preposition. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 131. II. C. (p. 298).

195. The ablative of material is often governed by the preposition *ex* or *e*. See the last example to Rule 68 A.

196. Verbs of sacrificing and *pluit* (it rains) take either (1) an accusative as transitive verbs, or (2) an ablative of material. See examples of either construction under Rules 20 and 48, and in Andrews' *Lexicon*, under *immolo*.

197. The ablative of respect is sometimes governed by the preposition *in*: as, *rudis in jure civili* (Cic. de Orat. i. 10. 40), unskilled in civil law. (*Rudis* is never found in the best prose writers with the simple ablative.)

198. Some ablatives of condition may be governed by the preposition *cum*: *Repulsus est cum magno suo detrimento* (Lentulus apud Cic. ad Div. xii. 15). We find *bona venia audire* (Cic. de Nat. Deor. i. 21. 69), and *cum bona venia audire* (Liv. xxix. 1), to hear with indulgence. As these instances might be regarded as ablatives of manner, compare Note 194. 1.

199. (1) The ablative after the verbs under Rule 49 A is that of material. (2) *Potior* generally (a), but (b) not always, governs the ablative in prose. When combined with the plural of *res*, it is invariably followed by the genitive (*rerum potiri*).

200. (1) *Plenus* (always) and *refertus* (generally) are in prose joined to a genitive of persons. (2) *Plenus* takes either (a) a genitive or (b) ablative of things, but in Cicero usually the former case. (3) *Refertus* and *confertus* require an ablative of things. (4) *Egenus* is a rare word, and should be joined to a genitive.

201. (1) The ablative after many adjectives and verbs of plenty and want is an ablative of respect: as, *dives copiis*, rich in resources. (2) *Dives* and many others of these adjectives admit a genitive in poetry, but seldom or never, in the best prose writers, take any case except the ablative. (3) Most adjectives of want admit the preposition *a* or *ab*: *Inops ab amicis, nudus a magistratibus* (Cic. pro Dom. 22. 58).

202. (1) *Impleo* is joined by Livy sometimes (a) to an ablative, sometimes (b) to a genitive. (2) *Compleo, repleo*, and *expleo*, generally, probably always in prose, take an ablative. But *completus* and *repletus*, used adjectively, may be joined to a genitive of persons. Compare Note 200. 1, and see Andrews' *Lexicon*.

203. *Egeo* may be used with a genitive: *Res non egent longæ ora-*



*tionis* (Auct. ad Her. iv. 54. 68). But it is doubtful whether this verb ever takes any case but an ablative in Cicero. See Andrews' *Lexicon*.

204. Observe, and refer to Rule 50 B. Obs., the following and similar phrases: *Afficit me poena*, he inflicts punishment on me; *Afficior poena*, I am visited with punishment. For other expressions referable to the same Rule, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 131. I. E. (p. 296).

205. (1) *Assuesco*, *assuefacio*, transitive, and *assuesco*, *assuefio*, intransitive, are always followed in Cæsar and Cicero by an ablative (see Rule 50 B, last example), or by an infinitive (see Rule 117 B, second example). (2) In the poets, Livy, and later writers, these verbs are also found with a dative (see Rule 29 C, fourteenth example).

206. (1) *Opus est* is, in the best writers, constructed (a) with the supine in *u* (R. 49 C, tenth example), and (b) the ablative of passive participles. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 136. I. E. 10. b. (p. 296). (2) *Opus* is also used with the copulative verb *sum*, as an indeclinable adjective: *Placuit Eumenem præparare, quæ ad transitum Hellespontis opus essent* (Liv. xxxvii. 22).

207. (1) *Dignor* is frequently used as a deponent verb by the Augustan poets. (2) It occurs once in Virgil (*Æn.* iii. 475) with a passive signification; and this is the only way in which Cicero uses it, or in which it should be used in writing prose.

208. (1) *Dignus* is found with a genitive in Cicero: *Hoc dignum rei videtur* (Cic. Balb. 2. 5). (2) *Fretus* is found once in Livy with a dative: *Multitudo nulli rei, præterquam numero, freta* (Liv. vi. 13). Compare Note 143. 1.

209. *Muto* and *permuto* are never in the best prose writers combined with any case of the thing taken in exchange. It is only in the poets and writers of less correct prose, that we find such phrases as *mutare mancipia vino* (to barter slaves for wine). Cicero however uses *commuto* with a simple ablative, or an ablative governed by *cum*, of the thing taken in exchange. For the construction of these verbs in poetry, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 131. I. D. b. (p. 296).

210. (1) To designate the estimation (R. 73) in which a thing is held, you must, in the positive degree, use the elliptic genitive *magni*, and not *multi*: on the other hand, in the comparative and superlative, you must use *pluris* and *plurimi* (or *permagni*), and not *majoris* and *maximi*. Use *magno* and *parvo*, not *magni* and *parvi*, to designate the price of a thing: *Areas quædam magno aestimant* (Cic. Paradox. vi. 51), they value some sites at a high price. (2) It is stated in Rule 73 that *maximi* may be used as a genitive of price. It would not perhaps be possible to adduce any passage which proves this. Use therefore in preference *permagno* or *quam*.

*plurimo*: *Permagno decumas vendidit* (Cic. Verr. iii. 39. 90). You will find more examples under Rule 46. See also Madvig, § 294.

211. The phrase *pensi est* is not found in Caesar or Cicero. It is used by Livy after *minus*, *nihil*, and *nec quicquam*: *In me quoque vobis quid faceretis, minus pensi esse* (that you cared less) *non mirarer* (Liv. xxxiv. 81). Add Liv. xxxiv. 49.

212. The ablative of difference, especially an elliptical one, is also joined to those adverbs and prepositions of time and place (as *post*, *ante*, *supra*, *infra*), which imply comparison: *Homines paullo ante vidimus* (Cic. Verr. iv. 3. 6). *Ambo aliquanto post ad Trebiam pugnaverunt* (Liv. xxi. 15). See also some of the sentences under Rule 47 B. Notice the phrases (occurring in Cicero) *paullo secus*, *non multo secus*, a little differently.

213. (1) When a relative pronoun (*quo*, *quanto*), as an elliptic ablative of difference, answers to a demonstrative (*hoc*, *eo*, *tanto*), this relative may stand either (a) first or (b) last. You may write, *Quo diligentior eris, eo doctior fies*, or, *Eo doctior fies, quo diligentior eris*. Observe several of the sentences under Rule 47 B. (2) An elliptic ablative of difference, as *paullo* (supply *tempore* or *temporis*), may either (a) precede or (b) follow an adverb of time: *Paullo post discessit*, or, *Post paullo discessit*. (3) But the proper position of the elliptic ablative must be learned by observation and practice. See also Notes 254 and 255. B.

*Obs.* The ablatives of difference, enumerated in Rule 47 B, are not always elliptic ablatives. *Nihilo*, a substantive, and others, when used substantively by Rule 7, are often put without any ellipse: *Nihilo secius* (none the less) *sequebatur* (Cæs. B. C. iii. 26). *Altius paullo aliquid repetere* (Cic. ad Div. i. 9. 2), to trace anything from a little further back.

214. (1) The ablative of comparison is put for the conjunction *quam* with a nominative or accusative. In other words, this ablative can only be used when the comparative, if an adjective, is in the nominative or accusative; or, if an adverb, is preceded by one of these two cases. (2) In comparing the other cases, *quam* must be used. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 181. III. D. 2 (p. 302).

215. The ablative of the relative after a comparative cannot be changed for *quam* and a nominative or accusative. See the twelfth and thirteenth sentences under Rule 62 A.

216. (1) A numeral, whether expressed or understood (as, *decem anni*, ten years; *annus*, one year), is increased or diminished by the use (a) of *plus quam*, *amplius quam*, *minus quam*, or (b) of *plus*, *amplius*, *minus*, with an ellipse of *quam* (R. 64): The numeral is in the same case as it would have been had no comparison been made: as, *Ducenti cæsi sunt*; *Plus quam ducenti cæsi sunt*; *Amplius ducenti cæsi sunt*; *Ager triginta iugerum*; *Ager minus triginta iugerum*; *Non plus quinque millia passuum abfuit*; *Cum ducentis*

*haud plus equitibus venit; Plus annum abfuit; Plus quadratum abfuit.* (Thus too perhaps is to be explained the genitive after *minor* in the ninth example to Rule 72.) (2) But *plus, amplius*, or *minus*, as (a) a nominative or (b) accusative, may have an ablative (R. 64) of the numeral: *Victi amplius ducentis ceciderunt* (Liv. xxi. 29). *Adfuit, sed non plus duobus an tribus mensibus* (Cic. ad Div. xiii. 29). See examples to this Note under Rules 26, 27 A, 27 C, 51, 52, 62, 63, 64, and 72. See also Madvig, § 305.

*Obs.* Whether *quam* is expressed or understood, the verb or adjective does not agree with *plus, amplius, minus*, but with the numeral or substantive following: *Paullo minus trecenti vivi capti* (Liv. xxix. 36).

217. *Quam* can only be omitted after *plus, amplius, minus*, when they are followed by a word signifying quantity (as *dimidium*), or by a numeral (expressed or understood). See the examples to Rule 64. Hence you must not write *plus Caesar valet*, but *plus quam Caesar valet*, or, *plus Cesare valet*. (Notice the phrase *plus etiam satis* (Cic. ad Att. xii. 23), even more than enough.)

218. (1) *Ad* is used before words beginning with a consonant: (2) *ab* always before a vowel or *h*, and sometimes before certain, indeed most, consonants. (3) Concerning *abs* see Andrews' *Lexicon*. By Cicero's time this last form of the preposition had almost fallen into disuse. It is however generally, though not always, used by him before the pronoun *te* in preference to *a* or *ab*.

219. *Abque* (without) occurs in Cicero, but under peculiar circumstances. *Sine* is to be used in preference. See Andrews' *Lexicon*.

220. The adverbs *simul, pariter, una*, are often combined with the preposition *cum*. They may either (1) precede or (2) follow this preposition and its case: *Summi puerorum amores saepe una cum pretexta ponuntur* (Cic. Læl. 10. 33). See also two sentences under Rule 67 A.

221. (1) *Ex* is used either before consonants or vowels: (2) *a* only before consonants, and, even so, less frequently than *ex*.

222. (1) *In primis* (sometimes written as one word, *imprimis*), among the first, chiefly, especially. This phrase is applied both to persons and things: *Dictum in primis hebes* (see Cic. de Fin. iv. 18. 50). (2) *Cum primis* is used with the same signification, but is applied only to persons: *Homo domi sua cum primis locuples* (Verr. ii. 28. 68).

223. *Procul* is followed sometimes (1) by a simple ablative (*haud procul Capua*), sometimes (2) by the preposition *a* or *ab* (*procul ab domo*). This preposition may, in prose, only be omitted before a noun descriptive of a locality. *Procul negotiis* (far from business) is a poetical idiom. See Horat. Epod. 2. 1. Add Virg. Georg. ii. 459.

224. (1) The following prepositions are found in composition,

governing an accusative ;—*ante, ad, circum, inter, ob, præter, per, trans, super, in* : and the following, governing an ablative ;—*a, ab, abs, de, ex, e, super* (only in *superedo*), and perhaps *in* (see Obs.).

Obs. It is doubtful whether *in* in composition ever governs an ablative : for where it seems to do so, this case may be considered as an ablative of place (*R. 54 A*), or otherwise explained.

225. A. Hence (*R. 59*) many neuter verbs, compounded with prepositions that govern an accusative, become transitive, and have a full passive voice : as, *ineo, transeo, &c.* See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 127 B. 3 (p. 277).

B. Even a few neuter verbs, compounded with prepositions governing an ablative, acquire a transitive force, and so take an accusative : some (1) occasionally, as *præsto, præcurro* (these two take also a dative), and *egredior* (this takes also an ablative) ; others (2) always, as *convenio*, I meet, *prævenio*, and *præcedo* (this last occurs in Plautus, but only there with a dative).

226. *Animadverto* governs an accusative by virtue of the *ad* contained in it : *Hoc animadverto*, i.e., *animum ad hoc verito*, I turn my thoughts to this, I observe this. The phrase *animum adverto* is found in Plautus, in Lucretius (ii. 124), and even in Cæsar, with an accusative (*Ille animum advertit*). But this is an archaism, and is not to be imitated. See Andrews' *Lexicon*, under *adverto*.

227. The construction explained in Rule 59 is often varied by the use of those mentioned in Note 155.

228. *Omissa quoque præpositione* (*R. 61*) : for these verbs frequently take after them the prepositions *ab, de, ex* ; and some of them, especially those with the syllables *di, dis*, and *se* prefixed, require one of these prepositions in prose. An ablative of a person must be governed, after one of these verbs, by a preposition. See Madvig, § 261.

Obs. 1. The phrase *via digredi*, occurring in Livy, is perhaps the only exception to the above remark concerning verbs with the prefixes *di, dis*, and *se*.

Obs. 2. Such phrases as *cadere celo, cadere manu*, constructed without a preposition, are poetical. But poetical constructions are not uncommon in Livy. You should only use them, and then with caution, when writing in a narrative style.

229. (1) These participles of origin (*R. 61*), with the exception perhaps of *prognatus*, may be applied indifferently to a male or female ancestor. (2) *Ortus* and *natus* (*a*) are those most commonly used by prose writers : *cretus* and *creatus* (*b*) are found only in the poets. (3) *Prognatus* should, in strict correctness, refer to a more distant ancestor than the father ; but it does not always do so. Compare the sixth sentence under Rule 61 with the second example given in the *Primer*, § 123. xiii. (see Cic. Tusc. Disp. iii. 12. 26).

230. After verbs and participles of origin,—(1) the ablatives *stirps, sanguine, familia, genere*, are usually (*a*) found without a preposi-

tion; sometimes (*b*) they are governed by the preposition *ex*: *loco* never has this preposition. (2) The ablative of a parent's name, or a substantive (as *matre*) designating the parent, can seldom be preceded by a preposition. Notice the following exceptions: *Circe et Pasiphaë e Perseide natae, patre Sole* (Cic. de Nat. Deor. iii. 19. 48); and, *Διόκουροι ex Jove et Proserpina nati* (ib. 21. 53). (3) But when the parent, or a more remote ancestor (see Cic. Mur. 31. 66), is designated by a pronoun, a preposition (*ab* or *ex*) is always used: *Jupiter, ex quo et Penelopa Pana natum ferunt* (Cic. de Nat. Deor. iii. 22. 56). (4) The name of an ancestor more remote than a parent must, except under peculiar circumstances (see Cic. de Nat. Deor. iii. 19. 48), be preceded by the preposition *ab*; while before the name of a nation *ex* is used: *Tarquinius oriundi ex Etruscis* (Liv. ii. 9).—Poets allow themselves greater license; but the above remarks are founded on the usage of prose writers, by whom they are observed with considerable strictness. In addition to the examples given under Rule 61, see the following passages:—Liv. i. 46; Cæs. B. G. vii. 37; Cic. Verr. v. 70. 180; Cic. de Fin. iv. 7. 17; Cæs. B. G. vi. 18; Id. ib. ii. 29; *Alba oriundum sacerdotium* (Liv. i. 20). Lastly, if you will turn to Cicero's treatise *de Nat. Deor.* iii. 16–23, you will find this subject illustrated by more examples than you can easily count.

231. (1) *Tenus*, as a general rule, is followed by the genitive in preference to the ablative, when it governs a plural substantive. (2) It is however found three times in Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, and once at least in Livy, with an ablative plural: *Pennis tenus acta sagitta est* (Ov. Met. vi. 258).

232. An ellipse of the ablative *parte* is probably the origin of the use of the compound words *hactenus*, *quatenus*, &c. See the last example but one to Rule 67.

[233. A. An English verb has three participles in the active voice, one relating to present, one to past, and one to future time. If the verb is transitive and thus has a passive voice, it has also a present, past, and future participle of passive signification. Thus from the verb *to bring* we have in the active voice—*bringing* (present), *having brought* (past), and *being about to bring* (future); and in the passive we have—*being brought* (present), *having been brought* (past), and *being about to be brought* (future).

B. (1) The Latin language is not so rich in participles. In the active voice there are two, a present and a future (many intransitive verbs want this latter). From *porto* we have—*portans* (bringing), and *portaturus* (being about to bring). In the passive voice there is but one to which any idea of time is necessarily attached, viz., the past: *portatus* (having been brought, brought). (2) There is another passive participle, that ending in *endus*: *portandus*, meet to be brought, that is, to be brought. This is often called the future participle, but incorrectly. *Hoc onus tibi est portandum* means simply, 'This load

must be (is meet to be) carried by you;' and not, 'This load will have to be carried by you at some future time.' Concerning this participle in *dus*, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 144. Note 1 (p. 335).

C. (1) Deponent verbs alone, with a few half deponents (as *gaudeo*, *audeo*), resemble English active verbs in having a present, past, and future participle, all of active signification. Thus from *sequor* we have—*sequens* (following), *secutus* (having followed), *secuturus* (being about to follow). (2) Deponent verbs have also the participle in *dus* with the usual passive signification: *sequendus*, meet to be followed, that is to be followed.

*Obs.* The passive participles (where they exist) of intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally: *Procursum est ab omnibus*, it was run forward by all, i.e., they all ran forward. This statement will be clear to you, when you have mastered Rule 111 and Note 293. At present, do not attempt to enter into the question.

### Exercise.

(1) Give, with the English of each, the participles of the following verbs:—(Transitive.) *Laudo*, I praise; *dico*, I say; *vincio*, I bind; *doceo*, I teach; *capio*, I take; *fero*, I bear; *imitor*, I imitate; *confiteor*, I confess; *patior*, I suffer:—(Intransitive.<sup>1</sup>) *Doleo*, I grieve; *parco*, I spare; *pereo*, I perish; *proficiscor*, I set out; *digredior*, I depart; *orior*, I arise; *audeo*, I dare.

234. A. A future participle may often be rendered in English by *likely to*, *intending to*, &c.: *Videbatur iturus*, he seemed likely to go.

B. The past participle of some deponent verbs is often used in a present sense: *usus*, using.

C. Several past participles of deponent verbs have sometimes (1) an active, sometimes (2) a passive signification: *adeptus*, having obtained, or having been obtained. For a list of these participles, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 40. 2. c. (p. 100).

235. The subjunct examples will show the way in which a participle (especially a past passive participle) is often to be rendered in English, when it is attributed to a substantive: *Post reges exactos* (Cic. Phil. iii. 4. 9), after the expulsion of kings; *urgens turba*, the pressure of a crowd.

236. Observe how the English construction differs from the Latin in the following sentences: *Pueros laudatos dimisit*, he praised and dismissed the boys; *Transgressus flumen castra oppugnat*, he crosses the river and attacks the camp.]

<sup>1</sup> Do not give the passive participles of any of these intransitive verbs.

237. The various ways, in which the ablative absolute (*R.* 65, 66) may be rendered in English, must be carefully observed.

238. From an examination of the examples under Rules 65 and 66, it will be seen that the participle, whether expressed or understood, might be changed for a conjunction and finite verb. This conjunction would be *postquam*, *quia*, *ſc.*, *quavis*, *ſc.*, *ſi*, *quum* (temporal or causal), as the meaning of the sentence might require.

239. A. The past participle of an English active verb can only be translated by a past Latin participle of an active sense, when there is a Latin deponent corresponding to an English active verb (*N.* 233. *C.* 1): otherwise you must, at least if the English participle is intransitive, use a conjunction and finite verb: 'Having said this, he departed,' *hæc locutus, discessit*; 'Winter having ensued, he set out,' *ſecuta hieme, profectus est*: but, 'Winter having come, he set out,' *postquam hieme venit* (or, *quum hieme venisset*, *ſc.*), *profectus est*.

B. But an English active past participle, or a finite transitive verb following a conjunction, may often be rendered by a Latin passive past participle combined with a substantive in the ablative absolute: 'Having done these things (or, 'When he had done these things'), he departed,' *His rebus factis, discessit*. (This is, literally, 'These things having been done, he departed.')

240. (1) The future participle is used comparatively seldom in the ablative absolute; (2) the participle in *dus* hardly ever.

241. Sometimes, with an ablative of a participle (once with the adjective *incerto*), a lengthened phrase is put absolutely instead of the ablative of a substantive. This is especially the case with such neuter ablatives as *audito*, *cognito*, *edicto*, *ſc.* You will find examples under Rules 65 and 66.

242. A participle or adjective, especially when followed by *qui* (but not only so), is sometimes put in the ablative absolute, agreeing with a demonstrative or indefinite pronoun understood: *Premissis* (supply *quibusdam*), *qui hæc nuntiarent, profectus est*.—*Nec ab domo quicquam mittebatur, de Hispania retinenda sollicitis* (*Liv.* xxviii. 12): supply *his qui domi erant*. See Madvig, § 429. Obs. 2.

243. The passive participle of an intransitive verb sometimes stands by itself absolutely in the ablative: as, *inexplorato* (*Liv.* xxii. 4), without having made previous examination. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 133. 3 (p. 310).

244. (1) An ablative absolute, as an exception to a negative statement, may be introduced by *nisi*. (2) It is sometimes found in Livy and later writers after other conjunctions, as *quanquam*, *velut*, *ſc.* One passage from Livy contains an example of each of these two constructions: (*Vellentes*), *quem tradere exercitum successoris jussissent, quod, nisi manente in provincia bello, non decerneretur, eum quasi debellato* (i.e., *quasi debellatum esset*) *triumphare* (*Liv.* xxvi. 21)? Add *Liv.* viii. 3.

245. Observe, under Rule 66, the different ways of expressing by an ablative absolute, 'during the consulship of two persons.' *Consulibus* generally stands after the names, but may precede: *Quem magistratum gessi consulibus Tuditano et Cethego* (Cic. Cat. Maj. 4. 10).

246. Refer to Rule 51 such ablatives of time as the following:—*adventu ejus*, on his arrival; *discessu tuo*, at your departure; *ludis*, at the time of the games; *Saturnaliibus* (Cic. ad Att. v. 20), on (or during) the festival of the Saturnalia; *nostra et patrum memoria* (Cic. Font. 7. 13); also *initio, eventu, bello, pace, occasu solis, &c.*

247. (1) The names of the months (*Januarius, &c.*) are not substantives, but adjectives agreeing with *mensis* understood or expressed: (2) and they should always agree, as adjectives, with the words *Calendæ, Nonæ, Idus*: as, *Calendis Januariis*, on the Calends of January. Do not write *Calendis Januari*; this is less correct, or rather incorrect (*Public School Latin Grammar*, § 32. 13. E. p. 84), though such expressions are found in some good editions of Latin authors. Thus Tauchnitz edits *Idibus Decembris* (Liv. iv. 37); where Drakenborch more correctly prints *Idibus Decembris*.

248. Concerning the Roman calendar and the Roman method of naming the days of the month, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, pp. 82, 84, or the *Primer*, p. 131. Throughout these Exercises, do not write *quarto Idus Decembres*, as some authors did, by ellipse for *quarto die ante Idus Decembres*; but use in preference, according to Cicero's custom, the idiomatical expression *ante diem quartum Idus Decembres*, or, abbreviated, *a. d. iv. Id. Dec.* For an explanation of this idiom, see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 32. 13. D. (p. 84). According to some editors, Cicero sometimes used the former mode of expression. Thus Nobbe edits—*Quarto Non. Febr. Formias venerunt* (Cic. ad Att. vii. 18): but see Madvig, *Supplement I.* (p. 456).

*Obs. 1.* Such a phrase as *a. d. iv. Id. Dec.* may be governed by *in* or *ex*.

*Obs. 2.* *Pridie* is combined with an accusative by an ellipse of *ante*: as, *pridie Idus* (Cic. ad Att. xiii. 25), on the day before the Ides. It may itself depend on *ad*: *Ex ante diem Non. Jun. usque ad prid. Cal. Sept.* (Cic. ad Att. iii. 17. 1).

249. The following remarks are illustrated under Rules 51 and 52.—(1) Some ablatives of time (*R. 51*) may stand either (*a*) without or (*b*) with the preposition *in*; (2) and the preposition *in* is (*a*) generally, but (*b*) not always, used before the latter of the ablatives specified in Rule 51, if a numeral or numeral adverb is annexed. (3) The time *within which a thing happens* may also be expressed by the prepositions *inter* and *intra* with an accusative.

250. *Per* is often used to denote duration of time: *Ludi decem per dies facti sunt* (Cic. Cat. iii. 8. 20).

251. (1) *Sub*, when it refers to time, means with an accusative, *shortly before, or immediately after*; (2) with an ablative, *exactly at*



*the time of.* (3) When it means *about the time of*, it has either case, but generally the accusative. Write *sub idem tempus* in preference to *sub eodem tempore*. See examples under Rule 52.

252. The (1) ablative of the time *when*, &c. (R. 51) with an ordinal number, or the ablative of the time *before* or *after* (R. 51) with a cardinal, is in some cases equivalent to (2) an accusative, with either a cardinal or an ordinal, after the prepositions *ante* and *post*. Thus the following sentences all mean the same :—(1) *Vicesimo die abii, postquam venerat*; *Viginti post diebus abii, quam venerat*. (2) *Viginti post dies abii, quam venerat*; *Post vicesimum diem abii, quam venerat*.

253. The ablatives of time *abhinc* (R. 51) are ablatives of difference (R. 47 A).

254. (1) The adverbs *ante* and *post*, with an ablative of time *abhinc*, may stand either (a) between, (b) after, or (c) before the numeral and substantive: *viginti post diebus*; *viginti diebus post*; *post viginti diebus*. Cicero however never places the adverb before both words, as it is sometimes placed by Livy. (2) When the ablative of *unus* is understood, or when the numeral and substantive are both contained in one compound word, the adverb stands last: *anno* (understand *uno*) *ante*; *biennio ante*. See also Note 213. 2.

255. A. *Abhinc* in the best writers refers (probably always) to past time, meaning *from this time backward*.

B. *Abhinc*, unlike *ante* and *post* (N. 254), always precedes both the numeral and substantive: *abhinc viginti diebus*; *abhinc tri-duum*.

256. *Decem annos natus est*, he is ten years old. This accusative of age is remarkable. Madvig (§ 234. c.) considers it as an accusative of measure (R. 27 C), but this explanation is doubtful. *Annos* is probably an accusative of duration of time (R. 26). *Vir decem annos natus* (or, *decem natus annos*), having been born, and therefore having lived ten years; i.e., ten years old. Age is sometimes defined by a genitive (R. 72). See also *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 127. AA. 1 (p. 276).

257. An ordinal numeral is used to express duration of time when the term of days, &c., is still incomplete: *Quartum jam diem obsidebantur*, they were being besieged for now the fourth day (and therefore not yet for fully four days).

258. Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative, especially in combination with the pronouns *hic*, *ille*. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 131. F. 3 (p. 299).

259. (1) *In* is omitted (see Rule 54) in some phrases, as *terra marique, oppido* (or *castris*) *se tenere, dextra*, &c.; and generally (perhaps always in prose) before *loco*, when it means *in the place of*, instead of. (2) With some ablatives (as *foro, libro*, and especially

*loco, locis*, if they are combined with an adjective, &c., this preposition is (a) generally, but (b) not always omitted: *hoc libro*; but *in sexto libro* (Cic. ad Att. vii. 3. 2). (3) As a general rule, the preposition is to be used, and must be omitted with caution. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 131. G. 1 (p. 300).

260. (1) The preposition *in* is to be used before the names of regions, countries, and districts: *in Asia*; *in Græcia*; *in Etruria*. (2) But you may either write (a) *in Etrusco agro*, or (b) *Etrusco agro*. (3) The name of a country or town, combined with *totus*, is put in the ablative, generally without the preposition: *Quis tota Italia inveniri potest* (Cic. Cat. ii. 4. 7)? who can be found throughout the whole of Italy? See also Madvig, § 273. c, and Obs.

261. The way, by which one goes or conveys anything, is generally put in the ablative without a preposition: *Frumento, quod flumine Arari navibus subvezerat, uti minus poterat* (Cæs. B. G. i. 16).

262. The Rules that relate to place (R. 54. 57.) apply to names of places and towns, combined not only with verbs, but also with verbal nouns (as *adventus, reditus, profugus, &c.*).

263. Names of towns, if they have an epithet, must not ordinarily be constructed according to Notes 98, 100, 101. (You must write: —*Nemo tota Capua* (N. 260. 3) *est*; *Ad præclaras illas Athenas vent.*) But they may be so constructed, when the epithet is not ornamental, but forms part of the name: *Hanc epistolam Tribus Tabernis* (at the Three Taverns) *ei dedisti* (Cic. ad Att. i. 13. 1). Compare the third example to Rule 94. Even the phrase *Herculeæ Trachinæ* (Ov. Met. xi. 627), at Herculean Trachis, would perhaps be admissible in prose. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 131. II. G. 6 (p. 300).

264. (1) *Ad* and *apud* are each of them used with towns, lakes, rivers, &c.: *Imperator appellatus apud Issum* (Cic. ad Div. ii. 10. 2). Compare this quotation with the seventh example and the last but three under Rule 54 A. (2) Observe also that a descriptive appellation, as *flumen* (*lacus, &c.*), added to the name of a river (lake, &c.), is generally placed after it: *Inde ad Tagum flumen profecti sunt* (Liv. xxxix. 30).

265. (1) Before names of regions, countries, and districts, use *in* with an accusative, and (a) *ex, e*, or (b) more rarely *ab, a*, with an ablative. (2) Before names of rivers, lakes, mountains, &c., use *ad, ab, a, ex* (this last only before mountain ranges; which really denote a district). (3) Before names of other places (as *circus, forum, &c.*) the above prepositions and *de* are used. Here see Note 269.

266. The ablative of towns is found also after words which imply the idea, rather than express the act of motion. (Thus explain the ablative after *absum* in the sixth example to Rule 27 A.)

Obs. 1. The town, from which a letter is written, is put in the ablative: *Eccæ postridie litteræ Capuæ* (Cic. ad Att. vii. 24), behold on the next day a letter from Capua.

*Obs. 2.* The ablative of tribe also is to be referred to Rule 56: *Verres Romilia* (understand *tribus*), Verres coming from the Romilian tribe, and so, belonging to it, of it.

267. Observe, in the following sentences, how the English idiom differs from that used by Latin writers:—

(1) We say, 'I came to Carthage (or, to him) in Africa:' they say, *In Africam Carthaginem* (or, *ad eum*) *veni*, I came to Africa to Carthage (or, to him).

(2) We say, 'I came to him at Athens:' they say, *Athenas ad eum veni*, I came to Athens to him.

(3) We say, 'I parted from my father at Rome:' they say, *Roma a patre discessi*, I parted from my father from Rome. See however Cæs. B. C. iii. 33, where a different construction occurs.

(4) We say, 'This will be reported at Rome.' they say, *Hoc Romam nuntiabitur*, this news will be carried to Rome.

Examples to this Note will be found under Rules 25, 56, and 94.

268. The largest islands (as *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*) are to be considered as countries, and always have a preposition before them in prose. See the eleventh example on page 138, and the seventh sentence under Rule 57.—An island of the smallest size, such as Tenedos or Delos, had but one town of note, and the island was thought of as identical with this town. Even the names of larger islands were constructed in the same way, and for much the same reason: *Cato Cyprum relegatur* (Cic. pro Dom. 26. 65). But an island of the first magnitude, such as Sicily, which contained many towns of importance, could not be thought of as one town: and hence, as has been said, the name of such an island is never found in prose constructed like the name of a town.

*Obs. Lipara*, singular, is found. Hence *Lipare*, plural, is supposed to be used of several islands. But perhaps, like the singular, it merely designates the largest of the *Æolian isles*, and not the whole group. (See Liv. xxi. 49, where *Lipare* is distinguished from *insula Vulcani*, another of the group: see also Cic. Verr. iii. 37, where *ager Liparensis* clearly denotes one island only, for the phrase *tunc tota insula* is used.)

269. (1) Names of countries, rivers, lakes, &c., are never found without a preposition in prose. (2) On the other hand, the names of towns and the smaller islands are often preceded by the prepositions *ad* and *ab*, especially in the narration of naval and military affairs: and this with great accuracy, for an army marches and a fleet sails, not into or from out of the town itself, but to the camp or harbour, i.e., to the neighbourhood of the town. Hence *in* and *ex* are not used, but *ad* and *ab*, which signify, respectively, *motion to* and *from the neighbourhood of a place*. (3) *Ex* however is correctly used in the following example: *equites ex Cypro decedere jussi*; for the soldiers had been residing in Cyprus, and so came from off the island itself. Observe also the expression *legionem in Siciliam ducere* (Cic. ad Att. viii. 3. 3).—Here see Andrews' *Lexicon*, under *ab*,

§ A. 1, and examine Cic. ad Att. vii. 3. 7. (4) The name of a sea-port may be constructed, according to Rule 54, with the preposition *in*: *Navis et in Caieta est parata nobis et Brundisii* (Cic. ad Att. viii. 3. 3).

270. (1) *Humus* is constructed according to Rule 55 in the genitive and ablative only: *Tollit humo munus* (Ov. Fast. iii. 375), he raises the gift from the ground. (2) Translate, 'He throws the gift to the ground (or, on the ground),' by *Dejicit humi munus* (*ad humum* would be admissible). (3) *Humus* is also constructed (in the poets) according to Rule 54, or governed by a preposition: *Fugat humo plantas* (Virg. Georg. iv. 115). See Andrews' *Lexicon*.

271. (1) *Domus* (R. 55), when it imitates the construction of names of towns, is always of the second declension. (2) In the plural, it only imitates this construction in the accusative. (3) When thus constructed, it admits as epithets the possessive pronouns and *alienus*, also a genitive of the possessor: *Homo aderat, cujus tu domi fueras* (Cic. Verr. v. 42. 108). (4) But if combined with any other epithet, it requires a preposition after a verb of motion (*ad illam domum veni*), or is constructed according to Rule 56: *Janua nulla domo tota* (Ov. Met. xi. 609). Compare this last sentence with Note 260. 3. (5) Even if it has no epithet, it sometimes may, like the names of towns, be governed by a preposition: *Dico te venisse in M. Laca domum* (Cic. Cat. i. 4. 8).

272. The ablative of *rus* is *rure* or *ruri*. (1) The former of these words is always used (there are one or two exceptions in Plautus) after a verb of motion, or when an epithet is added. (2) We generally find (a) *ruri*, in the country; but (b) *rure* occasionally occurs in this sense. See Andrews' *Lexicon*.

273. (1) The genitive *bidui* sometimes denotes distance, by an ellipse of *iter* (accusative), *via*, or *spatio* (ablatives). (2) You may write—*bidui abesse*, *bidui iter abesse*, *bidui via abesse*, or *bidui spatium abesse*. Cicero in one place appears to write, but not so correctly, *abesse biduum aut triduum* (ad Att. viii. 14). This passage however admits of a different construction.

274. The genitive and ablative of dimension (R. 27 B) are not found in the best writers; at least these cases are not found combined with adjectives. (Such phrases as *vallum duodecim pedum*, *fossa quinque pedum*, are to be referred to Rule 72.) In the works of Pliny and some other authors (Vitruvius, Columella, Palladius), such expressions as the following occur: *Singula latera pedum lata tricenum, alta quinquagenum* (Plin. xxxvi. 13. 19), sides, each thirty feet broad, fifty high. *Scorobes faciemus tribus pedibus longas* (Pallad. ii. 10), we will make trenches three feet long. But Cæsar, Cicero, and Livy always use an accusative after adjectives and verbs of dimension, as *longus*, *latus*, *altus*, *pateo*. Zumpt indeed (§ lxxi. 2. Note 1) adduces an exception from Cæsar (B. G. vii. 72):—*fossam*

*sexaginta pedum latam*. But these words appear to be a misquotation, and the construction is at best very suspicious. (In the sentence which follows, taken from Caesar (B. G. vi. 29), *millibus* is the ablative of comparison (N. 216. 2) after *amplius*, an accusative of dimension: *Arduenna silva millibus amplius D in longitudinem patet*.)

275. (1) Many impersonal verbs admit a nominative, especially a neuter pronoun: *Id licet*. (2) Some of them are also found in the third person plural, the nominative here also being generally a neuter pronoun: *Te ista decent*. (3) Those of them, which admit a nominative in a finite mood, may be used in the infinitive after an accusative of the nearer object (R. 18): *Puto id licere*; *Puto te ista non decere*. On the subject of impersonal verbs, you may consult *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 65. A. 3 (p. 160). It must be remembered that many of these verbs may have a nominative in poetry, which do not admit one in prose.

276. (1) *Libet* is also written (a) *lubet*. *Libitum est* (b) is perhaps the only perfect of this verb found in Cicero. (2) *Pertadet*, the present, from which comes *pertasum est*, is probably not to be found. *Pertadebat* occurs in Aulus Gellius.

277. (1) For an explanation of the construction of *interest* and *refert* with the feminine ablatives *mea, tua, &c.* (R. 75), see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 135. III. c. 2 (p. 317). From what is said there, you may infer also how to account for a genitive after these verbs. (2) *Refert* is followed both by a genitive and *ad* with its case, but probably neither of these constructions occurs in the best prose writers. (3) *Interest* is followed in Cicero by the preposition *ad* with an accusative. See Rule 114, fifth example.

278. That which concerns stands as a sentence after *interest* and *refert*. The verb of this sentence is generally (1) in the infinitive (simple, or after an accusative), but sometimes (2) it is in the subjunctive after *ut, qui, &c.*: *Tantum (so much) interest, quemadmodum dicas* (Cic. Orat. 16. 61).

279. Instead of the genitives *tanti, quanti, &c.* (R. 76), many adverbs are often joined with *interest* and *refert*: such adverbs are *tantum, quantum, multum, magis, maxime, plurimum, &c.* You will find examples under Rules 74 and 102 A. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 135. III. c. 3 (p. 317).

280. The nominative of the active sentence (R. 111) is sometimes changed in the passive into the dative of the agent (R. 33). See Note 156.

281. In Rule 111 it is supposed that the nominative of the active sentence denotes a living being. But when this case denotes an inanimate object, it will pass in the passive sentence into an ablative of the cause or instrument without a preposition: *Elesiarum flatus*

*nimios temperat calores*; or passively, *Etesiarum flatu nimis temperantur caiores* (Cic. de Nat. Deor. ii. 53. 131), the excessive heat is tempered by the breath of the Etesian winds. See also Note 157.

282. (1) Avoid such ambiguous constructions as the following:—*Eum te amare sentio*; *Audio Milonem occidisse Publium*. Use in preference a passive construction:—*Te amari ab eo sentio*; *Audio Publium a Milone occisum esse*. (2) The infinite active however of a transitive verb may be thus used, where the wording of the sentence itself, or the context, precludes any ambiguity: as, *Audio eos arma misisse*. See also the fourth example to Rule 114.

283. Gerunds and supines answer to the oblique cases of nouns. This will be clear from examples given under Rules 90, 91, 93, 95, 96; where some of them are placed in apposition to, and others are coupled by a conjunction with, the corresponding cases of nouns.

284. (1) Virgil writes *inter agendum* (Ecl. ix. 24), while doing it, while about it: but there is probably no example in Cæsar, Cicero, or Livy, of a gerund governed either by *inter* or *ob*. An example of a gerundive after each of these prepositions is given under Rule 97. (2) The accusative gerundive or (in poetry) the gerund in *dum* is found after *in* and *ante*, but only in unusual phrases: *In hac defendenda prolapsi* (Liv. xxix. 4); *ante domandum* (Virg. Georg. iii. 206), before they are tamed. See Madvig, § 414. Obs.

285. *Faciunt omnia eorum, quæ secundum naturam sunt, adipiscendi causa* (Cic. de Fin. v. 7. 19). In this sentence *eorum* is not governed by *adipiscendi*, but both *eorum* and *adipiscendi* depend on *causa*. 'They do every thing for the sake of those things, for the sake of obtaining them;' i.e., 'They do every thing for the sake of obtaining those things which are agreeable to nature.' Zumpt (§ lxxx. 3. Note 1) notices five instances of this construction in Cicero. It probably never occurs in Cæsar or Livy.

286. (1) No instance probably can be found in Cæsar, Cicero, or Livy, of the gerund in *do* used as a dative case, except in the phrase *non solvendo esse*, which occurs more than once in Cicero. See examples to Rule 92. (2) The dative of the gerundive (R. 97) is not uncommon: it is used after the verbs and adjectives mentioned in Rule 92: *Consul placandis diis dat operam* (Liv. xxii. 2).

287. (1) *Pro* and *cum* are very rarely found with a gerund or gerundive. See Madvig, § 416. Obs. 2. (2) An ablative gerund or gerundive (see the last example to Rule 93) may be governed by the preposition *ab* in composition. Here see also *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 144. I. 5 (p. 337).

288. From the sixth example to Rule 90, and the seventh to Rule 93, it will be seen that gerunds are sometimes apparently used in a passive sense, but only apparently so: *Ante domandum* (before

they are tamed; literally, before our taming of them) *Ingentes tollent animos* (Virg. Georg. iii. 206, 207). Add *Id. Georg. ii. 239*.

289. (1) The gerund in *dum* is never found governing an accusative. You must not write *ad videndum ea*, but *ad ea videnda*. (2) The gerund in *do* as a dative, or as an ablative after a preposition, hardly ever (probably never in prose) governs an accusative, the gerundive construction being preferable. You must neither write *aptus gerendo bellum*, nor *prudens in gerendo bellum*. See Madvig, § 413.

290. (1) The gerund in *di* or *do* (never that in *dum*) is retained, and not changed into a gerundive, if it is followed by a neuter pronoun or adjective: *Quid ego de studiis dicam cognoscendi semper aliquid atque discendi* (Cic. Læl. 27, 104)? See also Rule 96 C, second example. (2) But if the neuter adjective is equivalent to a substantive (*N. 54. 1*), the gerundive construction is preferable: *Ardere studio veri reperiendi* (Cic. Acad. ii. 20. 65), to be inflamed with the desire of discovering the truth. See Madvig, § 413. Obs. 1.

291. *Sui* (of themselves), and *nostrī* (of us), *vestri* (of you), the objective genitives (according to *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 33. a. p. 87) of *nos* and *vos*, are always combined with a singular gerundive: *Neque tūc data est tui liberandi facultas* (Cæs.). This is possibly because (1) these genitives, though really plural, are yet singular in form. But this explanation seems improbable, for *sibi* and *se*, which are also singular in form, have plural participles, &c., agreeing with them. It is best (2) to consider *sui*, *nostrī*, and *vestri*, as the genitives singular (used abstractly, according to Rule 7. Obs.) of the possessive pronouns *suus*, *noster*, *vester*: as, *amantes nostrī*, fond of all that is ours, and hence, fond of us. See Madvig, § 297. b.

292. The gerundive of a transitive verb, put adjectively, itself expresses necessity: *Delenda est Carthago*, Carthage must be destroyed. Hence such a gerundive is very rarely (even by the poets) constructed impersonally according to Rule 98. In Tauchnitz' edition of Livy (xxxvii. 49) we find—*Itaque bellum cum haud dubiis hostibus gerendum, perdomandumque feroces animos esse (conclamant)*, and that they (the Romans) must tame their fierce spirits. But no example of this construction is given under Rule 98, nor should you ever (in writing prose) imitate it. Indeed in the very passage in question Drakenborch edits *perdomandosque feroces animos esse* (and that their fierce spirits must be tamed). And this last is the way in which you should always construct the gerundive of a transitive verb. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 145. II. 1 (p. 338).

Obs. For the same reason you should be very cautious in using impersonally the gerundive of such verbs as *prætereo*, *ingredior*, &c.; which by virtue of the preposition (*R. 59*) govern an accusative, and may be considered as transitive verbs. An instance, however, from Cicero, of the impersonal use of the

gerundive of *ingredior* will be found in the seventh example to Rule 98.

293. A. The passive of an intransitive verb cannot be used personally (see Rule 111 B): you must not write *parceris* (you are spared), but *parcitur tibi*. Similarly, the gerundive of an intransitive verb cannot be put adjectively (*i.e.*, cannot agree with a substantive), but must be used impersonally (R. 98). Since *parco* does not govern an accusative of the nearer object, in other words, is not a transitive verb, you must not write *Parcendi sunt hostes* (the enemy must be spared), but *Parcendum est hostibus*.

B. Although you cannot write *Ignoscendi sunt milites*, because *ignosco* does not govern an accusative of the person, yet you may write *Hoc est ignoscendum militibus*, because *ignosco* does govern an accusative (if a neuter pronoun) of the thing: as, *Hoc tibi ignosco*, I forgive you this. The principle of this remark applies to many other words, as *credo*, *persuadeo*, *respondeo* (see Note 145). In short, the gerundive may be used adjectively, *i.e.*, may agree with a substantive, when, but (as a general rule) only when, if the sentence were expressed actively, that substantive would be the accusative after the verb. Hence *Tu mihi amandus es* is correct, for, actively, you would write *Te amare debeo*; but *Parcendus es* is incorrect, and you must write *Tibi parcendum est*, since the sentence, if expressed actively, would be *Tibi parcere debeo*. Here see Note 233. Obs. Poets give themselves greater license both in active and passive expressions, as may be seen by comparing Virg. Cul. 294 (*Peccatum ignovisse*) and Id. Georg. iv. 489 (*Ignoscenda quidem dementia*).

294. (1) When the use of the dative of the agent after a gerundive would cause ambiguity, the ablative with *a* or *ab* should be used. Do not translate, 'We must obey you,' by *Tibi nobis parendum est*; but by *Tibi a nobis parendum est*. (2) We sometimes find the ablative thus used even in cases where the dative would cause no ambiguity. See the last example to Rule 60.

295. The supine in *um* is found after some verbs in which the idea of motion is only implied. See two examples under Rule 98. (*Nuptum* in the first of those examples has really an active sense, though it is translated by a passive infinitive.)

296. A. The best writers use the supine in *u* of comparatively but a few verbs. We find *dictu*, *factu*, *visu*, *cognitu*, *auditu*, and some others. This supine is used after adjectives signifying advantage, pleasantness, fitness, ease, and the contrary qualities; also after some others, as *magnus*, *parvus*: *migratu difficilia* (Liv. x. 34); *res haud magna memoratu* (Id. xxxviii. 29); *res dictu parva* (Id. v. 47).

B. After some of the above adjectives, such as *jucundus*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *ad* with the gerund in *dum* may be used in place of the supine. Thus (1) *res jucunda auditu* is quite a classical expression, but (2) *res jucunda ad audiendum* is more elegant.

297. The supine in *u* is always really passive in its signification,



though it may in every instance be construed by the infinitive active of an English verb: as, *turpe dictu*, shameful to tell (literally to be told).

298. A. All comparative adverbs (except *magis*) and many positive ones (as *multum*, *tantum*, &c.) may be considered as neuter adjectives.

B. Neuter plural adjectives are used adverbially only by the poets: *multa reluctans* (Virg. Georg. iv. 301), resisting much.

299. A copulative conjunction, as *et* or *que*, is often omitted: *Conversionem inter se habent Lucifer, Mercurius, Sol* (Cic. de Univ. 9). *Omne nostrum consilium, studium, officium, operam, laborem, diligentiam, ad amplitudinem tuam conferimus* (Cic. ad Div. x. 1). An adversative conjunction, as *sed* or *autem*, is also sometimes omitted (see Rule 18, first example below the line); and, more rarely, a dissociative one, as *aut* or *vel*: *Peccatum est patriam prodere, parentes violare, fana depeculari* (Cic. de Fin. iii. 9. 32).

300. The conjunctions *que* and *ve*, and the interrogative *nē*, always follow and coalesce with another word: *Video campum montesque*, I see the plain and the mountains. *Adestne?* is he present?

Obs. This word, with which they thus coalesce, is generally the first word of the sentence or clause. But if the first word is a monosyllabic preposition, then *que*, *ve*, and *nē* may, and in the best prose writers generally do, coalesce with the second word. We should sometimes (1) find in these writers *Adque regem venit*, but (2), more frequently, *Ad regemque venit*; *Ex oppidone venit?* In an example to Rule 56, *nē* coalesces with the third word. Here read also Note 3. Obs.; but remember that you must write *nobiscumque* (as in the tenth sentence on page 81), and not *nobisque cum*.

301. (1) *Vero*, *quidem*, *quoque*, *enim*, *autem*, cannot begin a sentence or clause. *Enim* and *autem* stand generally as the second word: (2) but if the sentence begins with a preposition, they stand as the third word: *Sine ulla enim dubitatione id faciam*. See also *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 211. 4 (p. 438).

302. Both *neque* and *nec* are used before either vowels or consonants. They are two forms of the same conjunction. You may write—(1) *neque* . . . *neque*, (2) *nec* . . . *nec*, (3) *neque* . . . *nec*, (4) *nec* . . . *neque*.

Obs. 1. *Neque* (or *nec*) sometimes answers to *et non*, and is to be translated by *and not*: *Oppida expugnata nec obsessa sunt* (Liv. v. 12), the towns were stormed, and not blockaded.

Obs. 2. When a subject following a negative is distributed into two parts, *nec* or *neque* must be used, not *aut*, *vel*, or *seu*, as the English idiom might lead the beginner to suppose: *Nulli, neque etati neque sexui, parcent*, they spare no age or sex. *Nemo est, nec civis nec peregrinus, qui tecum consentiat*, there is

no one, whether a citizen or a foreigner, who would agree with you. *Eam causam nemo neque tentat neque oppugnat* (Liv. xli. 24).

303. (1) The word or part of the sentence, to which *ne . . . quidem* gives emphasis, is placed between *ne* and *quidem*. (2) *Ne . . . quidem* contains in itself a negative: *Ne feminis quidem parcunt*, they spare not even women. (3) But sometimes it is preceded by another negative, of which it increases the force: *Nulli, ne privato quidem, parcunt*, they spare no one, no, not even a private individual.

304. *Ac* and *atque* serve for comparison after adjectives or adverbs of likeness or unlikeness: *In aliis rebus versaris atque ille* (Cic. de Leg. ii. 7. 17). *Illis rebus æque ac tu ipse gaudet* (Cic. Læl. 6. 22). See also *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 96.

305. The imperative, both in the active and passive voice, has two forms.—(1) The one most commonly used is that which stands first in the grammars: *ama, amate; amare, amamini*. (2) The other form is more emphatic: *amato* (second and third person), *amatote, amanto, amator* (second and third person), *amaminor, amantor*. This form is used in laws (see Cicero de Leg. ii. 8, 9, and iii. 3, 4), but is not confined to them. (3) The imperative generally borrows the third person of both numbers, and always the first person plural, from the conjunctive mood: *amet, amemus, ament; ametur, amemur, amentur*.

*Obs.* Observe here one form of what may be called the periphrastic imperative: *Noli* (or, plural,  *nolite*) *putare hoc ita esse*, be unwilling to suppose, i.e., do not suppose, that this is so. See also *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 138 B. (p. 328).

## NOTES ON RULES IN PART II.

306. (1) The conjunctive is used with an imperative force (*N.* 305. 7), either (*a*) because it has a permissive meaning according to Rule 115 (*eant*, they may go, and so, let them go), or (*b*) because it has an optative meaning according to Rule 115 D (*eant!* may they go! and so, let them go). (2) The conjunctive is also employed to express a softened supposition or statement: *Forsitan quærat* (perhaps you may ask), *qui iste terror sit* (Cic. Rosc. Am. 2. 5); *Nolim ita facere*, I should not like to do so. The indicative would suppose or affirm more positively: *Fortasse dices* (Cic. Cæcil. 12. 40): *Nolo ita facere*.—This use of the conjunctive may be referred to Rule 115 C. Compare Rule 116.

307. *O si, si*, and *ut*, for *utinam*, are joined only by the poets to an optative mood. See Horat. Sat. ii. 6. 8—10; Pers. Sat. 2. 10—13 (where *O si* and *utinam* both occur); and Virg. *Æn.* vi. 187, 188.

308. Where a copulative infinitive immediately follows a finite

verb, the nominative is the subject of both verbs, and hence by Rule 20 this copulative infinitive must be followed by a nominative: *Nemo semper felix esse potest*, no one can be always happy. *Nolo esse servus*, I am unwilling to be a slave. See examples under Rules 19 and 117 A.

309. (1) The future infinitive active is compounded of the infinitive of the auxiliary verb and the future participle. This participle is generally in the accusative case, because the copulative infinitive *esse* is generally preceded by an accusative (R. 18) of the subject: *Dicit Cæsarem esse venturum*, he says that Cæsar is about to come (or, will come). But when the infinitive *esse* immediately follows a finite verb, then the subject and consequently the participle are in the nominative (N. 308): *Dicitur Cæsar venturus esse*, Cæsar is said to be about to come. (2) The above remarks apply to all compound tenses of the infinitive mood: *Videtur secutus esse*, he seems to have followed. *Dicuntur advocati* (*esse* being omitted according to Rule 17. Obs.), they are said to have been summoned. Here see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 142. 8. b (p. 331).

310. *Possum ire*, I am able to go, I can go.  
*Potui* (or *poteram*) *ire*, I was able to go, I could go.

311. Sometimes a past tense of a Latin verb, followed by a present infinitive, corresponds to the present of an English verb, followed by a past infinitive: *Quid aliud fieri potuit?* what else could have been done? *Debui venire*, I ought to have come. *Oportebat te id facere*, you ought to have done that.

312. (1) The participles, which may be followed by a simple infinitive, are those of the verbs specified in Rule 117: *Dictus ob hoc lenire tigres* (Horat. Ars Poët. 393). (2) The only adjectives, after which this infinitive should be used in prose, are *paratus*, and *suetus* with its compounds; and most of these words are strictly participles of verbs which are included in Rule 117. 2. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 142. vii. (p. 333).

313. *Fors ut* (R. 118) is much more common than *futurum esse ut*; which latter phrase is seldom (or perhaps never) used by Cæsar, Cicero, or Livy: *Futurum puto, ut hostes judicemur* (Brutus apud Cic. ad Div. xi. 1).

#### NOTES ON THE CONSECUTION OF TENSES.

314. A. (1) When the principal verb is in the present or future tense, the present subjunctive is used to represent an action coterminous with, or the immediate result of, the action indicated by the principal verb: *Querit, cur taceas*, he asks why you are silent; *Mittit duos milites, qui victoriam nuntient*, he sends two soldiers to announce (literally, who may announce) the victory. (2) When the principal verb is in a past tense, the imperfect subjunctive is used to represent an action coterminous with, or the immediate

result of, the action indicated by the principal verb: *Quærebat, cur taceres*, he was asking why you were silent; *Misit duos milites, qui victoriam nuntiarent*, he sent two soldiers to announce (literally, who might announce) the victory; *Imperaverat sociis, ut castra moverent*, he had commanded the allies to move their camp.

*Obs.* Hence it will be clear why the English pluperfect must in some cases be translated by the Latin imperfect: *Fugit, tanquam hostis mihi esses*, I fled, as though you *had been* my enemy—my enemy (that is) at the time I fled. Similarly, *Fugiant, tanquam hostis sis*, they fly, as though you *were* an enemy.

B. (1) When the principal verb is in the present or future tense, the perfect subjunctive is used to represent an action completed before the action indicated by the principal verb: *Quæret, cur id feceris*, he will ask why you did (or, why you have done) this. (2) When the principal verb is in a past tense, the pluperfect subjunctive is used to represent an action completed before the action indicated by the principal verb: *Quæsiuit, cur id fecisses*, he asked why you had done this.

C. It will be clear from A that the present or imperfect subjunctive may represent an action which, strictly speaking, is subsequent to the time of the principal verb: *Petit, ut maneam*, he begs that I will remain. Here *my remaining* follows immediately upon his request, and is considered as contemporaneous with it (see Madvig, § 378); hence the present is used. But when an action more decidedly future, and not the immediate result of the principal action, is to be represented, then the future subjunctive must be used: *Quærit, quid dicturus sim*, he asks what I am going to say (or, what I shall say); *Quæsiuit, quid dicturus essem*, he asked what I was going to say (or, what I should say); *Incertum est, quid dicturus fueris*, it is uncertain what he was going to say (or, what he would have said). The future subjunctive, in the active voice, is compounded, as will be seen from the examples just given, of the future participle and the tenses of the subjunctive mood of *sum*. What tense of that mood should be used, is to be decided in each instance according to the principles laid down in A and B. The future subjunctive passive must be expressed by some periphrasis (see *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 142. vi. 8. n. (p. 333), and Madvig, § 378. b).

[Here do the following Exercise, remembering that *ut*, *ne*, *qui*, *cur*, *quando*, *quis*, *are* to be followed throughout by the subjunctive.

#### Exercise.

Translate into Latin:—1. I do this that (*is facio ut*) I may be accounted wise (*sapiens habeor*). 2. You did this that you might be accounted wise. 3. They will do this in order to (*ut*) be accounted wise. 4. He wished that (*opto*

ut) I would remain (*maneo*). 5. I wish that they would remain. 6. He gives orders that (*impero ut*) they should set out (*proficiscor*). 7. He had given orders that they should not (*impero ne*) set out. 8. I commanded you not (*impero tu ne*) to do this. 9. He asked why (*quæro cur*) we were seeking peace (*pax peto*). 10. I shall send ambassadors to (*mitto legatus, qui*) seek peace. 11. They asked why we had been accounted wise. 12. They ask why we were accounted wise. 13. It is uncertain (*incertus sum*) why they sought peace. 14. It was uncertain why they sought peace. 15. He asked why I had not (*non*) done this. 16. It is uncertain why they have not set out. 17. I ask when (*quando*) she will come. 18. He was asking when they would set out. 19. They had asked when I was going to seek peace. 20. He asks what (*quis*) we were going to do.]

315. Whenever the Latin perfect is equivalent to the English perfect, in other words, whenever it may be rendered by *has* or *has been* (as, *venit*, he has come; *missus est*, he has been sent), it represents an action already completed, and speaks of it in its relation to the present time. Hence, according to the principle laid down in Note 314. A, it will be followed by a present subjunctive: *Veni* (or, *missus sum*), *qui te juvem*, I have come (or, I have been sent) to help you, i.e., I am here to help you. The difference in meaning is obvious between this and *Veni* (or, *missus sum*), *qui te juvarem*, I came (or, I was sent) to help you.

316. (1) When the principal verb is in a past tense, the perfect subjunctive is used to represent an action as already completed, and speaks of it in its relation to the present time: *Neminem unquam vidi, qui idem fecerit*, I have never seen any one who has done the same. The two actions may or may not be contemporaneous, but the perfect subjunctive does not intimate that they are so. *Galli tam fortiter pugnabant, ut nostros loco pepulerint*, the Gauls were fighting so bravely that they drove our men from their post. Here it is simply stated that our men were once driven from their post by the bravery of the Gauls. (2) But if the imperfect were used, both events would be represented as happening at the same time: *Galli tam fortiter pugnabant, ut nostros loco pellerent*, the Gauls were fighting so bravely that they drove (or, were driving) our men from their post—drove them (that is) at the time of the battle. This nice distinction cannot always be expressed in an English translation; and there are many cases where either tense may be used in Latin. But throughout these Exercises you are to use the imperfect in such a case, unless the perfect is indicated by a reference.

317. The historical present relates past events (*N.* 27). It can therefore be regarded as a past tense; and hence it is (1) often, but (2) not always, followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive (*N.* 314. *A* and *B*). See the last example to Rule 131. In the third and fourth examples to Rule 123. *B*, it is followed by the present subjunctive.

### NOTES ON RULES IN PART III.

318. (1) Both *ut* and *quod* are used instead of the subjective infinitive (*R.* 119. *a*). (2) *Quod* is also used instead of the objective infinitive (*R.* 119. *b*), after such verbs as *gaudeo*, *doleo*, *indignor*, *laudo*, &c. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 157 (p. 351).

319. In an oblique petition (*R.* 123), *ut non* or *ut ne* may in many cases be used for *ne*: *Justitia primum munus est, ut ne cui quis noceat* (that no one hurt another), *nisi laessitus injuria* (*Cic. Off. i.* 7. 20).

320. An indefinite accusative is often omitted before the infinitive, after *jubeo*, *veto*, and verbs of similar meaning. Compare Notes 67. *C* and 187. *Obs.* 1. Here see also *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 168. *d.* (p. 353), and *Madvig*, § 396.

321. When the expression *delights in an indicative* is used, it is meant that the conjunction in question is followed by an indicative, except where the *oratio obliqua* (*N.* 331) or some other special reason requires a subjunctive.

322. *Quum*, as a conjunction of time, takes an indicative present, future, and perfect; but, in most cases, a subjunctive imperfect and pluperfect. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 179. 3 (p. 380).

323. *Dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, when they mean *until*, take a subjunctive present, imperfect, and pluperfect; but an indicative perfect and future.

324. *Antequam* and *priusquam* (*postquam* but seldom) take a subjunctive imperfect and pluperfect; but an indicative perfect and future, and also, as a general rule, an indicative present. See *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 181. *C* (p. 385).

325. The parts of *antequam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam* (or *posteaquam*) are often separated from each other: *Postea vero, quam profectus es, velim id recordere* (*Cic. ad Div. v.* 2. 2), but I should like you to think of this after you have set out. See examples under Rules 130 and 132 *C*.

326. In a conditional sentence, when the verb introduced by *si* or *nisi* is in the conjunctive, the verb in the principal clause will also (1) generally be in the same mood; but (2) in some cases it should be in the indicative. The subject of conditional sentences is explained at length in *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 184 (p. 389).

327. In a negative conditional clause, *si* is followed by *non*; but *modo*, *dum*, and *dummodo* (R. 134), by *ne*. Compare the use of *ne* in the last example to Rule 137.

328. *Et si*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*, like *si*, take a conjunctive where any doubt is implied; but an indicative where there is no doubt. *Tametsi* however is probably never used by the best prose writers with any mood but an indicative, except in the *oratio obliqua* (N. 331).

329. (1) *Ut* (although) and *ceu* (as, as if) are not found in the best prose writers. (2) *Ququam* and *tanquam* are also written *quamquam* and *tamquam*. See Rules 136 and 138.

330. *Quis* (R. 148) frequently stands for the nominative (all genders) of the relative and *non*; never for the dative or genitive; rarely for the accusative or ablative. In these two last cases you should almost always use the relative and *non* in preference to *quin*. See Rule 145, ninth and last examples.

331. *Tristis est* (he is sad) is a direct statement (*oratio recta*): *Audis eum tristem esse* (you hear that he is sad) is an indirect or oblique statement (*oratio obliqua*). In the *oratio obliqua*, the verbs of the subordinate clauses must be in the subjunctive; even those which in the *oratio recta* would be in the indicative: *Tristis est, quum absens* (a direct statement); but, *Audis eum tristem esse quum absens* (an indirect statement), you hear that he is sad when I am absent. *Oratio obliqua* comprises the oblique enunciation or statement (R. 150), the oblique petition or command (R. 123), and the oblique interrogation (R. 125). This important subject is explained with great clearness by Dr. Kennedy, and his remarks should be carefully studied. See the *Primer*, § 149 (p. 141); or the *Public School Latin Grammar*, § 158 (p. 352).—To what is there said it may be as well to add that an oblique statement appears sometimes to be made by the simple infinitive. *Dicis, quæ sentis* (a direct statement), you say what you think; but, *Dicere, quæ sentias, non licet* (an oblique statement), you cannot say what you think. (It is probable that the third example to Rule 76, and the fourth to Rule 144, should be considered as instances of the *oratio obliqua*: if so, they must not be translated as they at present are.) Concerning this variety of the *oratio obliqua*, see Madvig, § 369.

332. Correlatives and universals (R. 9 B), and relative particles (R. 146), are, like the relative *qui*, followed by the subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*. See the last examples under Rules 150 and 152.

333. The examples of the continuous *oratio obliqua*, given under Rule 153, should be compared carefully with the following remarks:—

A. (1) When the principal verb is in a past tense, a subordinate petition is in the imperfect subjunctive (as in the first example).

(2) When the principal verb is in the present, a subordinate petition is either (a) in the present (as in the second example), or (b) sometimes in the imperfect-subjunctive (as in the third). Compare Note 317. (3) This oblique petition, as may be seen from the translation of the first two examples, depends on an elliptical phrase, such as *oravit ut, hortatur ut, &c.*; but, if the petition is negative, there is only an ellipse of a verb (such as *oravit, hortatur, &c.*), *ne* being expressed (as in the third example).

B. (1) A question in the *oratio obliqua* is asked by an accusative and infinitive, if in *oratio recta* the first or third person would be used (as in the fourth and fifth examples); (2) but it must be asked by the subjunctive, if in the *oratio recta* the second person would be used (as in the sixth example). (3) In the fourth and fifth examples there is an ellipse of *censebant*, or some such verb; in the sixth, of *quasivit*, or a similar verb.

C. When the conjunctive would be used in the *oratio recta* (R. 115 E), the question is asked in the *oratio obliqua* by the subjunctive; as in the last example to Rule 153, where there is an ellipse of *quasivit*, or a similar verb.

For further information concerning the continuous *oratio obliqua*, see Madvig, § 403.





# THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN COURSE.

---

**THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.** Edited with the sanction of the Head Masters of the Nine Schools included in Her Majesty's Commission, viz. Winchester, Eton, St. Paul's, Westminster, Merchant Taylors', Rugby, Shrewsbury, Harrow, and Charterhouse. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

**SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, STEPS to LATIN;** Easy Companion Books to the Public School Latin Primer for Beginners. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. PART I. *Accidence and Simple Construction*, price 2s. 6d. PART II. *Syntax*, price 3s. 6d.

The KEY to PARTS I. and II. price 5s.

**SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, Part III.** Manual of the Rules of Construction in the Latin Compound Sentence; being a SUPPLEMENT to the Public School Latin Primer. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. price 1s.

**CURRICULUM STILI LATINI, or Higher Exercises** in Latin Prose Composition; exemplifying principally the Latin Compound Sentence, and also Latin Syntax generally, for *viva voce* as well as written use. By B. H. KENNEDY, Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. 4s. 6d.—KEY, New Edition, price 7s. 6d.

**PALÆSTRA LATINA, or Second Latin Reading** Book; adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. 5s.

\* \* The above four books form a Course of Latin Instruction, and are specially adapted to facilitate and extend the use of the Public School Latin Primer.

**THE CHILD'S LATIN ACCIDENCE,** extracted from Canon KENNEDY'S Child's Latin Primer; containing all that is necessary to lead Boys up to the Public School Latin Primer. 12mo. 1s.

**AN ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR of the LATIN** LANGUAGE, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

**THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR,** for the Use of Schools, Colleges, and Private Students. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Fourth Edition, crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**THE WORKS OF VIRGIL,** Latin Text, with English Commentary and Appendices. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Prof. of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Post 8vo. Maps, 10s. 6d. \*

'We recommend those of our readers who desire to keep up their classical knowledge, and even to improve it by acquaintance with recent improvements in scholarship, to procure this excellent edition.'

CHURCH TIMES.

'We cannot close this brief notice without thanking Professor KENNEDY for bringing this admirable edition of a work so universally read, which he

has enriched with the accumulated stores of the best modern scholarship and of a lifetime of successful teaching, within the reach of teachers and schools; for it is published at a price which makes it accessible to the humblest student. It is, beyond all question, the most complete, compact, and scholarly edition of VIRGIL which has hitherto appeared in this country.

EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

~~~~~  
London, LONGMANS & CO.

WHITE'S GRAMMAR-SCHOOL TEXTS.

In course of publication, in 32mo. cloth,

GRAMMAR-SCHOOL TEXTS,

WITH ENGLISH VOCABULARIES.

EDITED BY JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. OXON.

GREEK TEXTS:—

- FABLES** from **ÆSOP** and **MYTHS** from **PALÆPHATUS**. 1s.  
**HOMER**, First Book of the *Iliad*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**LUCIAN**, Select Dialogues. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**XENOPHON**, First Book of the *Anabasis*. Price 1s. 6d.  
**XENOPHON**, Second Book of the *Anabasis*. Price 1s.  
**ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL**. Price HALF-A-CROWN.  
**ST. MARK'S GOSPEL**. Price EIGHTEENPENCE.  
**ST. LUKE'S GOSPEL**. Price HALF-A-CROWN.  
**ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL**. Price EIGHTEENPENCE.  
**ST. PAUL'S EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS**.

LATIN TEXTS:—

- CÆSAR**, First Book of the *Gallie War*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**CÆSAR**, Second Book of the *Gallie War*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**CÆSAR**, Third Book of the *Gallie War*. Price NINEPENCE.  
**CÆSAR**, Fourth Book of the *Gallie War*. Price NINEPENCE.  
**CÆSAR**, Fifth Book of the *Gallie War*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**CÆSAR**, Sixth Book of the *Gallie War*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**CICERO**, *Cato Major*, sive de *Senectute*. Price EIGHTEENPENCE.  
**CICERO**, *Lælius*, sive de *Amicitia*.  
**EUTROPIUS**, Books I. and II. of *Roman History*. Price 1s.  
**EUTROPIUS**, Books III. & IV. of *Roman History*. Price 1s.  
**HORACE**, First Book of the *Odes*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**HORACE**, Second Book of the *Odes*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**HORACE**, Third Book of the *Odes*. Price EIGHTEENPENCE.  
**HORACE**, Fourth Book of the *Odes*. 1s.  
**NEPOS**, *Miltiades*, *Cimon*, *Pausanias*, and *Aristides*. 9d.  
**OVID**, Selections from the *Epistles* and *Fasti*. Price 1s.  
**OVID**, Select *Myths* from the *Metamorphoses*. Price NINEPENCE.  
**PHÆDRUS**, Select *Fables*. Price NINEPENCE.  
**PHÆDRUS**, First and Second Books of *Fables*. Price 1s.  
**SALLUST**, *Bellum Catilinarium*. Price EIGHTEENPENCE.  
**VIRGIL**, Fourth Book of the *Georgics*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**VIRGIL**, First Book of the *Æneid*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**VIRGIL**, Second Book of the *Æneid*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**VIRGIL**, Third Book of the *Æneid*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**VIRGIL**, Fourth Book of the *Æneid*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**VIRGIL**, Fifth Book of the *Æneid*. Price ONE SHILLING.  
**VIRGIL**, Sixth Book of the *Æneid*. Price ONE SHILLING.

London, LONGMANS & CO.

6



1230

R



